Where Do I Look?

Online Help
- Program
- Form
- Field

CD-ROM Guides

Guides

Technical Foundation
System Administration and Environment Fundamentals
- Understanding Your Environment
- Creating and Maintaining Environments
- Setting Up Security
- Upgrading Your System

Common Foundation
Prerequisite
J.D. Edwards Software Fundamentals
- Using Menus
- Getting Help
- Customizing Data
- Reporting
Important Note for Students in Training Classes

This guide is a source book for online helps, training classes, and user reference. Training classes may not cover all the topics contained here.
Welcome

About this Guide

This guide provides overviews, illustrations, procedures, and examples for the current release of J.D. Edwards software. Forms (screens and windows) shown are only examples. If your company operates at a different software level, you might find discrepancies between what is shown in this guide and what you see on your screen.

This guide includes examples to help you understand how to use the system. You can access all of the information about a task using either the guide or the online help.

Before using this guide, you should have a fundamental understanding of the system, user defined codes, and category codes. You should also know how to:

- Use the menus
- Enter information in fields
- Add, change, and delete information
- Create and run report versions
- Access online documentation

Audience

This guide is intended primarily for the following audiences:

- Users
- Classroom instructors
- Client Services personnel
- Consultants and implementation team members

Organization

This guide is divided into sections for each major function. Sections contain chapters for each task or group of related tasks. Each chapter contains the information you need to accomplish the task, run the program, or print the
report. Chapters normally include an overview, form or report samples, and procedures.

When it is appropriate, chapters also might explain automatic accounting instructions, processing options, and warnings or error situations. Some chapters include self-tests for your use outside the classroom.

This guide has a detailed table of contents and an index to help you locate information quickly.

**Conventions Used in this Guide**

The following terms have specific meanings when used in this guide:

- *Form* refers to a screen or a window.
- *Table* generally means “file.”

We assume an “implied completion” at the end of a series of steps. That is, to complete the procedure described in the series of steps, either press Enter or click OK, except where noted.
# Table of Contents

## Accounts Receivable Overview

- System Integration .............................................. 1–1
- Accounts Receivable Features ................................. 1–3
  - Customer Management ........................................ 1–4
  - Workflow Management ......................................... 1–4
    - Multiple Invoice Entry Methods ........................ 1–4
    - Credit and Collections Management .................... 1–5
    - Receipt Application ......................................... 1–5
    - Reporting ..................................................... 1–6
    - Multi-National Functionality ............................. 1–6
- Account Numbering Concepts ................................. 1–7
  - Business Unit - The “Where” ................................ 1–7
  - Object.Subsidiary - The “What” ............................. 1–8
- Accounts Receivable System Flow ........................... 1–8
- Tables Used by Accounts Receivable ....................... 1–10
  - Tables and Information Flow .............................. 1–10
  - Tables and Descriptions .................................. 1–11
- Menu Overview .................................................. 1–12
- Training Environment Case Study ............................ 1–13
  - Company Structure .......................................... 1–13
  - Chart of Accounts Structure ............................... 1–15

## Daily

### Customer Information

- About Customer Information .................................. 2–1
  - What Is the Customer Record? .............................. 2–1
- Enter Customers ................................................. 2–3
  - Entering Customers .......................................... 2–3
    - Processing Options for Customer Master Information 2–19
    - Test Yourself: Entering Customer Information ......... 2–21
- Locate Customers ............................................... 2–23
  - Locating Customers ......................................... 2–23
    - Processing Options for Name Search .................... 2–24
(Accounts Receivable)

Invoice Processing

About Invoice Processing ............................................. 3-1
What Are the Methods of Invoice Entry? ......................... 3-4
Which Method of Invoice Entry Should You Use? ................ 3-5
When Do You Review and Approve Invoices? ..................... 3-5
What Happens When You Post Invoices? ......................... 3-6
When Do You Set Up a Recurring Invoice? ....................... 3-6
What Is Customer Ledger Information? ......................... 3-6

Work with Invoice Entry Controls ............................... 3-7
Working with Invoice Entry Controls ............................ 3-7
About A/R Batch Control ........................................... 3-7
Why Would You Set Up Batch Control? ......................... 3-7
When Do You Use Batch Control? ............................. 3-8
About Two-Cycle Entry ............................................. 3-9
Where Do You Set Up Two-Cycle Entry? ......................... 3-9

Understand G/L Date Warnings .................................. 3-11
About G/L Date Warnings .......................................... 3-11

What Are the Warning and Error Messages You Might Receive? 3-12

Work with Standard Invoices .................................... 3-13
Working with Standard Invoices ................................ 3-13
Entering Standard Invoices ....................................... 3-14
Locating Invoices .................................................. 3-22
Revising Unposted Invoices ...................................... 3-23
Test Yourself: Working with Standard Invoices ............... 3-25

Work with Other Types of Standard Invoices ..................... 3-27
Working with Other Types of Standard Invoices ................. 3-27
Entering Invoices with Discounts ............................... 3-28

About Using Discounts ............................................. 3-28
Entering Credit Memos ............................................ 3-32
Entering Invoices with Taxes ...................................... 3-33
Working with Multi-Currency Invoices ......................... 3-36
Entering Recurring Invoices ..................................... 3-38

Processing Options .................................................. 3-39
Processing Options for Standard Invoice Entry ............... 3-39

Enter Speed Invoices ............................................... 3-41
Entering Speed Invoices ........................................... 3-41
Processing Options for Speed Invoice Entry ................... 3-44
Processing Options for Journal Entry Functional Server ... 3-45
Test Yourself: Entering Speed Invoices ......................... 3-46

Review and Approve Invoices .................................... 3-47
Reviewing and Approving Invoices .............................. 3-47
Reviewing Invoices ................................................ 3-47

Example: Multi-Currency Batch Totals ......................... 3-48

Approving Invoice Batches ....................................... 3-48

Understand the Post Process for A/R ............................ 3-53
About the Post Process for A/R ................................ 3-55

What Happens During the Pre-Post Process? ................... 3-55

Post Invoices ....................................................... 3-59
Posting Invoices ................................................... 3-59
Table of Contents

Posting Batches of Invoices .................................................. 3–59
Verifying the A/R Post Process .................................................. 3–60
   Reviewing the Posting Edit Report .................................. 3–61
   Reviewing the Posting Journal ....................................... 3–61
   Reviewing Other Posting Reports ................................... 3–62
Processing Options for Post General Ledger ................................. 3–62
Test Yourself: Posting Invoices ........................................... 3–65
Revise Posted Invoices .......................................................... 3–67
   Revising Posted Invoices ........................................... 3–67
   Changing Posted Invoices .......................................... 3–68
   Voiding Posted Invoices .......................................... 3–70
Print Invoice Journal Information ........................................... 3–73
   Processing Options for A/R Invoice Journal Report ............ 3–75
   Data Selection and Sequence for A/R Invoice Journal Report . 3–76
Work with Customer Ledger Information ....................................... 3–77
   Working with Customer Ledger Information ....................... 3–77
   Defining Invoice Search Criteria ................................ 3–78
   Reviewing Invoice Information ................................... 3–81
   Viewing Account Information ...................................... 3–85
      Viewing Account Activity ...................................... 3–85
      Viewing Account Status Information ........................ 3–86
      Viewing Collection Management Information .............. 3–87
      Processing Options for Customer Ledger Inquiry ........... 3–87
Test Yourself: Working with Customer Ledger Information ............. 3–90
Work with Recurring Invoices .................................................. 3–91
   Working with Recurring Invoices .................................. 3–91
      Example: Processing a Recurring Invoice .................... 3–94
   Entering Recurring Invoices ....................................... 3–95
   Reviewing Recurring Invoices ..................................... 3–98
      Processing Options for Recurring Invoices Report ........ 3–99
   Revising Recurring Invoices ...................................... 3–100
   Recycling Recurring Invoices .................................... 3–103
      Processing Options for Recycle Recurring Invoices ....... 3–104
Test Yourself: Working with Recurring Invoices ............................. 3–105

Manual Receipts Processing

   About Manual Receipts Processing .................................... 4–1
   Which Form Do You Use to Enter Manual Receipts? ............... 4–2
   What Are the Steps for Processing Manual Receipts? ............. 4–2
      Dates .......................................................... 4–4
      Original Document Types ....................................... 4–4
      Matching Document Types ..................................... 4–5
      Type of Input Codes .......................................... 4–5
   Update Invoices for Payment ......................................... 4–9
   Updating Invoices for Payment ..................................... 4–9
      Processing Options for A/R Speed Status Change ............ 4–12
Test Yourself: Updating Invoices for Payment ............................. 4–13
Work with Invoice Match Receipts ........................................ 4-15
  Working with Invoice Match Receipts .................................. 4-15
Displaying Open Items ....................................................... 4-16
Entering Basic Receipts ..................................................... 4-22
Reviewing the Results of Receipts Entry ................................. 4-26
Reviewing Gain and Loss Information ..................................... 4-27
  Example: Currency Gain/Loss ........................................... 4-27
  Invoice and Receipt ................................................... 4-28
  Journal Entries ......................................................... 4-28
Entering Receipts with Discounts .......................................... 4-29
  Example: Invoice Match with Discount ................................ 4-30
Entering Receipts without Discounts ....................................... 4-32
  Example: Invoice Match without Discount ................................ 4-32
Creating Chargebacks for Discount Amounts ............................. 4-34
  Example: Invoice Match – Create Chargeback for Discount Amount ....................................................... 4-34
  Test Yourself: Working with Invoice Match Receipts .............. 4-37
Work with Other Types of Receipts ......................................... 4-39
  Working with Other Types of Receipts ................................. 4-39
Entering Balance Forward Receipts ......................................... 4-40
  Example: Balance Forward Receipt .................................... 4-41
Entering Unapplied Receipts .................................................. 4-43
  Example: Unapplied Receipt ............................................ 4-43
Creating Chargeback Invoices .............................................. 4-45
  Example: Chargeback Invoice ........................................... 4-45
Entering Receipts with Write-Offs .......................................... 4-48
  Example: Invoice Match Receipt with Write-Off ...................... 4-49
Entering Receipt Adjustments ................................................ 4-51
  Example: Receipt Adjustment ........................................... 4-51
Entering “G” Type Receipts .................................................. 4-53
  Example: “G” Type Receipt ............................................. 4-53
  Test Yourself: Working with Other Types of Receipts .............. 4-56
Processing Options .......................................................... 4-59
  Processing Options for Receipts Entry ................................ 4-59
Approve and Post Receipts .................................................. 4-63
  Approving and Posting Receipts ........................................ 4-63
Reviewing and Approving Receipts for Posting .......................... 4-63
Posting Receipts ............................................................. 4-64
Work with Alternate Methods of Application ............................. 4-67
  Working with Alternate Methods of Application ...................... 4-67
Choosing a Group of Invoices ............................................... 4-68
Allocating a Receipt Automatically ........................................ 4-71
Spreading a Receipt Amount ............................................... 4-72
  Example: Spreading a Receipt Amount ................................ 4-73
Transferring an Unapplied Receipt to a New Account .................. 4-78
  Processing Receipts Using the Current Domestic Value Method .... 4-79
  Example: Current Domestic Value Method ............................. 4-80
Revise Receipts ............................................................. 4-83
  Revising Receipts ....................................................... 4-83
  Voiding a Receipt ....................................................... 4-84
## Table of Contents

Creating an NSF Receipt ................................................. 4–85
Print Receipt Information .............................................. 4–87
Printing Receipt Information ........................................... 4–87
Printing the Receipts Journal ......................................... 4–87
  Processing Options for Cash Receipts and Adjustments
    Journal Report ..................................................... 4–88
    Data Sequence for Receipts Journal ............................. 4–89
  Processing Options for Receipt Deposit Journal ................. 4–89
  Data Selection and Sequence for Receipt Deposit Journal ...... 4–90

### Receivables and Payables Netting

About Receivables and Payables Netting .............................. 5–1
Net Receivables and Payables ......................................... 5–3
  Netting Receivables and Payables ................................. 5–3
    Example: Netting for Receipts ................................ 5–4
  Netting for Receipts at Receipts Entry .......................... 5–5
    Processing Options for AP/AR Netting ......................... 5–9
  Netting for Receipts in Stand-Alone Mode ........................ 5–11
  Posting Netted Transactions for Receipts ........................ 5–14
    Processing Options for A/R Netting Post ........................ 5–14
Print Netting Reports .................................................. 5–15
  Printing Netting Reports .......................................... 5–15
  Printing the Receivables and Payables Netting Report ......... 5–16
    Data Selection for Receivables and Payables Netting Report 5–17
    Data Sequence for Receivables and Payables Netting Report 5–17
Creating the A/R and A/P Netting Report Workfile Table .......... 5–18
  Processing Options for Build Netting Report Workfile ......... 5–18
  Data Selection for Build Netting Report Workfile ............... 5–18
Printing the Netting – Aging Report ................................ 5–19
  Data Selection for the Netting – Aging Report .................. 5–20
  Data Sequence for the Netting – Aging Report .................. 5–20

### Automatic Receipts Processing

About Automatic Receipts Processing ............................... 6–1
  What Is the Purpose of Batch Receipts? ......................... 6–1
Load Bank Tapes ....................................................... 6–3
  Loading Bank Tapes ............................................... 6–3
    Processing Options for Load Your Custom Bank Tape ......... 6–5
    Data Selection for Load Your Custom Bank Tape ............... 6–5
Work with Speed Receipts ............................................. 6–7
  Working with Speed Receipts ..................................... 6–7
Setting Up Header Information ....................................... 6–11
  Example: Header Information .................................... 6–11
Selecting Open Items for Application ............................. 6–12
Applying Receipts to Invoices ...................................... 6–15
  Example: Invoice Match Receipt ................................. 6–15
Accounts Receivable

Applying Receipts to Statements ................................................. 6–17
Example: Statement Match Receipt ............................................. 6–17
Entering Unapplied Receipts ...................................................... 6–18
Example: Unapplied Receipt ..................................................... 6–19
Entering Chargebacks ............................................................... 6–20
Example: Receipt with a Chargeback ......................................... 6–21
Example: Stand-Alone Chargeback ........................................... 6–22
Processing Options for Speed Receipts Application ..................... 6–25
Enter Batch Receipts ............................................................... 6–27
Entering Batch Receipts ............................................................ 6–27
Entering Scanned Receipts ....................................................... 6–28
Entering Manual Receipts ....................................................... 6–30
Processing Options for Batch Receipts Entry .......................... 6–32
Data Selection ................................................................. 6–33
Process Batch Receipts ........................................................... 6–35
Processing Batch Receipts ...................................................... 6–35
Processing Options for Process Batch Receipts ....................... 6–36
Work with Unprocessed Items ................................................ 6–39
Working with Unprocessed Items ............................................. 6–39
Reviewing Unprocessed Items .................................................. 6–39
Changing Unprocessed Items ................................................... 6–42
Reviewing Batch Receipts Activity ........................................... 6–43
Bank Deposit Journal ............................................................ 6–44
Receipt Application Activity Report ....................................... 6–45
Test Yourself: Working with Batch Receipts ............................ 6–46

Credit and Collections Management

About Credit and Collections Management .............................. 7–1
Set Up Credit and Collection Information ................................ 7–3
Setting Up Credit and Collection Information ............................ 7–3
Defining Finance Charges ...................................................... 7–3
Defining a Credit Limit ........................................................ 7–5
Defining Collection Information ............................................. 7–6
Setting Up Category Codes for A/R ........................................ 7–7
Setting Up Credit Messages for A/R ........................................ 7–8
Update A/R Information for Customer Analysis ....................... 7–9
Updating A/R Information for Customer Analysis ..................... 7–9
Example: Updating Credit Messages ....................................... 7–11
Before ................................................................. 7–11
After ................................................................. 7–12
Processing Options for Credit Analysis Refresh ...................... 7–12
Data Selection and Sequence ................................................. 7–14
Determine Average Days Late .................................................. 7–15
Determining Average Days Late ............................................... 7–15
Example: Average Days Late Calculation ................................. 7–15
Weighting Calculation ........................................................ 7–15
Receipt Information ........................................................... 7–16
Total Weighted Days Calculation ......................................... 7–16
Data Selection for Recalculate Average Days Late .................... 7–17
# A/R Reports

## Table of Contents

Review Account Status Information ........................................... 7–19
   Reviewing Account Status Information .................................. 7–19
   Reviewing Aged “As of” Information ...................................... 7–21
   Reviewing Real-Time Information ......................................... 7–22
   Processing Options for Account Status Summary ....................... 7–23

Manage Credit Information ....................................................... 7–27
   Managing Credit Information .............................................. 7–27
   Reviewing Customer Accounts ............................................. 7–27
   Working Customer Accounts ............................................... 7–32
   Reviewing Account Balances .............................................. 7–34

Create Credit Reporting Tapes ................................................ 7–37
   Creating Credit Reporting Tapes ......................................... 7–37
   What Are the Requirements for Credit Reporting Tapes? ............... 7–38
   Processing Options for TRW and Dun & Bradstreet .................... 7–40
   Processing Options for Create CREDITEL Reporting Tape .......... 7–41

Manage Collections Information ............................................. 7–43
   Managing Collections Information ....................................... 7–43
   Reviewing Past-Due Accounts .......................................... 7–43
   Processing Options for Accounts Receivable ......................... 7–46
      Collections Manager .................................................... 7–46
   Reviewing Payment History ............................................... 7–46
   Reviewing Account Balances ............................................. 7–48
      Reviewing Balances by Administrator ................................ 7–48
      Reviewing Balances by Business Unit .................................. 7–50
   Working Past-Due Accounts ............................................... 7–51
      Reviewing Promises Messages ....................................... 7–52
      Entering Promises Messages ........................................ 7–53
   Reviewing Collection Management Information ....................... 7–55
   Test Yourself: Managing Credit and Collections Information .... 7–59

Print Credit and Collections Reports ...................................... 7–61
   Printing Credit and Collections Reports ............................... 7–61
   Printing the Open Credit/Collections Items Report .................. 7–61
      Printing the Outstanding Collections Items Version ............... 7–62
      Printing the Outstanding Credit Items Version .................... 7–62
      Processing Options for Outstanding Credit/Collections Items . 7–63
   Printing the A/R Account Summary Report ........................... 7–63
      Processing Options for Accounts Receivable Summary .......... 7–63
   Printing the Promises Listing Report .................................. 7–66
      Processing Options for Promises Listing .......................... 7–66
      Data Selection for Promises Listing ............................... 7–66

## A/R Reports

About A/R Standard and Analytical Reports .............................. 8–1
   Why Would You Print Standard Reports? .............................. 8–1
   Why Would You Print Analytical Reports? ............................ 8–1

Print Standard Reports .......................................................... 8–3
   Printing Standard Reports ................................................. 8–3
   Printing the Open A/R Summary Report ................................ 8–5
      Printing A/R Summary by Company .................................. 8–4
Accounts Receivable

Processing Options for Accounts Receivable Summary .......... 8–4
Printing A/R Summary by Category Code .......................... 8–7
Data Selection and Sequence for A/R Summary by
Category Code .................................................. 8–7
Printing A/R Summary by Parent .................................. 8–7
Printing the Open A/R Detail Report ............................... 8–9
Processing Options for Open A/R Detail ......................... 8–11
Data Selection for Open A/R Detail .............................. 8–12
Printing the Open A/R Foreign Amounts Report ................. 8–13
Processing Options for Open A/R with Foreign Amounts ...... 8–14
Print Analytical Reports .......................................... 8–17
Printing Analytical Reports ........................................ 8–17
Printing the Summary by Pay Status Report .................... 8–17
Processing Options for Summary by Pay Status ................. 8–18
Printing the Summary by Parent/Child Report ................. 8–19
Processing Options for Summary by Parent/Child .......... 8–21
Printing the Open A/R by Business Unit and Address Report .. 8–22
Processing Options for A/R Detail Report by Business
Unit/Address .................................................. 8–23
Data Selection and Sequence for Open A/R by Business Unit .. 8–24
Printing Additional Credit and Collections Reports ............ 8–25
Printing the Customer Receipts History Report ................. 8–25
Processing Options for Customer Receipts History .......... 8–26
Data Selection for the Customer Receipts History Report ..... 8–28
Printing the Disputed Items
(Outstanding Chargebacks) Report ............................. 8–28
Printing the Unresolved Matters Report ......................... 8–29
Processing Options for Unresolved A/R Matters Report .... 8–31
Data Selection and Sequence for the Unresolved
Matters Report ................................................ 8–31
Printing the Problem Accounts Receivable Report .......... 8–31
Processing Options for Problem Accounts Receivable ..... 8–32
Data Sequence for the Problem Accounts
Receivable Report ............................................ 8–32
Printing the Customer Totals by G/L Account Report .......... 8–33
Processing Options for Customer Totals by G/L Account .... 8–35
Data Sequence for the Customer Totals by G/L Account Report .... 8–35

A/R Draft Processing

About A/R Draft Processing ...................................... 9–1
What Are the Types of Drafts? .................................. 9–2
What Are the Steps for Processing Drafts? ....................... 9–2
Invoice Creation .............................................. 9–4
Draft Origination .............................................. 9–4
Draft Acceptance ............................................. 9–5
Draft Remittance .............................................. 9–5
Draft Collection .............................................. 9–6
Table of Contents

Print Invoices and Statements with Drafts ................................................. 9–9
  Printing Invoices and Statements with Drafts ....................................... 9–9
  Printing Invoices with Draft Attachments .......................................... 9–9
    Processing Options for A/R Invoice Print with Draft .......................... 9–11
    Data Selection and Sequence for Invoice Print with Draft ..................... 9–11
  Printing Statements with Draft Attachments ....................................... 9–12
    Processing Options for A/R Statements with Draft ........................... 9–14
    Data Selection and Sequence for Statement Print with Draft ................. 9–14
Enter Drafts ......................................................................................... 9–15
  Entering Drafts .................................................................................. 9–15
  Entering Manual Drafts ........................................................................ 9–16
    Processing Options for Drafts Entry ............................................... 9–19
  Creating Automatic Drafts .................................................................... 9–20
Revise Drafts ....................................................................................... 9–23
  Revising Drafts .................................................................................. 9–23
  Locating Drafts .................................................................................. 9–23
  Changing Draft Information ................................................................. 9–25
    Processing Options for A/R Draft Revisions ...................................... 9–26
  Updating Drafts for Payment ................................................................ 9–27
Approve and Post A/R Drafts ................................................................... 9–29
  Approving and Posting Drafts ............................................................... 9–29
  Reviewing and Approving Drafts for A/R .............................................. 9–29
  Printing the A/R Draft Journal Report .................................................. 9–30
    Processing Options for Draft Journal Report ...................................... 9–31
  Posting Drafts for A/R ........................................................................ 9–31
Select Drafts for Remittance .................................................................... 9–33
  Selecting Drafts for Remittance ............................................................ 9–33
  Creating or Revising Bank Registers ...................................................... 9–33
    Example: Bank Register .................................................................... 9–34
    Processing Options for Draft Selection for Payment ........................... 9–38
  Reviewing A/R Draft Bank Registers ...................................................... 9–38
Work with Draft Remittance ..................................................................... 9–41
  Working with Draft Remittance .............................................................. 9–41
  Creating Magnetic Draft Tape Tables ..................................................... 9–41
  Copying Magnetic Draft Tables to Tape .................................................... 9–43
    Processing Options for Copy Tape File to Tape (A/R Drafts) .............. 9–45
  Resetting the Magnetic Draft Tape Copy Sequence for A/R ..................... 9–45
    Processing Options for Reset Tape Copy Sequence ............................. 9–47
  Remitting Paper Drafts ......................................................................... 9–47
    Running Paper Draft Remittance ........................................................ 9–48
    Correcting Problems with Paper Draft Remittance ................................. 9–49
    Processing Options for Paper Draft Remittance ..................................... 9–50
    Data Selection for Paper Draft Remittance .......................................... 9–50
  Posting Draft Remittance Journal Entries .............................................. 9–51
Work with A/R Draft Collection .............................................................. 9–53
  Working with A/R Draft Collection ........................................................ 9–53
  Updating Draft Payment Status .............................................................. 9–53
    Processing Options for Status Update ................................................ 9–55
  Notifying Customers of Non-Sufficient Funds ....................................... 9–55
    Example: Non-Sufficient Funds Letter ................................................. 9–56
Accounts Receivable

Processing Options for Draft NSF Notification .......... 9–57
Reviewing and Approving Journal Entries for A/R
Draft Collections .................................................. 9–58
Posting Journal Entries for A/R Draft Collections .......... 9–58

Automatic Debits

About Automatic Debits ........................................... 10–1
Work with Automatic Debits ....................................... 10–3
Working with Automatic Debits ................................... 10–3
Processing Automatic Debits ...................................... 10–4
  Processing Options for Processing Automatic Debits .. 10–5
  Data Selection for Processing Automatic Debits ....... 10–7
Reviewing and Approving Automatic Debits ................. 10–7
Posting Automatic Debits ....................................... 10–9
Copying Files to Tape or Diskette ............................. 10–9
  Processing Options for Copy Tape File to Tape (Auto Debits) . 10–10
  Data Sequence for Copy Files to Tape or Diskette .. 10–11

Periodic

Period-End Processing

About Period-End Processing .................................... 11–1
Work with Credit Note Reimbursements ........................ 11–3
Working with Credit Note Reimbursements ................. 11–3
Generating Credit Note Reimbursements ....................... 11–4
  Processing Options for A/R Credit Note Reimbursements ... 11–7
Reviewing and Approving Credit Note Reimbursements .... 11–8
Posting Credit Note Reimbursements ...................... 11–8
Process “As Of” Reports ........................................ 11–9
  Processing “As Of” Reports ................................ 11–9
  Generating “As Of” Date Information ...................... 11–9
  Processing Options for Date File Generation ............. 11–10
Printing “As Of” Reports ...................................... 11–10
  Printing the Open A/R Detail Report ....................... 11–11
  Processing Options for Open A/R Detail Reports ...... 11–12
  Printing the Open A/R Summary Report .................... 11–14
  Printing the Open A/R by Business Unit and Address Report . 11–15
Process A/R Integrity Reports .................................. 11–17
  Processing A/R Integrity Reports ......................... 11–17
  Running the A/R to G/L by Batch Report ................ 11–18
  Running the A/R to G/L by Offset Account Report ...... 11–20
  Correcting A/R Out-of-Balance Conditions .............. 11–21
# Statement and Reminder Processing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>About Statement and Reminder Processing</td>
<td>12-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applying Late Payment Charges</td>
<td>12-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customizing Statement Messages</td>
<td>12-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing Statements</td>
<td>12-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing Invoices</td>
<td>12-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing Past Due Notifications</td>
<td>12-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delinquency Notices</td>
<td>12-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment Reminders</td>
<td>12-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing Collection and Reminder Reports</td>
<td>12-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work with Late Payment Charges</td>
<td>12-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with Late Payment Charges</td>
<td>12-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing Finance Charge Invoices</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Updating Finance Charges</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing Options for Global Update – Finance</td>
<td>12-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charge Percentage</td>
<td>12-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calculating Finance Charges</td>
<td>12-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing Options for Printing Finance Charge Invoices</td>
<td>12-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correcting Discrepancies</td>
<td>12-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing Interest Invoices</td>
<td>12-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating Interest Invoices</td>
<td>12-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing Options for Interest Invoice Generation</td>
<td>12-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reviewing and Approving Interest Invoices</td>
<td>12-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posting Interest Invoices</td>
<td>12-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print Statements</td>
<td>12-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing Statements</td>
<td>12-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing A/R Statements</td>
<td>12-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing Statements in Proof or Final Mode</td>
<td>12-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing Statements with or without</td>
<td>12-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consolidation of Companies</td>
<td>12-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statement without Consolidation of Companies by Customer Number</td>
<td>12-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statement with Consolidation of Companies by Customer Number</td>
<td>12-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing Options for Accounts Receivable Statements</td>
<td>12-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing Multi-Currency Statements</td>
<td>12-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing an Italian Statement</td>
<td>12-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing Options for A/R Statements – Italian</td>
<td>12-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Selection and Sequence for Italian A/R Statement</td>
<td>12-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test Yourself: Printing a Statement</td>
<td>12-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print A/R Invoices</td>
<td>12-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing A/R Invoices</td>
<td>12-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing Options for Simple A/R Invoices Print</td>
<td>12-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work with Past Due Notifications</td>
<td>12-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with Past Due Notifications</td>
<td>12-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing Payment Reminders</td>
<td>12-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing Payment Reminders in Proof Mode</td>
<td>12-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing Payment Reminders in Final Mode</td>
<td>12-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing Options for Payment Reminder – Final</td>
<td>12-42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Data Selection for Print Payment Reminders .......................... 12-42
Printing Delinquency Notices ........................................... 12-43
Determining the Level of Severity .................................... 12-43
  Example: Determining the Level of Severity for a Delinquency Notice .......................... 12-43
Printing the Notices ...................................................... 12-45
Printing a Multi-Currency Delinquency Notice ......................... 12-47
Printing Delinquency Notices in Multiple Languages ............... 12-47
Creating Data Dictionary Items ....................................... 12-47
Creating Vocabulary Overrides ...................................... 12-47
Processing Options for Printing Delinquency Notices ............... 12-48
Work with Collection and Reminder Information ...................... 12-51
  Working with Collection and Reminder Information .............. 12-51
Choosing a Customer for Collections ................................ 12-51
Choosing an Invoice for Collections ................................ 12-53
Processing Options for Reminder Report/Update ..................... 12-54
  Processing Options for Reminder Report–Proof & Final ........ 12-55
Processing the A/R Detail Report with Reminders .................... 12-56
Processing Options for Accounts Receivable .........................
  Detail – Reminder Info ................................................ 12-57
Test Yourself: Working with Collection and Reminder Information .............................................. 12-58

Currency Gains and Losses

About Currency Gains and Losses ........................................ 13-1
  What Are the Types of Gains and Losses? ........................ 13-3
  Example: Gain/Loss for a Foreign Invoice ......................... 13-4
  Example: Gain/Loss for a Domestic Invoice ....................... 13-5
  Which Ledgers Are Used to Calculate Gains and Losses? ....... 13-6
  How Are Gains and Losses Calculated? ............................ 13-7
Understand AAI’s for Gains and Losses ................................. 13-9
About AAI’s for Gains and Losses ...................................... 13-9
  Which AAI’s Are Used to Calculate Realized Gains and Losses? ........................................ 13-9
  Which AAI’s Are Used to Calculate Unrealized Gains and Losses? .................................... 13-10
Calculate Unrealized Gains and Losses ................................ 13-11
Calculating Unrealized Gains and Losses ............................. 13-11
  Processing Options for A/R Currency Gains & Losses ............ 13-14

Setup

System Setup

About System Setup ....................................................... 14-1
  What Do the A/R Setup Features Do? .............................. 14-2
# Table of Contents

Set Up A/R Constants .................................................. 14-3
  Setting Up A/R Constants ........................................... 14-3
  Setting Up the Default Company ................................. 14-4
  Setting Up A/R Notification Controls .......................... 14-5
  Setting Up Automatic Receipts Processing .................... 14-5
  Setting Up A/R Aging Information ............................... 14-6
  Setting Up Batch Control for A/R .............................. 14-7
  Setting Up A/R Batch Approval .................................. 14-8
  Setting Up the Automatic Offset Method for A/R ............. 14-9
  Example: Journal Entry Created by Automatic Offset ........ 14-10
  Setting Up the G/L Interface Control for A/R ............... 14-10

Work with Payment Terms ............................................ 14-13
  Working with Payment Terms .................................... 14-13
  Setting Up Due Date Rules ...................................... 14-14
  Setting Up Work Day Calendars ................................ 14-20
  Setting Up Payment Term Codes ................................. 14-22
    About Payment Term Codes .................................. 14-22
    Setting Up Installment Payments ............................. 14-25

Understand AAI s .................................................... 14-29
  About AAI s ....................................................... 14-29
    Elements of an AAI Form ................................... 14-30
    Default AAI s .................................................. 14-30

Understand AAI s for A/R ........................................... 14-33
  About AAI s for A/R ............................................ 14-33
  How Does the System Search for AAI s? ......................... 14-34
    Example: Search for AAI s .................................. 14-35
    Example: Search for AAI s in a Multi-Currency Environment 14-35

What AAI s Are Available for A/R? ................................. 14-35
  Receivables Class (RC) Accounts ............................... 14-36
  Receivables Bank (RB) Accounts ............................... 14-37
  Unapplied Receipts (RCUC) ..................................... 14-37
  Adjustments (RAxx) ............................................. 14-37
  Discounts Taken (RKD) .......................................... 14-38
  Credit Note Reimbursements (RP) .............................. 14-38
  Finance Charges (RFC and RFD) ............................... 14-38
  Netting Suspense Account (NC) ................................ 14-39
  Realized Gains and Losses (RG and RL) ......................... 14-39
  Unrealized Gains and Losses (RV, RW, and RR) ............... 14-40

Work with AAI s ..................................................... 14-41
  Working with AAI s .............................................. 14-41
    Processing Options for Automatic Accounting Instructions 14-47

Understand User Defined Codes ................................... 14-49
  About User Defined Codes ..................................... 14-49
    Elements of a User Defined Code Form ....................... 14-50

Understand User Defined Codes for A/R .......................... 14-51
  About User Defined Codes for A/R ............................. 14-51
  Which User Defined Codes Are Available for A/R? ............. 14-51
    Document Type Codes ........................................ 14-52
    Payment Status Codes (00/PS) ................................ 14-54
    Payment Instrument Codes (00/PY) ......................... 14-55
Accounts Receivable

Tax Calculation Codes (00/EX) ........................................ 14-55
Aging Vocabulary Codes (03/AG) .............................. 14-56
Adjustment Reason Codes (03/AR) ............................ 14-56
Valid Credit Message Codes (00/CM) ......................... 14-56
Collection Reason Codes (03/CL) .......................... 14-57
Credit Reporting Payment Terms Codes (03/PT) ............. 14-57
Receipt Type Input Codes (03/TT) .......................... 14-57
Dun & Bradstreet Rating Codes (01/DB) .................. 14-58
TRW Rating Codes (01/TR) ................................. 14-58
Autocash Algorithm Codes (01/AA) ......................... 14-58
Language Preference Codes (01/LP) ......................... 14-59
Work with User Defined Codes ............................ 14-61
Working with User Defined Codes ......................... 14-61
Processing Options for User Defined Codes ............... 14-61
Set Up Next Numbers ...................................... 14-65
Setting Up Next Numbers ..................................... 14-65
Set Up Customer Bank Information ......................... 14-73
Setting Up Customer Bank Information ..................... 14-73
Setting Up Bank Account Cross-References for A/R .... 14-73
Adding A/R Cross-References ............................ 14-73
Verifying Cross-References for A/R ....................... 14-75
Reviewing the Bank Account Exception Report ............ 14-76
Reviewing the Address Book Exception Report ............ 14-76
Setting Up Bank Account Addresses ......................... 14-77
Setting Up Bank Account Information for A/R ........... 14-78
Processing Options for Bank Account Information ......... 14-80
Set Up A/R Draft Processing ................................ 14-81
Setting Up A/R Draft Processing ......................... 14-81
Setting Up AAI’s for A/R Drafts .......................... 14-81
AAIs for Drafts Receivable (RD1x) ......................... 14-82
AAIs for Drafts Remitted for Cash (RD2x) .......... 14-82
AAIs for Drafts Remitted for Discount (RD3x) ....... 14-82
Setting Up User Defined Codes for A/R Drafts ........... 14-83
Payment Instrument Codes ............................... 14-83
Pay Status Codes ........................................ 14-84
Setting Up Drafts as the Default Payment Instrument .... 14-85
Setting Up Statements for A/R Drafts ..................... 14-86
Setting Up Bank Account Information for A/R Drafts .... 14-87
Setting Up Cross-References for A/R Drafts Bank Accounts 14-87
Printing the Bank Account Exception Report for A/R Drafts 14-90
Processing Options for Bank Account Exception Report 14-91
Setting Up Letters for Non-Sufficient Funds .......... 14-92
Processing Options for NSF Notification Generic Text ... 14-93

Statement and Reminder Setup

About Statement and Reminder Setup ......................... 15-1
Set Up Statement Messages .................................. 15-3
Setting Up Statement Messages ............................. 15-3
Entering Messages for A/R Statements ...................... 15-3
Table of Contents

- Setting Up Model Messages for Statements ........................................ 15–6
- Processing Options for A/R Special Print Messages .......................... 15–8
- Set Up Text for Payment Reminders .................................................. 15–9
- Setting Up Text for Payment Reminders ............................................. 15–9
- Entering Reminder Messages .......................................................... 15–9
- Setting Up Model Reminder Messages .............................................. 15–13
- Processing Options for A/R Special Print Messages .......................... 15–14
- Revise Text For Delinquency Notices ............................................... 15–15
- Revising Text For Delinquency Notices .......................................... 15–15
- Work with Interest Rate Information ................................................. 15–19
- Working with Interest Rate Information ........................................... 15–19
- Defining Interest Rates .................................................................... 15–19
- Entering Text For Interest Invoices .................................................. 15–21

A/R Tax Setup

- About A/R Tax Setup ........................................................................ 16–1
- Set Up Tax Authorities for A/R ......................................................... 16–3
- Setting Up Tax Authorities for A/R ................................................... 16–3
- Set Up Tax Rates and Areas .............................................................. 16–5
- Setting Up Tax Rates and Areas for A/R ............................................ 16–5
- Understand Tax Explanation Codes for A/R ..................................... 16–11
- About Tax Explanation Codes for A/R .............................................. 16–11
  - What Are the Types of A/R Tax Explanation Codes? ...................... 16–11
  - How Does the System Calculate A/R Taxes? ............................... 16–12
    - Example: Sales Tax (S) ........................................................... 16–12
    - Example: VAT (V) ............................................................... 16–13
    - Example: VAT + Sales Tax .................................................... 16–14
    - Example: VAT + Use Tax (B) ............................................... 16–15
- Understand AAlS for A/R Taxes ......................................................... 16–17
- About AAlS for A/R Taxes ............................................................... 16–17
- Set Up Tax Rules by Company for A/R ............................................ 16–21
- Setting Up Tax Rules by Company for A/R ....................................... 16–21
  - Examples: Calculation Rules ....................................................... 16–26
    - Example: Calculate Tax on Gross with Discount ....................... 16–27
    - Example: Calculate Tax on Gross without Discount .................. 16–27
    - Example: Calculate Discount on Gross with Tax ..................... 16–28
    - Example: Calculate Discount on Gross without Tax ................. 16–28

Advanced & Technical

Batch Invoice Processing

- About Batch Invoice Processing ..................................................... 17–1
- What Happens When You Process Batch Invoices? ......................... 17–1
- Review Batch Invoices ................................................................. 17–5
- Reviewing Batch Invoices ............................................................. 17–5
- Processing Options for A/R Batch File Revisions .......................... 17–9
## Accounts Receivable

- Revise Batch Invoices .................................................. 17–11
- Revising Batch Invoices .................................................. 17–11
- Processing Options for A/R Batch File Revisions ................. 17–16
- Process Batch Invoices .................................................. 17–17
- Processing Batch Invoices .............................................. 17–17
- Submitting Invoices for Processing .................................. 17–17
- Processing Options for A/R Batch File Processing ............ 17–18
- Verifying Batch Invoice Information ................................. 17–20
- Revising Batch Invoices .................................................. 17–21
- Posting Batch Invoices .................................................. 17–22
- Purge Processed Batch Invoices ...................................... 17–23
- Purging Processed Batch Invoices .................................... 17–23
- Processing Options for Generic Purge Program ................. 17–24

## A/R Cash Forecasting

- About A/R Cash Forecasting ............................................ 18–1
- Forecast A/R Cash Flow .................................................. 18–3
- Forecasting A/R Cash Flow ............................................. 18–3
- Processing Options for A/R Cash Forecasting ............... 18–4

## ABC Customer Analysis

- About ABC Customer Analysis ......................................... 19–1
- Review Customer Activity ............................................... 19–3
- Reviewing Customer Activity .......................................... 19–3
- What Does the System Calculate? .................................... 19–4
- Processing Options for ABC Account Analysis ............... 19–5

## Technical Processes

- About Technical Processes ................................................ 20–1
- Update A/R from the Address Book .................................. 20–3
- Updating A/R from the Address Book ................................ 20–3
- Example: Updating A/R from the Address Book .............. 20–3
- Processing Options for Update A/R from Address Book ...... 20–5
- Work with YTD Invoice Amounts ...................................... 20–7
- Working with YTD Invoice Amounts ................................. 20–7
- Updating Customer YTD Invoice Amounts ...................... 20–7
- Processing Options for Update YTD Invoice Amount ........ 20–8
- Reworking Customer YTD Invoiced Amounts .................. 20–10
- Reviewing Customer YTD Invoice Amounts .................... 20–11
- Update Balance Forward Records .................................. 20–13
- Updating Balance Forward Records ............................... 20–13
- Example: Creating Balance Forward Records ................. 20–14
- Processing Options for Balance Forward Update (A/R Statements) ........................................ 20–15
- Purge A/R Information .................................................... 20–17
- Purging A/R Information ............................................... 20–17
Appendices

Appendix A – Data Models .............................................................. A–1
Appendix B – Test Yourself Answers ............................................. B–1
  Entering Customers ............................................................... B–1
  Working with Standard Invoices .............................................. B–1
  Entering Speed Invoices ......................................................... B–1
  Posting Invoices ................................................................. B–1
  Working with Customer Ledger Information .............................. B–2
  Working with Recurring Invoices ............................................. B–2
  Updating Invoices for Payment .............................................. B–2
  Working with Invoice Match Receipts ...................................... B–2
  Working with Other Types of Receipts .................................... B–2
  Working with Batch Receipts ................................................ B–3
  Managing Collections Information ...................................... B–3
  Printing a Statement ............................................................ B–3
  Working with Collection and Reminder Information .............. B–3
Appendix C – Quick Reference Codes for A/R ............................... C–1
Appendix D — Currency Codes and Decimals ............................... D–1
  Multi-Currency Option “Off” ................................................. D–1
  Multi-Currency Option “On” ................................................... D–1
    “Units” Ledgers ............................................................ D–1
    “Amounts” Ledgers ........................................................ D–1
    Totals on Reports .......................................................... D–2
    Monetary (Currency-Specific) Accounts ............................... D–2
    Technical Considerations ............................................... D–3
    Detailed Posting by Currency ........................................... D–4
    Summary Posting by Currency .......................................... D–4
Appendix E – Batch Input Setup .................................................. E–1
  Table 1 – Required or Conditionally Required Fields ............. E–3
  Table 2 – Optional Control Fields ...................................... E–5
  Table 3 – Additional Fields ................................................. E–7
  Table 4 – Ignored Fields ..................................................... E–11
Appendix F – A/R Statement Processing ....................................... F–1
Appendix G — Functional Servers ............................................ G–1
  Example: Voucher Processing Functional Server .................. G–2
Glossary

Index

Exercises
Accounts Receivable Overview

The J.D. Edwards Accounts Receivable system helps you manage your cash flow so that you have the flexibility you need for effective cash management. It provides real-time information so you can make immediate decisions about extending credit, forwarding collections, and applying cash.

With the Accounts Receivable system, you can streamline the day-to-day functions of your entire Accounts Receivable department. You can simplify and accelerate the process of applying receipts, and have up-to-date information that improves communication among your billing and credit and collections departments.

For organizations that have offices around the world, J.D. Edwards software provides the flexibility needed to operate in multiple countries, each with unique currency, language, and statutory requirements.

System Integration

The Accounts Receivable system works with other J.D. Edwards systems to ensure that all receivables transactions and information are fully integrated into accounts receivable.

The following graphic shows the other J.D. Edwards systems that generate invoices and integrate with Accounts Receivable.
System Integration Path

Address Book

Inventory Management

Work Order Management

Enterprise Requirements Planning and Execution

Product Data Management

Sales Order Management

Purchase Order Management

Warehouse Management

Manufacturing Accounting

Service Billing

Payroll

Procurement

Contract Management

Job Cost

Fixed Assets

SAR

Accounts Receivable

Accounts Payable

General Accounting
The following systems integrate with the Accounts Receivable system as described.

**Sales Order Management**
After shipping and invoicing a product, the sales order is updated and invoices are created in accounts receivable. Once created, these are regular A/R invoices and can have receipts applied to them.

**Property Management**
Tenant invoices are created for recurring charges, sales overages, common area expenses, rent escalations, and one-time charges. When these items are posted, invoices are created in accounts receivable. Once created, you can run reports and apply receipts to the invoices.

**Contract Billing**
After contract-based services are rendered, invoices are created in the Contract Billing system. When these invoices are posted and the accounts receivable is updated, you can handle the invoices like any other A/R invoices.

**Service Billing**
After work-order-based services are rendered, invoices are created in the Service Billing system. When these invoices are posted and the accounts receivable is updated, you can handle the invoices like any other A/R invoices.

**Electronic Mail**
Credit and collections information is tracked as “promises, promises” messages. The customer’s mailbox is updated when you send a delinquency notice.

**Accounts Receivable Features**

Typically, you generate invoices using external sources or other J.D. Edwards systems, such as Sales Order Management and Property Management. However, you can also enter invoices directly or generate recurring invoices using the Accounts Receivable system.

The features of the Accounts Receivable system include:

- Customer management
- Workflow management
- Multi-national functionality
**Customer Management**

With efficient customer management, you can improve your customer relationships and leverage your organization’s ability to respond to credit and collections issues. As part of managing your customer information, you determine:

- Whether a customer receives a statement, and if so, the language in which it is printed
- Whether you assess finance charges or interest charges
- How you handle credit memos
- If you want to assign a specific person for credit and collection management

On a customer-by-customer basis, you can review information such as open balances and paid items.

**Workflow Management**

With true workflow management, the system provides features that allow you to implement your current objectives and make adjustments when those objectives change. The features of workflow management include:

- Multiple invoice entry methods
- Receivables and payables netting
- Credit and collections management
- Receipt application
- Reporting

**Multiple Invoice Entry Methods**

Enter invoices by the method that is most efficient for you. Choose from either of the following methods:

- **Standard.** Use this method to enter a recurring invoice, create a split payment invoice, or create a credit memo. You can also use this method to create model journal entries and percent journal entries for your invoices.

- **Speed.** Use this method when you have several simple invoices to enter. This high-performance method allows you to quickly enter invoices that have only one pay item and simple accounting instructions.
Drafts, which are promises to pay debts, are used in various countries around the world. Because of the legal nature of the underlying liabilities, requirements and procedures for draft processing differ from those for regular invoices. Therefore, you must classify, track, and report drafts separately from other types of obligations.

**Receivables and Payables Netting**

When you do a high volume of business with another organization as both a customer and a supplier, you can net your receivable and payable transactions with that organization. This allows you and the other organization to mutually resolve your open transactions with a single payment.

**Credit and Collections Management**

Credit and collections management requires you to maintain a balance between credit extended and cash flow. To successfully manage your credit and collections, you need an accurate picture of your customers’ account balances and credit histories.

With the credit and collections management features, you can:

- Work more credit accounts more aggressively with daily, system-generated lists of customers requiring attention
- Define multiple aging categories for a better balance between risk and control
- Accelerate collections efforts by sending out prompt and regular notices to past-due accounts, in your customer’s language and currency
- Assign varying interest rates for your customers, or designate a customer as exempt from interest charges

The Accounts Receivable system works within the context of your business environment. For example, any customer account can be associated with a parent or national account, providing you with the total credit exposure for a group of related companies.

**Receipt Application**

Prompt receipt application means that you have timely information about each customer’s credit position so that your credit and collections department can extend credit wisely.

For controlled, efficient, and accurate results, you can apply receipts in either of the following ways:

- Manually – to apply receipts to a customer’s open items or to a specific invoice number and amount
Accounts Receivable

- Automatically – to apply receipts using a magnetic tape from your bank with algorithms at the company or customer level

**Reporting**

Successful accounts receivable management requires timely and accurate information about cash flow, customer terms, discount opportunities, aging information, and so on. The Accounts Receivable system provides this type of information, both online and in report format. It also provides the following types of reporting:

- “As of” reporting. Produce a “snapshot” of your cash position with reports as of the last posting or cut-off date.
- Exception reporting. Resolve exceptional conditions with reports that show accounts with past-due amounts. Review account inconsistencies, such as unapplied cash, credits, or partial payments, from the Unresolved Matters report.

**Multi-National Functionality**

Multi-national functionality allows you to build a global customer network to optimize your credit and collection efforts. The multi-national functionality in the Accounts Receivable system includes:

**Currency processing**

Create invoices in either the domestic or foreign currency, using any currency in the world – from the Australian dollar to the Belgian franc. Apply receipts in a domestic or foreign currency and forecast receipts for your receivables by currency.

**Multiple languages**

Communicate with customers in their preferred languages to enhance relationships and reduce potential misunderstanding regarding invoices and other correspondence.
Account Numbering Concepts

This guide uses the Business Unit/Object/Subsidiary standard notation for account numbers.

The account number includes both the Where and What. You can use periods, commas, or other user-defined symbols to separate the components of the account number. The period (.) separator is the default.

See Also

- Creating a Flexible Format (P0907) in the General Accounting II Guide for information about how to set up the different account numbering methods

Business Unit - The “Where”

The business unit describes where in your organization the transaction will have an impact. It represents the lowest organizational level within your business – where you record all revenues, expenses, assets, liabilities, and equities. For example, a business unit can be a department, branch office, or truck.

Business units are unique 12-character, alphanumeric fields. The following applies:

- A business unit can belong to only one company.
- A company can have several business units.
- Each company has at least one business unit for the balance sheet.
Object.Subsidiary - The “What”

The Object.Subsidiary represents what kind of transaction is being created. An object is a description of the transaction, for example, Cash in Bank. A subsidiary is an expanded description of the object account, for example, Cash in Bank.FNB (First National Bank).

There are two parts of the “what”:

- Object (four, five, or six characters, depending on your organization’s setup)
- Subsidiary (one to eight characters)

Accounts Receivable System Flow

When you charge a customer for products or services, you create or generate an invoice. After you receive payment, you apply the receipt. The following graphic illustrates this process.
**Cash Receipts:**
Billing programs outside the Accounts Receivable system
Tables Used by Accounts Receivable

Tables and Information Flow

- Address Book
- Customer Master (F0301)
- Invoices
  - Accounts Receivable Ledger (F0311)
  - Account Ledger (F0911)
    - POST
      - Account Ledger (F0911)
      - Account Balances (F0902)
Tables and Descriptions

The Accounts Receivable system uses the following tables:

**Address Book Master**

*(F0101)*

Stores customer address information, including:

- Customer name
- Customer effective date
- Category codes

**Customer Master**

*(F0301)*

Stores invoice information including customer names and the following accounts receivable information:

- Year-to-date invoiced
- Prior-year-end invoiced
- Year-to-date finance charges
- Payment terms
- G/L offset
- Payment instrument

**A/R Ledger (F0311)**

Stores the following:

- One record for each pay item on an invoice
- A matching document (receipt, adjustment, or spread), which is attached to the original invoice

**Account Balances**

*(F0902)*

Stores summary transactions in the G/L, including:

- Net postings for each period
- Year-to-date balances
- Prior year balances
- Inception-to-date balances

**Account Ledger (F0911)**

Stores detail transactions in the G/L, including:

- Account numbers
- G/L date and amounts
- Journal entry line descriptions
The Accounts Receivable menus are listed below. This list does not show navigation among the menus.

**Accounts Receivable G03**

**Daily Processes**
- Customer and Invoice Entry G0311
- Manual Receipts Processing G0312
- Automatic Receipts Processing G0313
- Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods G03111
- Accounts Receivable Reports G0314
- Credit and Collection Management G0315
- A/R Drafts Daily Operations G03111
- A/R Draft Remittance and Collection G031112

**Periodic Operations**
- Periodic Processes G0321
- Statement and Reminder Processing G0322

**Setup Operations**
- Accounts Receivable Setup G0341
- Tax Processing and Reporting G0021

**Advanced and Technical Operations**
- A/R Advanced and Technical Operations G0331
- Batch Invoice Processing G03311
- Interest Invoicing G03312
- EDI Processing G4726
Training Environment Case Study

Company Structure

A Model Financial/Distribution Company (company 00100) has its corporate headquarters in Denver, Colorado. Three branch offices report to the Denver headquarters:

- Denver
- Houston
- San Francisco

Each branch office performs sales, marketing, and support functions for its regions. Administrative and accounting functions are done at corporate headquarters. Expenses and revenues are tracked by branch office.
The following illustration shows the business unit structure for company 00100. Notice that the balance sheet business unit (100) has the same identifier as company 00100. Refer to this organization when you do the training exercises.
**Chart of Accounts Structure**

The chart of accounts identifies the accounts assigned to the business units within your company’s reporting structure. It controls:

- How amounts are posted (Posting Edit Code)
- The level of detail (LOD) for account balances
- Accounts assigned to different business units (indicated by X)

The following is a partial chart of accounts. Refer to it when you do the training exercises.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Post Edit</th>
<th>LOD</th>
<th>B/S BU100</th>
<th>ADM BU90</th>
<th>DEN BU210</th>
<th>HOU-BU400</th>
<th>SFO BU600</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Assets</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1001</td>
<td>Current Assets</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1100</td>
<td>Cash</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1105</td>
<td>Petty Cash</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1110</td>
<td>Cash in Banks</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1110.BEAR</td>
<td>Cash in Banks/Bear Creek</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1110.FIB</td>
<td>Cash in Banks/First Interstate</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1130</td>
<td>Short-Term Investments</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1131</td>
<td>Certificates of Deposit</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1133</td>
<td>Treasury Bills</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1137</td>
<td>Savings Accounts</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200</td>
<td>Accounts Receivable</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1210</td>
<td>Trade Accounts Receivable</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1215</td>
<td>Allow for Doubtful Accts</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1218</td>
<td>Finance Charges Receivable</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1220</td>
<td>Notes Receivable</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1222</td>
<td>Drafts Receivable</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1224</td>
<td>Remittance Receivable</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1230</td>
<td>Employee Receivables</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1240</td>
<td>VAT Recoverable</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1290</td>
<td>Other Accounts Receivable</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1291</td>
<td>Intercompany Accounts</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1299</td>
<td>Credit Note Reimbursement</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1300</td>
<td>Work in Progress</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1310</td>
<td>Capital Projects</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1400</td>
<td>Inventory</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1800</td>
<td>Prepaid Expenses</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1810</td>
<td>Prepaid Insurance</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1890</td>
<td>Other Prepaid Expenses</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Accounts Receivable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Post</th>
<th>Edit</th>
<th>LOD</th>
<th>B/S BU100</th>
<th>ADM BU90</th>
<th>DEN BU210</th>
<th>HOU BU400</th>
<th>SFO BU600</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Fixed Assets</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Property and Equipment</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2020</td>
<td>Buildings</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2060</td>
<td>Furniture &amp; Office Equipment</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2070</td>
<td>Computer</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2100</td>
<td>Accumulated Depreciation</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2120</td>
<td>Accum Depr - Buildings</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2160</td>
<td>Accum Depr - Office Furn/Equip</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2170</td>
<td>Accum Depr - Computer</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3900</td>
<td>Other Assets</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4000</td>
<td>Liabilities and Equity</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4010</td>
<td>Current Liabilities</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4100</td>
<td>Accounts Payable</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4110</td>
<td>Accounts Payable - Trade</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4112</td>
<td>A/P Voucher Logging Distrib.</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4120</td>
<td>drafts Payable</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4130</td>
<td>Notes Payable</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4190</td>
<td>Accounts Payable - Other</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4200</td>
<td>Accrued Payroll Liabilities</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4400</td>
<td>Other Accrued Liabilities</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4430</td>
<td>Accrued Taxes</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4431</td>
<td>VAT Payable</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4433</td>
<td>Sales &amp; Use Tax Payable</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4450</td>
<td>Withholding Taxes Payable</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4510</td>
<td>Income Taxes Payable</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4600</td>
<td>Long Term Liabilities</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4610</td>
<td>Notes Payable</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4690</td>
<td>Long Term Debt</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4900</td>
<td>Stockholders’ Equity</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4910</td>
<td>Common Stock</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4920</td>
<td>Paid In Capital</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4930</td>
<td>Translation Gain/Loss</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4980</td>
<td>Retained Earnings</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4999</td>
<td>YTD Income (Loss)</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5000</td>
<td>Revenues</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5005</td>
<td>Sales - Product A</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5010</td>
<td>Store Sales</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5030</td>
<td>Contract Sales</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5060</td>
<td>Less Returns &amp; Allowances</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5070</td>
<td>Less Sales Discounts</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5100</td>
<td>Sales - Product B</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5110</td>
<td>Service Sales</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5200</td>
<td>Sales - Other</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5206</td>
<td>Finance Charge Income Credit</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Post Edit</td>
<td>LOD</td>
<td>B/S</td>
<td>ADM</td>
<td>DEN</td>
<td>HOU</td>
<td>SFO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6000</td>
<td>Direct Costs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6010</td>
<td>Cost Of Sales - Product A</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6020</td>
<td>Prime Cost of Goods</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6030</td>
<td>Scrap</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6040</td>
<td>Freight</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6100</td>
<td>Cost Of Sales - Product B</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6120</td>
<td>Prime Cost of Goods</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6130</td>
<td>Scrap</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6140</td>
<td>Freight</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6200</td>
<td>Damage Credit/Write-off</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6210</td>
<td>Disputed Tax/Freight Write-off</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6250</td>
<td>Minor Amount Write-off</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6300</td>
<td>Cost of Sales - Other</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7000</td>
<td>Other Direct Expenses</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7900</td>
<td>Allocated Overhead</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7930</td>
<td>Distributed Building Expense</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7950</td>
<td>Distributed Computer Costs</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7970</td>
<td>Distributed General Expenses</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8000</td>
<td>General And Administrative</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8100</td>
<td>Administrative Salaries</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8110</td>
<td>Salaries and Wages</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8300</td>
<td>Building Expense</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8315</td>
<td>Dpr-Building &amp; Improvements</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8320</td>
<td>Dpr-Office Furn/Equipment</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8350</td>
<td>Rent Expense</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8355</td>
<td>Maintenance &amp; Repair</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8360</td>
<td>Telephone Expense</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8370</td>
<td>Utilities Expense</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8600</td>
<td>Supplies, Services &amp; Other</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8605</td>
<td>Advertising</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8620</td>
<td>Bad Debt Expense</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8665</td>
<td>Entertainment</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8670</td>
<td>Dues &amp; Subscriptions</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8685</td>
<td>Legal, Accounting &amp; Other</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8720</td>
<td>Office Supplies Expense</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8730</td>
<td>Postage and Freight</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8740</td>
<td>Travel, Meals &amp; Lodging</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9000</td>
<td>Other Income and Expenses</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9100</td>
<td>Other Income</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9120</td>
<td>Interest Income</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9150</td>
<td>Discounts Taken</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9153</td>
<td>Discounts Available</td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9156</td>
<td>Discounts Lost</td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9200</td>
<td>Other Expense</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9700</td>
<td>Income Taxes</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9901</td>
<td>Branch Office Head Count</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Daily
Accounts Receivable
Customer Information

Objectives

- To create and locate customer information

About Customer Information

You must create a customer record before you can enter an invoice and receive payment. The customer master is a central storage place for all of your customer records.

Customer information consists of:

- Entering customers
- Locating customers

What Is the Customer Record?

The customer record contains information and processing instructions that the system uses to process A/R transactions. For example, you might want to specify a credit limit for each customer or designate whether delinquency notices should be sent to a particular customer.

Specifically, the customer record enables you to enter and maintain default information about:

- Invoice processing
- Automatic receipt processing
- Statement processing
- Credit and collections
- Parent/child relationships
- Accounting distributions
- Billing instructions
Enter Customers

Entering Customers

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), Customer Master Information

Before you can bill a customer for goods or services, you must create a customer master record. When you enter a customer, you are setting up information about how the system processes invoices, receipts, and other A/R information.

When entering customers, you can:

- Enter customer identification
- Enter mailing information
- Enter additional address book information
- Enter bank account information
- Enter collection information
- Enter currency and tax information
- Enter G/L distribution information

Customer information is stored in the following tables:

- Customer Master Information (F0301)
- Address Book Master (F0101)
- Address by Date (F0116)
- Address Organization Structure Master (F0150)
- Bank Transit Number Master (F0030)
Accounts Receivable

Before You Begin

☐ Set your processing options to automatically display the forms you will use to enter customers. The tasks described here assume that the following forms display:

- Address Book - Additional Information
- Bank Accounts by Address

What You Should Know About

Deleting customer records
You can only delete a customer record that does not have any invoices associated with it for the year, open or paid. However, you can still access previously closed invoices and receipts.

Entering category codes for customers
When entering a customer record, you can set up category codes to organize your address book information and to quickly retrieve records for reporting purposes. Category codes are user defined codes that can be customized for your business needs.

See Setting Up Category Codes in the Address Book Guide.

Entering billing Instructions
When entering a customer record, you can access the Customer Master – Billing Instructions form to specify how the system processes sales orders for customers.


Multi-Currency
To store address book amounts, such as amount invoiced year-to-date and amount invoiced prior-year-end, in a specific currency, you can do one of the following:

- Set a processing option to enter the default currency code or the company currency of the responsible business unit
- Enter them manually

See Also

- Entering Address Book Records (P01051) in the Address Book Guide
To enter customer identification

On Customer Master Information

1. Complete the following optional fields:
   - Customer Number
   - Long Address Number
2. To access Address Book Addition, do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer Number</td>
<td>A number that identifies an entry in the Address Book system. Use this number to identify employees, applicants, participants, customers, suppliers, tenants, and any other Address Book members.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Form-specific information</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you do not enter a customer number, the system assigns it through Next Numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long Address Number</td>
<td>A user defined name or number that is unique to the address book number. This field can be used to enter and locate information. You can use it to cross-reference the supplier to a Dun &amp; Bradstreet number, a lease number, or other reference.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To enter mailing information**

On Address Book Addition
Complete the following fields and press Enter:

- Alpha Name (optional)
- Mailing Name
- Mailing Address (optional)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alpha Name</td>
<td>The text that names or describes an address. This 40-character alphabetic field appears on a number of forms and reports. You can enter dashes, commas, and other special characters, but the system cannot search on them when you use this field to search for a name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Form-specific information*

If you leave this field blank, the default comes from the Mailing Name field. You can also choose Duplicate Alpha Name on Mailing Line to copy the Alpha Name to the Mailing Name field.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mailing Name</td>
<td>The company or person to whom billing or correspondence is addressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To enter additional address book information

1. Complete the following optional field:
   - AR/AP Netting
2. Change the following optional fields:
   - 1st through 5th Address Numbers

3. To accept the information in these fields, press Enter, and then press Exit.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AR/AP Netting Indicator</td>
<td>A code that indicates whether an address is eligible to used in the A/R and A/P netting process. This value applies to both the Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address Number – 1st</td>
<td>An alternate address number in the Address Book system. You can use this field for any secondary business address that relates to the primary address. For example:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                            |   - Salesperson  
|                            |   - Law firm  
|                            |   - Accountant  
|                            |   - Securities agent  
|                            |   - Bonding agent  

If you leave this field blank on an entry form, the system supplies the primary address from the Address Number field.

The address book number of the person to whom the system will send an additional copy of the document.

▶ To enter bank account information

On Bank Accounts by Address
1. Complete the following fields for the customer’s bank:
   - Routing/Transit
   - Account Number
   - Type

2. Do one of the following to add the record and then exit:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transit Number – Bank</td>
<td>The routing and transit number for a particular bank account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The combination of account number and transit number must be unique.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bank Account Number – Customer</td>
<td>The account number for a customer’s bank account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>A code used to distinguish external bank accounts from internal bank accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Customer Bank Accounts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Internal G/L Bank Accounts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Supplier Bank Account for payment via bank tape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Default Bank Account for A/R Drafts and Auto Debits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Valid Bank Transit Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>G/L Bank Account/Business Unit used to define print information in A/P payments</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: When using bank type B, no other bank types are allowed. When using bank type V, no other V bank types are allowed. When using bank type D, no other D bank types are allowed.

To enter collection information

On Customer Master Information
Complete any of following fields (do not press Enter):

- Credit Message
- Temporary Credit Message
- Factor/Special Payee
- Parent Number
- Payment Terms
- Hold Invoices
- Credit Manager
- Ledger Inquiry Sequence
- Print Statement
- Auto Receipt
- Collection Manager
- Send Statement to
- Auto Cash Algorithm
- Last Credit Review
- Statement Cycle
- Payment Instrument
- ABC Sales
- ABC – Margin
- ABC - Percentage
- Send Invoice to
- Balance Forward/Open Item
- Credit Limit
- Delinquency Notice
- Number of Reminders
- Monthly Finance Charge %
- Apply Finance Charges
- Collection Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Credit Message</td>
<td>A user defined code (00/CM) that displays information about a particular customer or supplier. Examples:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 Over credit limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 Requires purchase order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 Not on maintenance agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 Notify the credit manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The A/R Information program (P01053) and the A/P Information program (P01054) display credit messages for customers and suppliers when you enter or locate information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary Credit Message</td>
<td>A user defined code that identifies a temporary credit status. Generally, the code is assigned when an account becomes past due. This code is set in the processing options for the Credit Analysis Refresh program, or you can set it manually on Customer Master Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit Manager</td>
<td>The name of the credit manager responsible for approval of this customer’s accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ledger Inq Seq</td>
<td>A code used to designate the display sequence of the default ledger in the Ledger Inquiry programs. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 document number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 net due date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 invoice date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 statement number (A/R) or invoice number (A/P)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 purchase order number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 document type, document number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7 matching document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 G/L date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A summarized by document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B summarized by due date and document</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field | Explanation
--- | ---
Print Stmt(Y/N) | A code that indicates whether the system prints invoices and statements for the customer. Valid codes are:
- **Y** Yes, print invoices and statements
- **N** No, do not print invoices and statements

*Form-specific information*
If you enter N, you cannot attach a draft to a statement. You do not need to print drafts when they are pre-authorized.

Auto Receipt (Y/N) | A code used in the Accounts Receivable system to indicate whether receipts from the customer can be processed through Auto Receipt. Valid codes are:
- **Y** Yes, you can process receipts through Auto Receipt.
- **N** No, you cannot process receipts through Auto Receipt.

Specify whether a company is eligible for auto receipts processing in the A/R constants.

Collection Mgr | The name of the collections manager responsible for this customer's accounts.

Send Stmt To | A code that indicates the address to which A/R statements, payment reminders, and delinquency mailers are sent. Examples:
- **C** Customer
- **P** Parent
- **1** 1st Address Number
- **2** 2nd Address Number
- **3** 3rd Address Number
- **4** 4th Address Number
- **5** 5th Address Number
- **6** 6th Address Number (Special Factor/Payee)

Auto Cash Alg | A code that specifies how receipts are applied during the batch receipts process.

Last Cred Rvw | The date on which the credit manager last examined this customer's payment record and assigned a credit status to the account.

Statement Cycle | A code that indicates when the customer should be billed during the next monthly cycle. For example, billing could be done alphabetically:
- **A–F** on the 5th day of the month
- **G–L** on the 10th
- **M–R** on the 15th
- **S–Z** on the 20th

The first letter of the customer's alpha name will default into the statement cycle.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Payment Instr</td>
<td>The user defined code that determines the type of payment to be made to the supplier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC (Sls/Marg/P)</td>
<td>A grade that indicates the level of sales activity for a customer or inventory item. This code documents the 80/20 principle (80% of the significant results is attributable to 20% of the business effort). The possible grades are A (best) to F (worst).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ABC Code 2 – Investment– Inventory | A code that represents an item’s ranking by average investment. You can assign a code here or let the system assign it. Valid codes are:  
A  Assign this item to the first amount ranking  
B  Assign this item to the second amount ranking  
C  Assign this item to the third amount ranking  
D  Skip this item in the ABC Analysis  
If you leave this field blank, the ABC Analysis program (P4164) assigns this code based on an item’s value as follows:  
Total Item Average Investment divided by Business Unit Average Investment equals the Item’s Calculated Value Total |
| ABC Code Average Days  | A grade that indicates the average number of days a customer takes to pay a bill. This code documents the 80/20 principle. The possible grades are A (best) to F (worst). |
| Statement Cycle       | A code that indicates when the customer should be billed during the next monthly cycle. For example, billing could be done alphabetically:  
A–F  on the 5th day of the month  
G–L  on the 10th  
M–R  on the 15th  
S–Z  on the 20th  
The first letter of the customer’s alpha name will default into the statement cycle. |
| Send Invoice to       | A code that identifies the address where accounts receivable invoices are sent. Valid codes are:  
C  Customer  
P  Parent  
1  1st Address Number  
2  2nd Address Number  
3  3rd Address Number  
4  4th Address Number  
5  5th Address Number  
6  6th Address Number (Factor/Special Payee) |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bal Fwd/Open Itm</td>
<td>A code that indicates whether a customer’s open items in the A/R Ledger table (F0311) will be summarized into a balance forward amount during the Update Balance Forward process. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>B</strong> Summarize open items into a balance forward amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>O</strong> List the detail for all open items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTE: The A/R Ledger table is always maintained at a detail invoice level. Although the detail cannot be accessed, it will remain and a new summary record is added when the Update Balance Forward program is run.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit Limit</td>
<td>The credit limit for a customer in the Customer Master Information table (F0301). This value is used throughout the credit management programs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delinquency Notice (Y/N)</td>
<td>A code that indicates whether delinquency notices or payment reminders should be sent to the customer. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Y</strong> Yes, send delinquency notices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>N</strong> No, do not send delinquency notices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monthly Fin Chg%</td>
<td>This is the percentage factor used in computing finance charges. This number is expressed as a decimal. For example, .185 would express 18.5%. The past due amounts are multiplied by the percentage factor for the actual finance charge amounts. If finance charges are calculated monthly, the percentage factor should reflect a monthly assessment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Reminders</td>
<td>The number of payment reminders to send to a customer. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>1</strong> Send a single, very strong (level 3) reminder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>2</strong> Send a strong (level 2) reminder. If the customer does not respond, send a very strong (level 3) reminder in the next cycle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>3</strong> Send a mild (level 1) reminder. If necessary, send a level 2 reminder in the next cycle and a level 3 in the following cycle after that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTE: The Delinquency Notice field must be set to Y.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apply Fin Chgs</td>
<td>A code that indicates whether finance charges should be applied or waived for the account. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Y</strong> Yes, apply finance charges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>N</strong> No, do not apply finance charges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>blank Process this account through the Interest Invoicing program (P03540)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collection Rpt</td>
<td>A code that indicates whether invoices for a particular customer appear for collection. If this field is Y (the default), invoices appear on the collection report after the maximum number of reminders have been sent to the customer and the final collection report is generated. If you enter N in this field, the customer’s invoices are not eligible to appear on the collection report.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To enter currency and tax information**

On Customer Master Information

1. In WorldVision, choose the Additional Information tab.

2. Complete the following fields (do not press Enter):
   - Tax Explanation Code
   - Tax Rate/Area
   - Person/Corporation Code
   - Currency Code
   - Tax ID
   - Additional Tax ID
   - Amount Currency
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Form-specific information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Expl Code</td>
<td>A user defined code (00/EX) that controls how a tax is assessed and distributed to the general ledger revenue and expense accounts. You assign this code to a customer or supplier to set up a default code for their transactions. Do not confuse this with the taxable, non-taxable code. A single invoice can have both taxable and non-taxable items. The entire invoice, however, must have one tax explanation code.</td>
<td>The information you specify is used as the default value when entering invoices. You can override this code during invoice entry. If you use Vertex, the system accepts the following GeoCode values: E (exempt) and S (sales tax).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Rate/Area</td>
<td>A code that identifies a tax or geographic area that has common tax rates and tax distribution. The tax rate/area must be defined to include the tax authorities (for example, state, county, city, rapid transit district, or province), and their rates. To be valid, a code must be set up in the Tax Rate/Area table (F4008). Typically, U.S. sales and use taxes require multiple tax authorities per tax rate/area, whereas VAT requires only one simple rate. The system uses this code to properly calculate the tax amount.</td>
<td>The information you specify is used as the default value when entering invoices. You can override this code during invoice entry. If you use Vertex, the GeoCode appears in this field. The system retrieves the GeoCode based on the customer’s city, state, and zip code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person/Corp</td>
<td>A code that designates the type of taxpayer. U.S. clients use one of the following codes with the 20-digit Tax field:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C  corporate entity (printed as 12-3456789)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P  individual (printed as 123-45-6789)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N  non-corporate entity (printed as 12-3456789)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>blank non-corporate entity (not formatted)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The system selects suppliers with P and N codes for 1099 reporting.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Non-U.S. clients use the following codes with the 20-digit Company field and Individual field:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 individual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 corporate entity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 both an individual and a corporate entity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 non-corporate entity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 customs authority</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Currency Code</td>
<td>A code that indicates the currency of a customer's or a supplier's transactions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information Form-specific information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The currency you specify is used as the default value when you entering invoices. You can override this code during invoice entry.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax ID</td>
<td>The identification code required by various tax authorities. This might be a social security number,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>federal or state corporate tax ID, sales tax number, and so on. Do not enter separator characters. The system edits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the number and prints the separators in their correct format, according to the value of TAXC (Person/Corporation Code). If there is no value for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TAXC, the system does not format this number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When you add new line items to a supplier's worktable record, the supplier master record supplies the default value for the tax ID.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add'l Tax</td>
<td>An additional identification number that a tax authority assigns to an individual.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amt. Currency</td>
<td>The currency in which amounts are stored in the address book. For example, the credit limit, invoiced this year,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>invoiced prior year, and so on. The currency you specify is used to record and store transaction history.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information Form-specific information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enter the currency you want to see amounts reflected in when reviewing credit limits and so on.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Accounts Receivable

To enter G/L distribution information

On Customer Master Information

1. In WorldVision, choose the Additional Information tab.
2. Complete the following fields:
   - G/L Class
   - Model JE Type/Document/Company
   - Default Revenue Account
3. To add the record, do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G/L Class</td>
<td>A code that determines the A/R account (class) that will be the offset when you post invoices. The code you enter in this field can be alphanumeric or can match the object code of the G/L account number. Examples: blank Trade Accounts Receivable TRAD or 1210 Trade Accounts Receivable EMP or 1220 Employee Receivables (Use class codes as the exception to the trade account.) If you leave this field blank during entry, the system uses AAI item RC____ for the company. NOTE: Do not use class code 9999. This is reserved for the post program and indicates that offsets should not be created. The information you specify is used as the default value when you enter invoices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document Type – A/R Default for Model JE</td>
<td>A code that identifies the type of model journal entry to use for a particular customer. Form-specific information If you specify a model journal entry, do not specify a default expense account. Although the system will allow you to do this, it will override the model journal entry and you will have to manually enter the journal entry information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Processing Options for Customer Master Information

**ADDITIONAL MAINTENANCE:**

1. Enter a ‘1’ to suppress the tax id field. If left blank, the tax id will appear on the screen.

2. Enter a ‘1’ to automatically display the additional information screen on an add.

3. Enter a ‘1’ to automatically display the category codes screen on an add.

4. Enter a ‘1’ to automatically display bank information on an add.

**ADDITIONAL MAINTENANCE (cont.):**

5. Enter a ‘1’ to automatically display the billing instructions screen on an add.

**AUDIT LOG FILE:**

6. Enter a ‘1’ to utilize the Audit Log file (F0101A).

**SEARCH TYPE:**

7. Enter the search type value for customers. Default is ‘C’.

**CURRENCY PROCESSING:**

8. Enter the currency code that should default into the amount currency code field when adding a Customer. If left blank the amount currency code will default from the Company associated with the Security Business Unit from the Address Book.
What You Should Know About Processing Options

Depending on how you set the processing options, one or more of the following forms automatically appear when you enter a customer.

**Address Book – Additional Information**
Use this to attach up to seven address numbers.

*See Working with Address Book in the Address Book Guide.*

**Category Codes**
Use this to group addresses for reporting and mailings.

*See About Category Codes in the Address Book Guide.*

**Billing Instructions**
Use this to specify how the system processes sales orders for customers.


**Bank Accounts by Address**
Use this to set up a customer for automatic receipts processing.

---

**Exercises**
See the exercises for this chapter.
Test Yourself: Entering Customer Information

1. When you create a new customer master record, what form do you use to enter address information?

2. How can you prevent entry of A/R invoices for a particular customer?

3. The amount indicated in the credit limit is only applicable to a company in the Accounts Receivable system.

4. Customer master information is stored in the table.

The answers are in Appendix B.
Locate Customers

Locating Customers

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Name Search

When entering or locating accounts receivable information for a customer, you can locate its customer number by specifying:

- Alpha name
- Search type
- Person or corporation designation

This information is stored in the Address Book Master table (F0101).

To locate a customer

On Name Search
Complete the following fields:

- Alpha Name
- Search Type (optional)
- Person/Corporation (optional)

**See Also**

- *Locating Addresses (P01051)* in the *Address Book Guide*

**Processing Options for Name Search**

**FORMAT CONTROL:**
1. Enter sequence numbers (1-3) to indicate which formats will appear in the second description and in what order. If all are left blank, all formats will appear in the order shown below.
   Note: These are used with your format function key F5.
   
   | Addr Line One. . . |   |
   | City . . . . . . .  |   |
   | Phone Number . . . |   |

**DEFAULT SEARCH TYPE:**
2. Enter the default Search Type that should appear upon entry into Name Search.
Invoice Processing

Objectives

- To understand the differences between standard invoice entry and speed invoice entry
- To revise unposted and posted invoices
- To review and approve invoices for posting
- To post invoices to the general ledger
- To understand how to enter and process recurring invoices
- To locate customer ledger information

About Invoice Processing

Typically, you create an invoice before you receive payment from the customer. Effective management of invoice processing is fundamental to your accounts receivable department.

Invoice processing consists of:

- Working with invoice entry controls
- About G/L date warnings
- Working with standard invoices
- Working with other types of standard invoices
- Entering speed invoices
- Reviewing and approving invoices
- About the post process
- Posting invoices
- Revising posted invoices
- Printing Invoice Journal Information
- Working with customer ledger information
- Working with recurring invoices

Invoice processing is one example of three-tier processing. All J.D. Edwards systems use three-tier processing to manage batches of transactions. The term *three-tier* refers to three standard steps you perform.

The following graphic illustrates the concept of three-tier processing.
1. **Enter Invoices**

   - Create unposted records
     - Updates Account Ledger
     - Updates A/R Ledger
     - **Batch Control Records (F0011)**
     - **Account Ledger (F0911)**
     - **A/R Ledger (F0311)**

2. **Review and Approve Invoices**

   - Updates and approves records for posting
     - **Batch Control Records (F0011)**

3. **Post Invoices to G/L**

   - Updates status to D (posted)
     - Posts records to Account Balances
     - Creates offsetting entries/
       Updates records to P (posted)
     - Updates A/R Ledger to D (posted)
     - **Batch Control Records (F0011)**
     - **Account Balances (F0902)**
     - **Account Ledger (F0911)**
     - **A/R Ledger (F0311)**
What Are the Methods of Invoice Entry?

Depending on your needs, you can enter invoices using the following methods:

- **Standard invoice entry.** This method gives you the most flexibility and options.
- **Speed invoice entry.** This method gives you less flexibility and options than standard invoice entry. However, it provides a quicker way of entering invoice and general ledger information.
Which Method of Invoice Entry Should You Use?

To help determine which method of invoice entry you should use, consider the following advantages and limitations of standard and speed invoice entry:

**Standard invoice entry**
- **advantages**
  - You can:
    - Create split payments
    - Use multiple pay items
    - Set up recurring invoices
    - Modify, delete, and void invoices
    - Utilize and create model journal entries
    - Override the G/L offset

- **limitations**
  - You cannot:
    - Enter invoices as quickly because you use two forms to enter invoice and G/L distribution information

**Speed invoice entry**
- **advantages**
  - You can:
    - Use one entry program to enter both invoice and accounting distribution information
    - Enter limited invoice information quickly

- **limitations**
  - You cannot:
    - Split payments
    - Modify, delete, or void invoices
    - Set up recurring invoices
    - Enter more than one pay item per invoice
    - Create model journal entries
    - Override the G/L offset

When Do You Review and Approve Invoices?

After you enter invoices, you can review and approve them before posting. You can:

- Review and approve invoice batches
- Review and revise individual invoices
- Review and revise associated journal entries
What Happens When You Post Invoices?

After you review and approve invoices, post them to the general ledger. When you submit a batch of invoices for posting, the system:

- Selects unposted, approved invoices and edits each transaction
- Creates automatic offsets to the A/R trade and tax accounts
- Posts accepted transactions to the Account Balances table (F0902)
- Marks the invoices as posted in the A/R Ledger (F0311) and Account Ledger (F0911) tables

When Do You Set Up a Recurring Invoice?

If you have a customer that you repeatedly bill for a specific amount, such as a service or lease agreement, set up a recurring invoice. You specify the frequency and the number of payments when you enter the original invoice.

What Is Customer Ledger Information?

As part of your A/R activities, you might need to review the transaction history of a customer. Customer ledger information provides:

- Open amounts remaining on an invoice
- The pay status and posting status of an invoice or a receipt
- Invoice detail and associated journal entry information
- The result of applying receipts to customers or invoices
- Account status information
Work with Invoice Entry Controls

Working with Invoice Entry Controls

Before entering invoices, you can activate two control features to help manage your invoice entry process:

- Batch control
- Two-cycle entry

About A/R Batch Control

The following describes why you would set up batch control and when you would use it.

Why Would You Set Up Batch Control?

Use batch control to verify that the batch of invoices you enter into the system balances to a manual record of the batch. You activate batch control in the Accounts Receivable constants. Batch control information is stored in the Batch Control table (F0011).
When Do You Use Batch Control?

If you set the appropriate A/R constant, the system displays a form that you use to enter information about your invoices before you actually enter them. Once you enter the information, the system compares the control totals with the actual totals you entered for the batch. If the totals are not the same, it displays the difference.

What You Should Know About

Posting batches that are out of balance  If the amount entered differs from the amount expected, the system does not prevent you from posting the batch.

Decimal positions in Amount column  The Amount column does not represent decimal precision. A batch might contain multiple currencies with different decimal positions. You can set up the decimal position for transactions in the Data Dictionary.

Multi-Currency batch totals  If you enter transactions of different currencies into the same batch, the total entered is a hash total.

See Also

- Setting Up A/R Constants (P000903)
About Two-Cycle Entry

Set up two-cycle entry if you want to verify system-calculated fields for each invoice before accepting it.

Two-cycle entry requires that you press Enter one time to verify information, and then press Enter again to accept the entry.

Where Do You Set Up Two-Cycle Entry?

You can set up two-cycle entry in the processing options for:

- Invoice Entry (Standard and Speed Entry)
- Receipts Entry (Heads Up and Heads Down)
- Drafts Entry
Understand G/L Date Warnings

About G/L Date Warnings

From General Accounting (G09), choose Organization and Account Setup

From Organization and Account Setup (G09411), choose Company Numbers & Names

When you enter a transaction, the system edits the G/L date against the open period in the company constants. If you enter a journal entry with a G/L date that is not in the current or next accounting period, you get a warning or an error message.

In the example below, if you entered transactions to periods 06 and 07 (June and July), you would not get a warning or an error message. This is known as a “two-period” window.

PYEB = Prior Year End Balance
PBCO = Prior Before Cut Off
PACO = Period After Cut Off
WACO = Way After Cut Off

No Errors or Warnings
What Are the Warning and Error Messages You Might Receive?

The following lists the types of warning and error messages you receive when you enter a transaction outside the two-period window. These messages appear based on how you set your general accounting constants.

**PYEB – Prior Year-End Balance**

**Reason:** You tried to post to a prior year.

**Result:** You get an error message. The system does not accept the entry.

**PBCO – Post Before Cut Off**

**Reason:** You entered a G/L date prior to the current period.

**Result:** You either get a warning or an error message, depending on your general accounting constants.

**PACO – Post After Cut Off**

**Reason:** You entered a G/L date that is after the two-period window.

**Result:** You either get a warning or an error message, depending on how you set up your fiscal date patterns. If your fiscal date pattern is not set up for the full year, you get an error message. If it is set up for the full year, you get a warning.

**WACO – Way After Cut Off**

**Reason:** You entered a G/L date in a future year.

**Result:** You either get a warning or an error message, depending on how you set up your fiscal date patterns.

See Also

- *Setting Up Fiscal Date Patterns* in the *General Accounting I Guide*
Work with Standard Invoices

Working with Standard Invoices

Standard invoice entry provide the features and flexibility that you need to enter invoices for your customers. When you need to change, delete, or void an invoice, use standard invoice entry. If you routinely distribute invoices to multiple G/L accounts, you can set up a journal entry to use as a model.

Working with standard invoices consists of:

☐ Entering standard invoices
☐ Locating invoices
☐ Revising unposted invoices

Invoice information is stored in the following tables:

- A/R Ledger (F0311)
- Account Ledger (F0911)
- Batch Header (F0011)

Before You Begin

☐ Set up customer master records. See Entering Customers.

☐ Set the appropriate processing options.
**Entering Standard Invoices**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Standard Invoice Entry

The following graphic illustrates the forms you use to enter standard invoices.

![Diagram showing the flow from Standard Invoice Entry to Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable Journal Entries]

You must create an invoice to bill a customer for goods or services. You create an invoice by entering information about how you will process the invoice for receipt or allow the system to enter this information from the customer record.

After you enter information that is specific to the invoice, you enter the G/L distribution information. You typically enter a credit to a revenue account. When you post the invoice, the system creates the offset to the asset account that you specify in the AAI.

Entering standard invoices consists of:

- Entering basic invoice information
- Entering G/L distribution information
You must complete both tasks for each invoice.

The system assigns a batch type of I to invoices.

**What You Should Know About**

**Reference numbers**  After you enter an invoice, the system displays the assigned document type and document number. You can use this information to facilitate locating and reviewing an invoice.

**See Also**

- *Entering Basic Journal Entries (P09101) in the General Accounting I Guide*

**To enter basic invoice information**

On Standard Invoice Entry

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Account Number
   - Invoice Number (optional)
   - Invoice Amount
- Payment Terms (optional)
- Payment Instrument (optional)
- Invoice Date
- Company
- Purchase Order Number (optional)
- G/L Date

2. In the invoice schedule, complete the following optional fields for each pay item:
   - Pay Item
   - Gross Amount
   - Remark
   - Net Due Date
   - Pay Status (PS)

3. Access the detail area.

4. Complete the following optional field and press Enter to enter general ledger information:
   - G/L Offset
## Field | Explanation
---|---
Account Number | The address number you want to retrieve. You can use the short format, the long format, or the tax ID (preceded by the indicators listed in the Address Book constants).
Invoice Number | A number that identifies the original document, such as a voucher, invoice, unapplied cash, journal entry, and so on. On entry forms, you can assign the original document number or let the system assign it through Next Numbers. Matching document (DOCM) numbers identify related documents in the Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable systems. Examples:
- Automated/Manual Payment
  - Original document – Voucher
  - Matching document – Payment
- A/R Original Invoice
  - Original document – Invoice
- Receipt Application
  - Original document – Invoice
  - Matching document – Receipt
- Credit Memo/Adjustment
  - Original document – Invoice
  - Matching document – Credit Memo
- Unapplied Receipt
  - Original document – Receipt
Invoice Amount | The gross amount of the invoice payments. This is a total of the gross amounts of all scheduled payments.
Invoice Date | The date of the invoice. This can be either the date of the supplier's invoice to you or the date of your invoice to a customer.
Company | A code that identifies a specific organization, fund, entity, and so on. This code must already exist in the Company Constants table (F0010). It must identify a reporting entity that has a complete balance sheet. At this level, you can have intercompany transactions.
  
  **NOTE:** You can use company 00000 for default values, such as dates and automatic accounting instructions (AAIs). You cannot use it for transaction entries.
P.O. Number | A document that authorizes the delivery of specified merchandise or the rendering of certain services.
Pay Itm | A number that identifies a pay item for an invoice. Multiple pay items can define multiple payments against an invoice, multiple items on an invoice, or multiple tax rates.

**Form-specific information**

The system allows only one pay item on recurring invoices.
### Field | Explanation
--- | ---
Gross Amount | The gross amount of an invoice or voucher pay item, including tax but not including discounts. The total amount for a voucher or invoice is the accumulation of the open pay items. The accounting distributions must balance to the net amount of a voucher or invoice, not to the gross amount.

*Form-specific information*

The total gross amount of all pay items must equal the invoice amount.

The gross amount includes the original invoice amount. If you make a payment or an adjustment, this amount is reflected in the open amount. The gross amount total changes if you change the invoice amount, but does not change with the entry of a payment, adjustment, and so on.

Remark | A generic field that you use for a remark, description, name, or address.

*Form-specific information*

This is used as a default in the Explanation 2 field in the G/L section if you leave that Explanation 2 field blank.

This text prints on invoices and statements.

Net Due Date | The date the net payment is due (accounts receivable). In accounts payable, this date is either the discount date or the net due date, depending on what you entered or how you set up your payment terms.

If you leave this field blank during invoice entry or voucher entry, the system calculates the due date using the invoice date and the payment terms code. If you leave the Payment Terms field blank, the system calculates them based on the payment terms you specified for the customer on Customer Master Information or for the supplier on Supplier Master Information.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pay Status</td>
<td>A user defined code (00/PS) that indicates the current payment status for a voucher or an invoice. Codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P      Paid. The voucher or invoice is paid in full.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A      Approved for payment, but not yet paid. This applies to vouchers and automatic cash applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H      Hold pending approval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R      Retainage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>%      Withholding applies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>?      Other codes. All other codes indicate reasons that payment is being withheld. The Accounts Payable system does not print payments for any other code.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Form-specific information

You cannot change the pay status to P (paid), D (draft accepted), or # (payment in-process).

If you leave this field blank, the system uses the default value from the functional server processing options (XT0311Z1).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G/L Offset</th>
<th>The table of Automatic Accounting Instruction accounts that allows you to predefine classes of automatic offset accounts for Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and other systems.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

G/L offsets might be assigned as follows:

- blank or 1210 – Trade Accounts Receivable
- RETN or 1220 – Retainages Receivable
- EMP or 1230 – Employee Accounts Receivable
- JIB or 1240 – JIB Receivable  (See A/R Class Code – ARC)
- blank or 4110 – Trade Accounts Payable
- RETN or 4120 – Retainage Payable
- OTHR or 4230 – Other Accounts Payable (See A/R Class code – APC)

If you leave this field blank during data entry, the system uses the default value from the Customer Master Information table (F0301) or the Supplier Master Information table (F0401). The post program uses the G/L Offset class to create automatic offset entries.

NOTE: Do not use code 9999. It is reserved for the post program and indicates that offsets should not be created.
**G/L Offset**

The table of Automatic Accounting Instruction accounts that allows you to predefined classes of automatic offset accounts for Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and other systems.

G/L offsets might be assigned as follows:

- blank or 1210 – Trade Accounts Receivable
- RETN or 1220 – Retainages Receivable
- EMP or 1230 – Employee Accounts Receivable
- JIB or 1240 – JIB Receivable (See A/R Class Code – ARC)
- blank or 4110 – Trade Accounts Payable
- RETN or 4120 – Retainage Payable
- OTHR or 4230 – Other Accounts Payable (See A/R Class code – APC)

If you leave this field blank during data entry, the system uses the default value from the Customer Master Information table (F0301) or the Supplier Master Information table (F0401). The post program uses the G/L Offset class to create automatic offset entries.

NOTE: Do not use code 9999. It is reserved for the post program and indicates that offsets should not be created.

---

**What You Should Know About**

**Creating a customer record**

You can create a new customer record when you enter invoice information by choosing the Exit to Address Book function from the Standard Invoice Entry form.

**Entry errors**

If an error occurs during entry, the system highlights the field. View the error message, correct the error, and press Enter to accept the invoice.
To enter G/L distribution information

On AR and AP Journal Entries

1. Toggle among alternate formats to locate the format you want to use.

   Alternately, you can access additional fields in the detail area.

2. Complete the following fields for each G/L distribution:
   - Account Number
   - Amount
   - Explanation 2 (optional)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amount</td>
<td>A number that identifies the actual amount. Type debits with no sign or a plus sign (+). Type credits with a minus sign (-) either before or after the amount. You can use decimals, dollar signs, and commas. The system ignores non-significant symbols. Form-specific information To manually reverse the G/L distribution, you can enter the new balancing amount and account number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Accounts Receivable**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Explanation 2</td>
<td>A name or remark that describes an element in the J.D. Edwards systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you entered a remark on invoice or voucher entry, that is the default.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Locating Invoices**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Standard Invoice Entry

To locate invoices

On Standard Invoice Entry

1. Complete the following fields to limit your search:
   - Invoice Number
   - Invoice Type (optional)
   - Invoice Company (optional)
2. If Document Inquiry appears, select an invoice.

**What You Should Know About**

Other methods of locating invoices

You can also locate an invoice on the following forms:

- Invoice Journal Review, if you know the batch number
- Customer Ledger Inquiry, if you know the customer number.

See Reviewing and Approving Invoices (P03201) and Locating Customer Ledger Information (P032002).

**See Also**

- Reviewing Invoices (P03201)
Revising Unposted Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Standard Invoice Entry

You can change or delete an invoice before you post it. However, you cannot change the following key fields:

- Invoice Number
- Invoice Type
- Invoice Company
- Customer Number
- G/L Date
- Currency Code
- Pay Status, if equal to Paid (P)

If you need to change one of the key fields, you must delete the invoice and re-enter it, or you can copy the invoice and change the copied information.

To revise unposted invoices

On Standard Invoice Entry

1. Locate the invoice.
2. Change any field that is not a key field.
3. To change the general ledger information, do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Change
4. On AR and AP Journal Entries, complete the following fields to create a balancing entry, if necessary:
   - Account Number
   - Amount
   - Explanation 2 (optional)
What You Should Know About

Batch headers

Any change to an invoice on an invoice entry form reopens the batch and requires you to repost it. Consider using Speed Status Change to change information, such as due dates, that does not affect the G/L distribution.

Changing invoice amounts

You must change the amounts in both the invoice information and G/L distribution information and ensure that they balance.

Changing pay items

You cannot change a pay item that has been paid.

Changing several invoices

To quickly change specific information for several invoices at the same time, such as discounts, use Speed Status Change.

Copying an invoice to another customer

To copy or enter the same invoice information for a new customer, you must change the customer number and invoice number.

Deleting unposted invoices

To delete an unposted invoice, locate the invoice that you want to delete on the Customer Ledger Inquiry form and click Delete. Then, click OK to confirm the deletion.

After you delete an unposted invoice, no audit trail exists. You cannot delete a posted invoice. You must void it.

See Also

- Locating Invoices (P03105)
- Revising Posted Invoices (P03105)
- Updating Invoices for Payment

Exercises

See the exercises for this chapter.
**Test Yourself: Working with Standard Invoices**

1. Indicate the document type that the system assigns to the following A/R document:

   Invoice

2. List two items on an unposted invoice that cannot be changed:

3. Indicate the tables where the following information is updated:

   Invoice pay items

   Journal entries

4. When entering the G/L distribution portion of an invoice, you must enter the credit sign in the last portion of the Amount field.

   True or False

The answers are in *Appendix B.*
Work with Other Types of Standard Invoices

Working with Other Types of Standard Invoices

In addition to entering basic information for a standard invoice, you can enter and revise other types of information. For example, you might want to enter an invoice for multiple line items with different due dates or tax information.

Working with other types of standard invoices consists of:

- Entering invoices with discounts
- Entering credit memos
- Entering invoices with taxes
- Working with multi-currency invoices
- Entering recurring invoices

The entry process for standard invoices is the basis for entering other types of invoices.
Entering Invoices with Discounts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Standard Invoice Entry

You might offer discounts to your customers as an incentive for early payment of their invoices. When you enter an invoice with a discount, the system calculates the discount and net due dates according to the payment terms you specify in the customer master record. You can change the discount before you receive payment by:

- Changing the discount amount or payment terms during invoice entry
- Overriding the discount amount during receipts entry
- Overriding the discount amount when you update an invoice for payment

The system creates the associated journal entries for the discount amount when you receive payment.

About Using Discounts

There are three methods for entering discounts:

- Using payment terms. You enter an invoice, specifying the payment terms. The system calculates the discount available and due date from the payment terms.
- Entering a discount amount. You enter an invoice, specifying the discount available and, optionally, a net due date.
- Entering a discount percentage. You enter an invoice, specifying the discount percentage and, optionally, a net due date.

Before You Begin

☐ Verify that AAI item RKD is set up correctly
To enter invoices with discounts

On Standard Invoice Entry

1. Follow the steps to enter standard invoices.
2. Toggle to the discount format (optional).

3. Complete one of the following fields:
   - Payment Terms
   - Discount Available

4. Complete one of the following fields (optional):
   - Net Due Date
   - Discount Due Date
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Discount Available</strong></th>
<th>The amount of the discount available as opposed to the amount of the discount actually taken. If the supplier’s invoice specifies a discount available, type that amount. If not, do one of the following:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Compute the amount manually and type it in the field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For WorldSoftware and WorldVision, type a percentage as a percent sign (%) followed by the percentage amount. For example, type %.02 for 2%. For OneWorld, type a percent as a decimal amount only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For OneWorld, type the discount amount with a decimal preceding the value. For example, type 2% as .02.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Leave the field blank. The system calculates the amount based on the payment terms specified in the address book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type a zero (0) to override the address book value and indicate that a discount is not applicable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** If the discount is to be calculated automatically, take care in determining the amount available for discount. Usually, freight, sales taxes, and labor included in the gross amount do not qualify for discounts. If this is the case, separate these pay items to ensure that the discount is calculated correctly.
### Work with Other Types of Standard Invoices

**Field** | **Explanation**
--- | ---
Discount Available | The amount of the discount available as opposed to the amount of the discount actually taken. If the customer’s invoice specifies a discount available, type that amount. If not, do one of the following:
- Compute the amount manually and type it in the field.
- Compute the discount as a percentage of the invoice amount by keying the percent sign (%) followed by the percentage amount, for example, type %.02 for 2%.
- Leave the field blank. The system will calculates the amount based on the payment terms specified in the customer master record.
- Type a zero (0) to override the default value and indicate that a discount is not applicable.

NOTE: If the discount is to be calculated automatically, take care in determining the amount available for discount. Usually, freight, sales taxes, and labor included in the gross amount do not qualify for discounts. If this is the case, separate these pay items to ensure that the discount is calculated correctly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date – Discount Due – Julian</td>
<td>The date that the invoice or voucher is due in order to acknowledge the discount.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### What You Should Know About

**Changing an invoice with discounts**

If you change a discount field for an invoice, remove the system-calculated information. For example, if you change the payment terms to calculate a new discount, clear the discount available, discount due date, and net due date. If you clear the payment terms but not the other discount fields, the system will not recalculate the discount information.
**Entering Credit Memos**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Standard Invoice Entry

When a customer is overcharged and you want the customer’s statement to reflect the correction, enter a credit memo.

The system assigns the document type you specify in the processing options for the XT0311Z1 A/R Functional Server. Generally, a credit memo is assigned a document type RM.

▶ **To enter credit memos**

On Standard Invoice Entry

Enter an invoice for a negative amount.

**What You Should Know About**

**Calculating due dates for credit memos**

When you enter a credit memo, the net due date will equal the G/L date. The system ignores the payment terms when calculating due dates for credit memos.

**See Also**

- *Processing Options for Standard Invoice Entry (P03105)*
Entering Invoices with Taxes

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Standard Invoice Entry

Enter tax information on an invoice to override the default tax information. Default information, which you specify in the customer master record, applies to an entire invoice and all pay items.

The system makes accounting entries for taxes when you post the invoice. AAI item RTyyyy points to the tax account. If you enter a tax amount, the system validates it based on the tolerance ranges you specify when you set up tax rules by company.

Before You Begin

- Set up the appropriate tax rates and areas. See Setting Up Tax Rates and Areas (P4008).

- Set the processing options for the Post program to update the Sales/Use/VAT Tax table (F0018)

- Set up AAI item RT (Accrued Sales or VAT tax)

To enter an invoice with taxes

On Standard Invoice Entry

1. Follow the steps to enter standard invoices.
2. Toggle to the alternate tax format (optional).
3. Complete the following fields:
   - Tax Explanation Code
   - Tax Rate/Area

4. Complete the following optional fields:
   - Tax Amount
   - Taxable Amount
   - Service/Tax Date

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Amount</td>
<td>This is the amount assessed and payable to tax authorities. It is the total of the VAT, use, and sales taxes (PST). This is the amount of tax that applies to the payment you are entering. The system makes accounting entries when you post the receipt and invoice. If you leave this field blank, the system calculates it for you based on the tax explanation code and tax rate/area you defined for the customer on Customer Master Information. If you enter a tax amount, the system validates it against the tolerance ranges you specify on Tax Rules by Company.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Form-specific information

When you enter a tax amount, you might receive a warning message if the amount is different than the calculated amount in the Tax Rate/Area field. This warning does not prevent you from completing the entry.
### Field | Explanation
--- | ---
Taxable Amount | The amount on which taxes are assessed. 

*Form-specific information*

You can either enter an amount in this field and the system will calculate the tax for you, or you can enter an amount in the Tax Amount field. If you decide to type an amount in the Taxable Amount field, the system will validate it according to the tax rules you set up on Tax Rules by Company.

Date – Service/Tax | A date that indicates either when you purchased the goods or services, or when you purchased the goods and services and incurred the tax liability. Generally, when you leave this field blank, the system uses the G/L date you specified.

### What You Should Know About

#### Changing tax information

You must change or clear the system-calculated information (tax amount and taxable amount) so the system recalculates it.

When an invoice has multiple tax rates, you must change tax information for each pay item that differs from the default information.

#### Dividing tax amounts among pay items

You can divide a tax amount among pay items. To do so, enter tax information for each pay item instead of the entire invoice. By doing this, you override the default tax information from the customer master record.

#### Posting tax information

The system posts taxes to the appropriate accounts using AAI item RT and records tax pay items in the Sales/Use/VAT Tax table (F0018), based on the processing options.

### See Also

- *Setting Up Tax Rules by Company for A/R (P0022)*
Working with Multi-Currency Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Standard Invoice Entry

To enter an invoice for a currency other than the domestic currency for the customer, enter a multi-currency invoice. The system converts the amount to the domestic currency of the company that the invoice is associated with using the exchange rate in the Currency Exchange Rate table (F0015).

When you enter an invoice with a foreign currency amount, the system converts the amount to the domestic currency amount if the mode is set to foreign.

This task consists of:

- Entering a multi-currency invoice
- Verifying the invoice currency (optional)

Before You Begin

☐ Ensure that multi-currency conversion option is set to Y (yes) in the General Accounting Constants.

☐ Verify that the following AAIs are set up correctly:
  - Realized Gain (RG)
  - Realized Loss (RL)

To enter multi-currency invoices

On Standard Invoice Entry

1. Follow the steps to enter standard invoices.
2. Complete the following fields:
   - Currency Code
   - Exchange Rate (optional)
Work with Other Types of Standard Invoices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exchange Rate</td>
<td>The conversion rate that the system uses to convert foreign currencies to domestic currencies. If the Multi-Currency Conversion option on the Set Multi-Currency Option form is set to Y, this rate is a multiplier. If it is set to Z, this rate is a divisor. Form-specific information. If you leave this field blank, the rate is supplied from the exchange rate table on the Set Daily Transaction Rates form. The effective date for the exchange rate is either the invoice date or the general ledger date, depending on how the processing options are set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

▶ To verify the invoice currency

On Standard Invoice Entry

1. Locate the invoice.
2. Verify the following field:

   • Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mode (F)</td>
<td>This code indicates whether amounts are in the domestic currency of the company that the accounts are associated with, or in the foreign currency of the transaction. If Detailed Currency Restatement is being used, amounts restated from the domestic currency of the company that the accounts are associated with are shown. Codes are: D Domestic F Foreign Form-specific information. When you inquire on an invoice, the default code in this field is that of the original mode of entry. You can then enter F or D to specify how you want amounts to appear.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What You Should Know About

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Changing multi-currency information</th>
<th>After you enter a multi-currency invoice, you cannot change the currency code. If you need to change the currency, you must enter a new invoice with the correct currency code and delete the incorrect invoice.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reviewing multi-currency information</td>
<td>You can display the currency originally entered for the invoice as well as the domestic currency of the company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deleting multi-currency information</td>
<td>If you delete a foreign currency invoice, the system also deletes the domestic side of the invoice. If you delete a domestic invoice, the system also deletes the foreign side.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Entering Recurring Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Standard Invoice Entry

To bill a customer the same amount on a regular basis, enter a recurring invoice. This method of entering a standard invoice is ideal for lease and rent payments.

See Also

- Working with Recurring Invoices (P03105) for more information about entering, revising, and recycling a recurring invoice
- Working with Recurring Invoices for more information about entering, revising, and recycling a recurring invoice

Exercises

See the exercises for this chapter.
Processing Options

Processing Options for Standard Invoice Entry

FIELD DISPLAY CONTROL:
1. You may activate certain capabilities by entering a ‘1’ for the following:
   - Sales/Use/VAT Tax Processing: ____________
   - PO Number Entry: ____________
   - Extra Date for Service/Tax: ____________
   - Payment Instrument: ____________

TWO CYCLE OPTION:
2. Enter a ‘1’ for 2 Cycle data entry. ____________

FORMAT CONTROL:
3. Enter sequence numbers (1-6) to indicate which formats will appear and in what order when using the format selection function key:
   - Standard – Net Due Date: ____________
   - Standard – Discount Due Date: ____________
   - Tax Amounts – Net Due Date: ____________
   - Tax Amounts – Discount Due Date: ____________
   - G/L Offset – Net Due Date: ____________
   - G/L Offset – Discount Due Date: ____________

DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:
Enter the version for each program:
If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.
4. A/R and A/P Journal Entries (P03101) ____________
5. A/R Invoice Processing (XT0311Z1) ____________
6. E-Mail (P012401) ____________
7. Customer Ledger Inquiry (P032002) ____________
8. Customer Master Revisions (P01053) ____________

FIELD PROTECTION CONTROL:
9. Enter a ‘1’ to protect the Pay Status. If left blank, the Pay Status will be unprotected.
10. Enter a ‘1’ to protect the Exchange Rate field. If left blank, the Exchange Rate will not be protected.
Enter Speed Invoices

Entering Speed Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Speed Invoice Entry

As an alternative to standard invoice entry, you can use the Speed Invoice Entry method to enter high-volume, simple invoices. When you enter speed invoices, you enter invoice and G/L distribution information on one form. Consider using this method to enter invoices that have:

- A single pay item
- A single due date
- A single tax rate and area
- Simple accounting instructions

As with standard invoices, speed invoice information is stored in the A/R Ledger (F0311) and Account Ledger (F0911) tables.

Before You Begin

☐ Set up customer master records. See Entering Customers.

☐ Set the appropriate processing options.
To enter speed invoices

On Speed Invoice Entry

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Account Number
   - Invoice Number (optional)
   - Invoice Amount
   - Invoice Date

2. To specify how the system processes the invoice, complete the following fields:
   - Discount Available (optional)
   - Payment Terms (optional)
   - Payment Instrument (optional)
   - G/L Date
   - Company
   - Net Due Date (optional)
   - Discount Due Date (optional)
   - Pay Status (optional)
   - Remark (optional)
3. To process taxes for the invoice, complete the following fields:
   - Tax Explanation Code
   - Tax Rate Area
   - Tax Amount
   - Service Tax Date
   - Taxable Amount

4. To process the invoice using a foreign currency, complete the following fields:
   - Mode
   - Currency Code
   - Exchange Rate

5. To enter general ledger information, complete the following fields and press Enter:
   - Account Number
   - Amount
   - Explanation 2 (optional)

**What You Should Know About**

**Revising speed invoices** You cannot change or delete an invoice using speed invoice entry. Instead, use the standard invoice entry method.

**See Also**

- *Entering an Invoice with Discounts (P03105)*
- *Entering an Invoice with Taxes (P03105)*
- *Working with a Multi-Currency Invoice (P03105)*
- *Entering Basic Journal Entries (P09101)* in the *General Accounting I Guide* for more information about entering G/L distributions
Processing Options for Speed Invoice Entry

FIELD DISPLAY CONTROL:
1. Select method for entry of sales credit (G/L distribution) amounts:
   ‘’ = Credit amounts appear and are entered as negative numbers
   ‘1’ = Credit amounts appear and are entered as positive numbers.
For both methods, the amounts are stored negative in the A/R Ledger file (F0311).

2. Enter ‘1’ to select the following capabilities of this program:
   Sales/Use/VAT Tax Processing
   PO Number Entry
   Extra Date for Service/Tax

TWO CYCLE OPTION:
3. Enter a ‘1’ for 2 cycle data entry.

FORMAT CONTROL:
4. Enter sequence numbers (1-4) to indicate the order in which formats will appear. If all are left blank, all formats will appear in the following order:
   Standard Speed Invoice Entry
   Invoice Entry with Subledger
   Invoice Entry with F/A Number
   Invoice Entry with Units
Note: This is used with the Format Selection function key.

DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:
Enter the version for each program:
If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.

5. A/R Invoice Processing (XT0311Z1)
6. Journal Entry Processing (XT0911Z1)
7. Cust. Ledger Inquiry-w/SQL (P032002)
8. E-Mail (P012401)
9. Cust. Master Information (P01053)
10. Name Search (P01200)

FIELD PROTECTION CONTROL:
11. Enter a ‘1’ to protect the pay status field. If left blank, this field will be unprotected.
12. Enter a ‘1’ to protect the Exchange Rate field. If left blank, the Exchange Rate field will not be protected.
Processing Options for Journal Entry Functional Server

DEFAULT PROCESSING:
1. Enter the Ledger Type for entry. ____________
   If left blank, Ledger Type AA will be used.

ZERO AMOUNT PROCESSING:
2. Enter a ‘1’ to omit creation of ____________
   Journal Entry line items with zero amounts and no units. This may be
   useful when creating Journal Entries from models.

CURRENCY PROCESSING:
3. For currency conversion, enter ____________
   a ‘1’ to edit the exchange rate
   Effective Date period against the G/L period for the transaction.
4. Specify a tolerance limit to ____________
   warn you when you key an override currency exchange rate that is
   over or under this limit. For example 15.0 indicates +/-15%.

CURRENCY PROCESSING (CONT’D): ____________
5. Enter a 1 to disallow entry to the ____________
   domestic side of a foreign transaction. If left blank, entry
   of the domestic side of a foreign transaction will be allowed.

USER EXIT OPTIONS: ____________
6. Enter the User Exit Program name. ____________
   If left blank the default of ‘XT0911Z1E’ will be used.

What You Should Know About Functional Server Processing Options

Zero amount processing (2)

When you enter a 1 in this field, no account ledger records are created if a journal entry line does not have an amount or a unit. If you use a model journal entry with several lines of account distributions, and you only enter amounts for certain accounts, no account ledger records are created for the lines with the amounts. If you leave this option blank, you need to remove the information in the distribution lines of a model journal entry that should not be created in account ledger.

Exercises

See the exercises for this chapter.
Test Yourself: Entering Speed Invoices

1. You can use Speed Invoice Entry to locate an invoice and change the
discount amount.
   True or False.

2. Circle the advantages of using the speed invoice entry method:
   a. You can set up recurring invoices.
   b. You can enter both invoice and G/L distribution information.
   c. You can set up split payment invoices.
   d. You can enter invoice information more quickly.

The answers are in Appendix B.
Review and Approve Invoices

Reviewing and Approving Invoices

After entering invoices, you can verify their accuracy before posting them to the general ledger.

Reviewing and approving invoices consists of:

- Reviewing invoices
- Approving invoice batches

Reviewing Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry, (G0311), choose Invoice Journal Review

To review invoices before posting, you can display a list of batches based on your user ID, a posting status, or a specific date range. For example, you might want to review all batches with a posting status of pending.

Reviewing invoices consists of:

- Reviewing invoice batches
- Reviewing and revising invoice information
- Reviewing general ledger information

When you review a list of batches, you can access transaction detail for a specific invoice batch. For example, you can review the number of invoices within a batch and the total gross amount. You can also select a specific invoice for review.

The review program displays and updates information in the following tables:

- Batch Control (F0011)
- A/R Ledger (F0311)
- Account Ledger (F0911)
What You Should Know About

Unlisted batches
If the batch review security feature is activated, the system might not list all batches that have been entered. Instead, the system lists only the batches that you are authorized to review and approve.

Batch totals
If you use batch control, the system shows the differences between what you expect to enter and what you actually enter. These differences are shown for both the input total and the number of documents.

If you do not use batch control, the system subtracts your actual entries from zero, resulting in negative amounts in the fields that display the differences.

Multi-Currency batch totals
Batch amounts are not currency-sensitive. For flexibility in data entry, you can enter any number of currencies in the same batch. The debit amounts of the entries are added to obtain the batch total.

If you enter transactions of different currencies into the same batch, the system does not adjust for the decimal notations of the different currencies. Instead, you get a hash total. For this reason, many users prefer to enter transactions with each different currency in separate batches.

To determine the expected input total for a batch with currencies that have different decimal places, add the amounts without using a decimal point.

Example: Multi-Currency Batch Totals

You enter invoices for 10,555.00 FRF and 16,433,500 BEF in the same batch. The system disregards the decimal point in the French franc amount and calculates a hash total. The total amount entered is 17,487,000 (1053500 plus 16433500).

The system displays decimals in the input totals based on the setting in the data dictionary. Using the same figures:

- If you set the data dictionary to display zero decimals, the system displays 17,487,000.
- If you set the data dictionary to display two decimals, the system displays 174,870.00.
See Also

- *Revising Unposted Invoices (P03105)*
- *Revising Posted Invoices (P03105)*
- *Setting Up A/R Constants (P000903)*
- *Setting Up Constants (P000909)* in the *General Accounting I Guide*
- *Setting Up Multi-Currency (P0013)* in the *General Accounting I Guide* for information about changing display decimals

▶ To review invoice batches

On Invoice Journal Review

![Invoice Journal Review screenshot](image)

Display all batches for all users, or complete any of the following fields to limit the information displayed:

- User ID
- Batch Number
- Batch Date From
- Batch Date Thru
- Batch Status
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>For World, The IBM-defined user profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For OneWorld, the creator of the version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batch Number</td>
<td>A number that identifies a group of transactions that the system processes and balances as a unit. When you enter a batch, you can either assign a batch number or let the system assign it through Next Numbers. When you change, locate, or delete a batch, you must specify the batch number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batch Date From:</td>
<td>The date of the batch. If you leave this field blank, the system date is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batch Date Thru:</td>
<td>The ending date of the range for the batches you want to display. If you specify a From date and leave the Thru date blank, the system displays all batches with that batch date and future batch dates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batch Status</td>
<td>A user defined code (98/IC) that indicates the posting status of a batch. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>blank Unposted batches that are pending approval or have a status of approved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A Approved for posting. The batch has no errors, is in balance, but has not yet been posted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D Posted. The batch posted successfully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>E Error. The batch is in error. You must correct the batch before it can post.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P Posting. The system is posting the batch to the general ledger. The batch is unavailable until the posting process is complete. If errors occur during the post, the batch status is changed to E (error).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>U In use. The batch is temporarily unavailable because someone is working with it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To review and revise invoice information

On Invoice Journal Review

1. Follow the steps to review invoice batches.
2. Choose Detailed Batch Review.

3. Choose the Review Individual Invoice option next to the appropriate invoice to access Invoice Entry.
4. On Invoice Entry, change the information in any field that is not a key field (optional).

What You Should Know About

Batch amounts: The gross amount of the invoice appears on Invoice Entry Journal Review even if part of the invoice has been paid. The batch total includes credit memos.

Foreign currency amounts: Batch amounts are not currency sensitive. For flexibility in data entry, you can enter any number of currencies in the same batch. The debit amounts of the entries are added to obtain the batch amount entered. You can enter unlike currencies.
### Accounts Receivable

**Reviewing foreign currency invoices**
You can review the original currency of each invoice and the domestic currency of the company to which it was entered.

**Adding invoices to an existing batch**
You can enter additional invoices into an existing batch. To do so choose the last blank line on Invoice Entry Journal Review and click Add. The system adds the invoice to the batch when you complete the information on Accounts Receivable Entry.

**Revising a posted batch**
If you revise a transaction in a posted batch, the system automatically changes the batch status from posted to the default entry status, pending or approved. You must post the batch again. The post only processes the changed transaction.

#### To review general ledger information

On Invoice Journal Review

1. Verify the following field:
   - Balanced-Journal Entries

2. Choose Review Associated Journal Entries next to the appropriate invoice.
Review and Approve Invoices

Approving Invoice Batches

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry, (G0311), choose Invoice Journal Review

After you enter and review a batch of invoices, you might need to approve it prior to posting. This depends on whether your company requires management approval before posting a batch. Based on your company requirements, the system assigns either a pending or an approved status to the batch.

Before You Begin

- Activate management approval in the A/R constants before entering invoices, if necessary

To approve invoice batches

On Invoice Journal Review

1. Follow the steps to review invoice batches.
2. Complete the following field:
   - Approved

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| App   | A code that indicates whether a batch is ready for posting. Valid codes are:  
A Approved, ready for posting.  
P Pending approval. The batch will not post.  
If the system constants do not specify manager approval, the system automatically approves batches that are not in error. |

What You Should Know About

Preventing a batch from posting  
To temporarily prevent a batch from posting, change the batch status from approved to pending on Batch Approval.
Understand the Post Process for A/R

About the Post Process for A/R

After you enter, review, and approve invoices, you need to post them to the general ledger.

There are two parts to the post process:

- Pre-post
- Post

What Happens During the Pre-Post Process?

When you post receipts, the system uses a pre-post process to create records in the Account Ledger table (F0911) and to debit the cash account. The system also creates records for discounts available and discounts not taken. When you post invoices, the system skips the pre-post process because invoice records are created in the Account Ledger table when you enter an invoice.

What Happens During the Post Process?

If no errors are found during the pre-post process, the system performs the following tasks for the post process:

- Selects unposted and approved transactions with the criteria specified in the processing options.
- Edits each transaction to determine whether:
  - The account exists in the Account Master table (F0901) and is a posting account.
  - The business unit exists in the Business Unit Master table (F0006).
  - The G/L date is valid.
  - Intercompany settlements exist.
- Edits each batch to ensure that it is in balance and approved for posting.
- Places the entire batch in error if any errors exist, which prevents it from posting.
- Retrieves the automatic offset method from A/R constants.
- Accumulates and posts automatic offset amounts using document type AE. The system uses the company number and the G/L offset from each invoice to locate the AAI item RC. This contains the offset account to which you are posting.

- Updates the period net postings to include the posted amounts for a particular account in the Account Balances table.

- Updates each G/L posted code to P (posted) in the Account Ledger table.

- Updates each document in the A/R Ledger table to D (posted) and updates each posted batch status to D (posted) in the Batch Control table.

- Posts tax entities using the AAI item RT.

- Records tax pay items in the Sales/Use/VAT Tax table (F0018). The processing options control which transactions are recorded.

- Performs intercompany settlements, if applicable.

- Posts the domestic amount to the AA (actual amount) ledger and, if applicable, the foreign amount to the CA (currency amount) ledger.

- Prints two reports:
  - Posting Edit Report
  - Posting Journal Report
The following graphic illustrates the A/R post processes.

F0011 Batch of Invoices and Receipts

Selects unposted, approved batches with Batch Types = I,R

Correct and re-appraise batch

F0311/F0911

Verifies that batches are in balance

F0011 Batch of Invoices and Receipts

Correct Batch

Incorrect Batch

Changes batch-status to E (Error)

Changes batch-status to P (Posted)

Correct Batch

Posting Edit Report

Incorrect Batch

ERROR CONDITION

Detail Error Report

Correct Batch

POST

Posting Journal Report

Account Balances (F0902)

A/R Ledger (F0311)

Account Ledger (F0911)
How Are Offsets Handled?

The automatic offset is a debit or credit to the A/R trade account which is controlled by the AAI item RC. During the posting process, the system retrieves the following information for the automatic offset:

- Document type. This is AE (automatic entry).
- Document number. This is based on how you set up your offset method in A/R constants.
- Account description/explanation. For example:
  - *Accounts Receivable - Trade/Post Offset by Batch 1* (your batch number)
  - *Accounts Receivable - Trade/Post Offset of customer for VAT*

If the transaction includes taxes, the system generates an offset transaction with the characteristics described above, except that the description comes from the AAI item RT for the tax account.
Post Invoices

Posting Invoices

After you enter, review, and approve invoices, post them to the general ledger. Posting invoices consists of:

- Posting batches of invoices
- Verifying the A/R post process

Before You Begin

- Verify the offset method in the A/R constants
- Verify that the batch has an approved status
- Ensure that all post menu selections are routed to the same job queue and that the job queue only allows one job to process at a time

Posting Batches of Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Post Invoices to G/L

Run only one post program at a time.

To post a batch of invoices

Select the desired processing options and submit the post.
What You Should Know About

Customizing the post program
This program performs a number of complex tasks. J. D. Edwards strongly recommends that you do not customize it.

Posting an alternate currency ledger
If you use the alternate currency ledger XA, set the post program to automatically update the ledger and produce a separate Posting Journal.

Making changes during the posting process
Do not change accounts, AAs for A/R or intercompany settlements, A/R and G/A constants, or processing options for the post program.

Deleting paid and posted invoices
You cannot delete paid or posted invoices. You must void them.

See Also

- Previewing and Running a Report in the Common Foundation Guide for more information about data selection

Verifying the A/R Post Process

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry
From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Post Invoices to G/L

After posting your invoices, verify that your batches posted successfully. If any batches did not post, you must correct all errors and set the batch to approved status before the system will post the batch. The system creates various reports that you can use to verify posting information.

Verifying the A/R post process consists of:

- Reviewing the Posting Edit Report
- Reviewing the Posting Journal
- Reviewing Other Posting Reports
Reviewing the Posting Edit Report

After you run the post program, use the Posting Edit Report to verify whether the system posted your batches successfully. The following appears on this report:

- Batches that posted successfully
- Documents with errors that prevented a batch from posting

![Posting Edit Report Table]

**Reviewing the Posting Journal**

To verify the automatic offsets that the system created during the posting process, review the Posting Journal. It lists only those batches that posted successfully.

![Posting Journal Table]
Accounts Receivable

Reviewing Other Posting Reports

If you enter invoices with multiple currencies, the system generates the following reports during the posting process:

**Batch Edit**  Lists problems related to the batch.

**Posting Journal**  Lists both the CA ledger and converted AA amounts for foreign currency transactions. Additionally, it lists the currency code of the CA ledger amount and the domestic currency of the company for the AA ledger amount.

**Batches with Balancing Problems**  Lists AA and CA ledger information.

On these reports, the CA amounts represent the foreign side of the entry and the AA amounts represent the domestic side. Both the CA and the AA ledgers must be in balance. CA totals might not be currency specific.

Processing Options for Post General Ledger

**BATCH SELECTION:**
1. Enter Batch Number  
   or   Batch Date  
   or   Batch User ID

**PRINT SELECTION:**
2. Identify how to print amount fields on Post Journal:  
   ‘1’ = to Millions (w/ commas)  
   ‘2’ = to Billions (w/o commas)  
   Blank (Default) = No Journal Printed.

3. Identify which account number to print on report:  
   ‘1’ = Account Number  
   ‘2’ = Short Account ID  
   ‘3’ = Unstructured Account  
   ‘4’ = (Default) Number Entered During Input

**FIXED ASSETS:**
4. Enter a ’1’ to post F/A entries to Fixed Assets.
   NOTE:  DREAM Writer version ZJDE0001 of Post G/L Entries to Assets(P12800) is executed when this option is selected.  All transactions selected from that DREAM Writer will be posted rather than just the current entries being posted to G/L.

5. Enter a ’Y’ if you wish to explode parent item time down to the assembly component level.  Component
billing rates will be used. (This applies to batch type ‘T’ only.)

CASH BASIS ACCOUNTING:
6. Enter a ‘1’ to create and post Cash Basis accounting entries. (Applies to batch type G, K, M, W, & R only.)

7. Enter units ledger type for Cash Basis Accounting entries. (Default of blank will use “ZU” ledger type.)

ACCOUNTING FOR 52 PERIODS:
8. Enter a ‘1’ for 52 Period Post. NOTE: DREAM Writer data selection is used for 52 period posting ONLY. It is NOT used for the standard post to the F0902. Additionally, 52 period date patterns must be set up.

TAX FILE UPDATE:
9. Identify when to update the Tax Work file (F0018):
   ‘1’ = V.A.T. or Use Tax only
   ‘2’ = for All Tax Amounts
   ‘3’ = for All Tax Explanation Codes
   Blank (Default) = No Update to File.
   Note: When using Vertex Taxes the Vertex Tax Register file will be updated instead of the Tax Work file for methods ‘1’, ‘2’, and ‘3’.

10. Adjust VAT Account for Cash Receipt Adjustments and Write Offs. Tax explanation must be a ‘V’.
    ‘1’ = update VAT amount only
    ‘2’ = update VAT amount, extended price and taxable amount

11. Adjust VAT Account for Discount Taken. The Tax Rules file must be set to Calculate Tax on Gross Amount, including Discount and Calculate Discount on Gross Amount, including Tax. Tax explanation must be a ‘V’.
    ‘1’ = update VAT amount only
    ‘2’ = update VAT amount, extended price and taxable amount

PROPERTY MANAGEMENT:
12. Enter DREAM Writer version of Property Management G/L Transaction Creation to be executed. Default is version ZJDE0001. (This applies to batch types ‘2’ and ‘/’.)

UPDATE OPTION:
13. Enter ‘1’ to update short ID number, company, fiscal year/period number, century, and fiscal quarter in unposted transaction records selected for posting. (May be required for custom input programs.)
REPORT FORMAT:
14. Enter a ‘1’ to print the Posting Journal in a 198 character format. The default of blank will print the format with 132 characters.

DETAILED CURRENCY RESTATEMENT:
15. Enter a ‘1’ to create currency restatement entries. This creates records in the XA, YA, and/or ZA ledgers depending on the version you are running.

16. Enter the version of the Detailed Currency Restatement (P11411) to execute. Default of blank will execute ZJDE0001.

RECONCILIATION FILE PROCESSING
17. Enter a ‘1’ to update the Cross-Environment Reconciliation file. Blank will not update the reconciliation file.

Note: The Cross-Environment Reconciliation file can also be updated through the stand-alone Cross-Environment File Creation program.

BATCH TYPE SELECTION:
NOTE: This option should NOT be changed by User.

Exercises
See the exercises for this chapter.
Test Yourself: Posting Invoices

1. When you submit the post program without specifying a batch date, batch number, or batch user ID, no batches will post.
   True or False

2. The only batches considered to be eligible for posting are those that have a batch status of approved.
   True or False

3. When you look at the Posting Journal, the balancing entries that the system automatically makes are designated by what document type?

4. Circle the tables that are updated during the post process;
   a. F0301 – Customer Master Information
   b. F0101 – Address Book
   c. F0901 – Account Master
   d. F0311 – A/R Ledger
   e. F0011 – Batch Control
   f. F0902 – Account Balances

   The answers are in Appendix B.
Revise Posted Invoices

Revising Posted Invoices

After you post an invoice and before it is paid, you can revise it. For example, you might need to add lines to the G/L distribution, or you might need to void an invoice.

Revising posted invoices consist of:

- Changing posted invoices
- Voiding posted invoices

What You Should Know About

Audit trails for posted invoices
When you change or void a posted invoice, the system maintains an audit trail. It uses document type RE (reverse entry) for the new transactions that adjust or reverse the posted transactions.

Batch status
When you make certain types of changes, the system changes the batch status on the original batch from posted to unposted. You must post the batch again if you:

- Change the total gross amount for the invoice
- Change the number of invoices in a batch
- Change a journal entry

If you must post the batch again, you might need to approve the batch before you post it. You must do this if the default entry status for the original invoice was pending.
Changing Posted Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Standard Invoice Entry

You can change posted, unpaid invoices, but you cannot delete them. You cannot change the following key fields:

- Invoice Number
- Invoice Type
- Invoice Company
- Account Number
- G/L Date
- Company
- G/L Offset

The Company and G/L Offset fields are not key fields until an invoice has been posted.

To change the information in these fields, do one of the following:

- Delete and re-enter the invoice
- Copy the invoice and change these fields on the new invoice before you enter it

▶ To change posted invoices

On Standard Invoice Entry
1. Locate the invoice.
2. Change the information in any field that is not a key field.
4. On AR and AP Journal Entries, complete the following fields to create a balancing entry, if necessary:
   - Account Number
   - Amount
   - Explanation 2 (optional)

What You Should Know About

**Changing a posted invoice with taxes**

You cannot add taxes to a posted invoice. However, you can change the gross amount of the invoice and enter tax information as an additional pay item.

To change a posted invoice with taxes, enter a new gross amount and remove the tax amount and taxable amount information. The system recalculates the tax information.

See Also

- *Revising Unposted Invoices (P03105)* for information about how to change and delete unposted invoices
Voiding Posted Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Standard Invoice Entry

To remove a posted invoice from your general ledger, you must void it and then post the batch again. You can void an invoice in any open fiscal period. You cannot delete a posted invoice.

After you void an invoice, notice the following:

- The original gross amount in payment information is zero.
- The payment status code is P (paid).
- The document type (RE) audit trail is created for the change in gross amount.
- The G/L date does not appear on the new document until you post the invoice. The original document retains the original G/L date.

To void posted invoices

On Standard Invoice Entry

1. Locate the invoice you want to void.
2. Using the Delete action, change the following field, if necessary, and press Enter to access A/R and AP Journal Entries:
   - G/L Date
3. On AR and AP Journal Entries, complete one of the following fields:
   - Void
   - Account Number
   - Amount
4. To void the invoice in a different period, change the following field (optional):
   - G/L Date
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Void (V) | A code that controls whether transactions are automatically reversed or voided. Valid codes are:  
| R | Create automatic reversing entries when the original entries are posted to the general ledger. Date the reversing entries as of the first day of the following period.  
| V | Create reversing entries (reverse the sign on the amount on the original entry) and date them as of the current date. This code is only valid if you are changing an existing transaction. To void a transaction, locate the original entry and change the Void field to V. If the journal entry has not been posted, you can delete the journal entry.  
| Blank | Do not reverse or void transactions. |

**What You Should Know About**

**Voiding a paid invoice**  
To void a paid or partially paid invoice, you must first void the customer’s payment.
Print Invoice Journal Information

Printing Invoice Journal Information

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Invoice Journal Report

Generally, it is easier to review invoice journal information online. However, if there is a balancing problem, you might find the printed invoice journal more useful.

The Invoice Journal Report selects transactions from the A/R Ledger (F0311) and Account Ledger (F0911) tables.
This report lists messages in the blank area next to the far right column. These messages describe:

- Balance discrepancies (if the total gross/discount amount does not equal the G/L distribution)
- Intercompany transactions (if the document contains G/L transactions for more than one company)

See Also

- *Reviewing Invoices (P03201)* for information about reviewing invoice journal information online
Processing Options for A/R Invoice Journal Report

PRINT FORMAT CONTROL:
1. Enter a format to print:                         ____________
   ’ ’ = 132 characters
   ’1’ = 198 characters, including
tax amounts and Journal Entry
   remarks.

SUBHEADING CONTROL:
2. Enter a ’1’ to print the User ID from            ____________
   the Batch Header file (F0011) in the
   report subheading. If left blank,
   the User ID from the A/R Ledger file
   (F0311) will print.

ACCOUNT NUMBER DISPLAY MODE:
3. Enter the type of the account number             ____________
to print on the Journal:
   ’ ’ = Number entered during input.
   ’1’ = Structured Account.
   ’2’ = Short Account ID.
   ’3’ = Unstructured Account.

ROUNDING FACTOR:
4. Enter desired rounding factor:                   ____________
   ’ ’ = no rounding
   ’0’ = round to whole numbers
   ’1’ = divide by 10
   ’2’ = divide by 100
   ’3’ = divide by 1,000
   ’4’ = divide by 10,000
   ’5’ = divide by 100,000

Amounts will be rounded to the nearest
whole number. Actual amounts are used
to accumulate totals.

TAX PROCESSING:
5. Enter a ’1’ to use the Tax Workfile              ____________
   (F0018) to print the VAT Receivable
   amounts and also to balance A/R
   Ledger and General Ledger amounts
   with Use and VAT Taxes (for posted
   invoices). If left blank, only the
   tax amount from the A/R Ledger file
   (F0311) will be printed.
   NOTE: This option is only valid when
   option 1 is set to ’1’ (Print
   198 character format).

TAX PROCESSING (CONT’D):
6. Enter a ’1’ to bypass out of balance            ____________
   errors on unposted invoices with
   non-recoverable tax. If left blank,
   errors will be processed.
Data Selection and Sequence for A/R Invoice Journal Report

The batch number, user ID, and batch date are commonly used data selections.

If your company creates additional versions of this report, you must use the following sequence:

1. User ID (alphabetical order)
2. Batch Date/Number (most recent date first)
3. Invoice Number (ascending order)
Work with Customer Ledger Information

Working with Customer Ledger Information

To quickly review invoices and receipts or audit a customer’s transaction history, review A/R ledger information for the customer.

Working with customer ledger information consists of:

- Defining invoice search criteria
- Reviewing invoice information
- Viewing account information

Customer ledger information is stored in the A/R Ledger table (F0311).
Defining Invoice Search Criteria

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Customer Ledger Inquiry

To review transaction information for a customer, define the type of criteria that the system uses to display information. You can limit your search by defining:

- Standard invoice criteria, such as a customer number or invoice number
- Detailed invoice criteria, such as a date range, company number, or currency
- Refined invoice criteria, such as an amount range or G/L class

**To define invoice search criteria**

On Customer Ledger Inquiry

1. Complete one or more of the following fields:
   - Customer Number
   - Parent Number
   - Invoice Number
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Statement Number

2. To limit the number of documents displayed, complete one or more of the following fields:
   - Date From
   - Date Thru
   - Sequence
   - Paid
   - Company
   - Skip To Page

3. To refine your search, choose the Additional Selections function next to the appropriate invoice.
4. On Additional Selections, complete one or more of the following fields:
   - Amount Range (From/Thru)
   - Selection
   - G/L Class
   - Include Exclude (1/0)
   - Sales Order
   - Reference
   - Document Type
   - Matching Document Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date Thru</td>
<td>A numeric code that identifies either the period number or the date that you want to locate. If you leave this field blank, the system uses the ending date of the current period that is set up for the company. Valid period numbers are 1 through 14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Form-specific information</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can use this field only when the Sequence field is set to 2 (by due date), 3 (by invoice date), or 8 (by G/L date). You cannot enter a period value on this form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date From</td>
<td>A number that identifies either a fiscal period (numbers from 1 to 14) or a beginning date. The information displayed begins with this date or period. If you leave this field blank, the system displays all transactions up to the Thru Date. Totals are for the transactions displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Form-specific information</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skip To Page</td>
<td>This field allows you to specify a specific page number to access in the subfile when searching. The page number is actually converted to detail lines to determine subfile placement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amount From</td>
<td>This field is used to specify the lower limit for selecting an amount range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amount Through</td>
<td>This field is used to specify the upper limit for selecting an amount range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amount Selection</td>
<td>An option for choosing either the gross or open amount ranges. Valid values for this field are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 Gross amount range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 Open amount range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paid transactions and receipts are displayed (A/R only).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include / Exclude Code</td>
<td>This code allows you to include or exclude records with a specified field of information. A field of information can be document type, G/L offset, and so on. This code is dependent on the other field which specifies the information to be included or excluded. Allowed values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 If a value is specified in the other field of information, select only the records with this same value in that field (default).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 If a value is specified in the other field of information, exclude all records that have the same value in that field but process all other records that do not have that value in the field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales Document Number</td>
<td>The number of the sales document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>An alphanumeric value used as a cross-reference or secondary reference number. Typically, this is the customer number, supplier number, or job number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Reviewing Invoice Information

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Customer Ledger Inquiry

When reviewing an unpaid or paid invoice, you can access various information from the customer ledger, such as the original invoice or the G/L distribution for a specific invoice.

Reviewing invoice information consists of:

- Reviewing an individual invoice
- Reviewing an associated journal entry
- Reviewing customer ledger detail
- Viewing multi-currency invoice information

See Also

- Defining Invoice Search Criteria (P032002)

To review an individual invoice

On Customer Ledger Inquiry

1. Define the necessary invoice search criteria.
2. Choose the Invoice option next to the appropriate document.

What You Should Know About

Revising an invoice To change or delete an invoice on Customer Ledger Inquiry, set the appropriate processing option. Otherwise, you can only view invoices.

To review an associated journal entry

On Customer Ledger Inquiry

1. Define the necessary invoice search criteria.
2. Choose the Journal Entry option next to the appropriate document.
What You Should Know About

Revising a journal entry  If you set the appropriate processing option, you can change a journal entry by accessing the individual invoice. You cannot change a journal entry by accessing it directly on Customer Ledger Inquiry.

To review customer ledger detail

When reviewing a transaction, you can view the detail without first locating the individual invoice or receipt. For example, you might want to review the invoice associated with a chargeback.

On Customer Ledger Inquiry

1. Define the necessary invoice search criteria.
2. Choose the Detail option next to the appropriate document.
To view multi-currency invoice information

To locate invoice information for a customer that uses multiple currencies, access the customer’s ledger. You can view:

- All invoices for a particular customer. Amounts appear in the currency assigned to the customer.
- Only invoices entered in a specific currency.
- All invoices in the original currency of the transaction.
- All invoices in the domestic currency of the company.

In the following example, the currency code is GBP (British pounds). The system displays only those documents entered in British pounds.

On Customer Ledger Inquiry

1. Define the necessary invoice search criteria.
2. Complete the following field:
   - Currency
3. Toggle to the currency format (optional).
### Field | Explanation
---|---
Currency | A code that indicates the currency of a customer’s or a supplier’s transactions.

*............ Form-specific information.............*

This is the currency code of the invoices you want displayed. Values are:

Blank

The system supplies the currency code for the customer from the Address Book system. It is the currency most commonly used by the customer. Only invoices entered in that currency are displayed. If the Address Book system has no currency code for the customer, an * (asterisk) is used (described below).

A specific currency code

This can be any currency code defined on your system. Only invoices entered in the specified currency are displayed.

* (asterisk)

All invoices in all currencies for the customer are displayed. Amounts are displayed in the domestic currency of the associated company.

+ (plus)

All invoices in all currencies for the customer are displayed. Amounts are displayed in the foreign currency of the transaction.

- (minus)

Amounts in the currency of the transaction are displayed. Foreign amounts are displayed if the transaction is foreign. Domestic amounts are displayed if the transaction is domestic.

---

### What You Should Know About

**Viewing the exchange rate**

For amounts in currencies different from the currency of the company, view the exchange rate used during invoice entry on Customer Ledger Detail Information.

**Displaying amounts in one currency**

If your organization uses the same customer for various companies, you might want to enter a company number to limit the information displayed. This ensures that all amounts display in the same currency when viewing all invoices.
**Viewing Account Information**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Customer Ledger Inquiry

Viewing account information consists of:

- Viewing account activity
- Viewing account status information
- Viewing collection management information

**Viewing Account Activity**

To view the activity of an account, access the customer's ledger. For example, you might want to determine when you received payment on a specific invoice and the receipt amount.

**To view account activity**

On Customer Ledger Inquiry

1. Define the necessary invoice search criteria.
2. Choose the Payment Review option next to the appropriate document.
**Viewing Account Status Information**

To view detailed status information for a customer or parent account, such as a customer's credit limit or account balance, access the customer's ledger.

▷ **To view account status information**

On Customer Ledger Inquiry

1. Complete the following field:
   - Customer Number

2. To access Account Status Summary, choose the Age & Status function.

---

See Also

- Viewing Account Status Information (P03203)
**Viewing Collection Management Information**

To view collection information for a specific invoice, access the customer’s ledger. For example, you might want to determine if an invoice is set up to appear on a collection report or verify the number of payment reminders to send for an overdue invoice.

---

**To view collection management information**

On Customer Ledger Inquiry

1. Define the necessary invoice search criteria.
2. Choose the Collection Management option next to the appropriate invoice.

---

**See Also**

- *Managing Collections Information (P03218)*

---

**Processing Options for Customer Ledger Inquiry**

**FORMAT CONTROL:**

1. Enter sequence of numbers (1-10) to indicate which formats will appear and in what order. If all are left blank, all formats will appear in the order below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Customer Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

   Note: Format Statement Number.
controlled with format selection function key.

2. Enter a ’1’ to allow display and selection of the Payment Instrument.

3. Enter a ’1’ to suppress commas from amount fields.

DATE SEQUENCE:
4. If sequencing by Due Date, Invoice Date or G/L Date, enter a ’1’ to display dates in descending order, (latest to earliest date). If left blank, dates will display in ascending order.

INVOICE ENTRY MODE:
5. Enter a ’1’ to allow changes in Invoice Entry (Option 1). If left blank, Invoice Entry will be restricted to inquiry mode when accessed from this program.

DEFAULT SEQUENCE:
6. Enter the Default Sequence to be used if there is no default in the Address Book or Data Dictionary.

PRE-LOADED DATA SELECTIONS:
7. Any values entered in the following options will be loaded upon entry into the program:
   - Sequence
   - Paid
   - Company
   - Payment Inst. (*=All)
   - Currency Code

ADDITIONAL PRE-LOADED SELECTIONS:
8. Any values entered in the following options will be loaded into the Additional Selections upon entry into the program:
   - Alternate Payer
   - G/L Class Code (*=All)
   - Document Type
   - Matching Doc Type
   - Include/Exclude (1)

SQL OPTIONS:
9. Enter a ’1’ to only allow inquiries that are compatible with existing Logical Files. If left blank, SQL will be used for inquiries that cannot be processed with a logical file.
What You Should Know About Processing Options

Additional pre-loaded selections (8)

The pre-loaded values appear for all users. You might want to set up various versions of the Customer Ledger Inquiry with the pre-loaded selections you require.

Exercises

See the exercises for this chapter.
Test Yourself: Working with Customer Ledger Information

1. When you initially locate Customer 3001, no ledger information appears because there is no open activity. To determine if paid history associated with this customer exists, type in the Paid field.

2. You are viewing ledger information for customer 1001. You only want to display invoices that range in amounts from 2,500 to 5,000. How can you do this?

3. True or False

   You can change an associated journal entry on Customer Ledger Inquiry.

The answers are in Appendix B.
Work with Recurring Invoices

Working with Recurring Invoices

If you need to bill a customer for the same amount on a regular basis, such as monthly, quarterly, and so on, set up your Accounts Receivable system to create a recurring invoice.

Working with recurring invoices consists of:

- Reviewing recurring invoices
- Revising recurring invoices
- Recycling recurring invoices

To set up a recurring invoice, you first specify the initial payment, the total number of payments, the recurring frequency, and the accounting distributions for the periodic invoice amount.
The following graphic illustrates the recurring invoice process.

Original Invoice
Document number: 467
Recurring Frequency: MO
Number of Payments: 12
500.00

1st Recycle
Document number: 4756
Original: 467
Recurring Frequency: MO
Number of Payments: 11
500.00

2nd Recycle
Document number: 4987
Original: 467
Recurring Frequency: MO
Number of Payments: 10
500.00

3rd Recycle
Document number: 5890
Original: 467
Recurring Frequency: MO
Number of Payments: 9
500.00

The 1st recycle, invoice 4756, is a copy of the original less one payment.

The 2nd recycle, invoice 4987, is a copy of the original less one payment.

The 3rd recycle, invoice 5980, is a copy of the original less one payment. The process continues.
On a periodic basis, you generate a “copy” of the original invoice. This copying process is called *recycling*. The recycled invoice has its own document number and batch separate from the original invoice.

When you recycle an invoice, you use a slightly modified version of the J.D. Edwards three-tier processing steps:

1. Recycle the invoices you want to send to your customers. You can do this at any time, but usually you recycle on a weekly, monthly, or quarterly basis.
2. Review and approve the batches.
3. Post the batches to the general ledger.

Information about recurring invoices is maintained in the A/R Ledger (F0311) and Account Ledger (F0911) tables.
Example: Processing a Recurring Invoice

You enter the following invoice into the system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account Number</th>
<th>1001</th>
<th>J.D Edwards &amp; Co.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Invoice Number</td>
<td>467</td>
<td>RR 00001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoice Amount</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoice Date</td>
<td>6/15/98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G/L Date</td>
<td>6/30/98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recur Freq.</td>
<td>MO</td>
<td>No. of Payments 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Invoice 467 is the original invoice and is the first of 12 invoices. When you recycle this invoice, it is used as the “master” invoice to copy information to the next monthly invoice. If you do not recycle invoice 467, it will be the only invoice in the system.

The first time you run Recycle Recurring Invoices for “Monthly” or “ALL” frequencies, the following occurs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ORIGINAL INVOICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoice Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoice Amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoice Date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G/L Date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recur Freq.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The system copies invoice 467 to a new invoice, 4756. Invoice 467 no longer contains a recurring frequency or number of payments.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NEW INVOICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoice Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoice Amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoice Date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G/L Date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recur Freq.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Invoice 4756 has a monthly recurring frequency, 11 remaining payments, and updated invoice and G/L dates.
Entering Recurring Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice Entry Methods (G03111), choose Standard Invoice Entry

To bill a customer the same amount on a regular basis, enter a recurring invoice. This method of entering a standard invoice is ideal for lease and rent payments.

To enter recurring invoices

On Standard Invoice Entry

1. Follow the steps for entering a standard invoice with basic information.
   See Entering Standard Invoices.

2. Choose the Detail function.
3. Complete the following fields:
   - Remark (optional)
   - Recurring Frequency
   - Number of Payments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Recur Frequency</td>
<td>A code to designate that a voucher or invoice payment is to be set up as recurring. If a frequency is defined, the number of recurring payments must also be defined. These two pieces of information are used when you run the Recycle Recurring Voucher/Invoices program. If you specify a recurring frequency in voucher or invoice entry, you cannot enter multiple pay items. Valid recurring frequency values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MO    Monthly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AN    Annually</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>WK    Weekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>QT    Quarterly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SA    Semiannually</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BW    Biweekly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field | Explanation
--- | ---
# of Pymts | Identifies the total number of recurring payments to be made for an invoice or a voucher. For recurring payments, enter the total number of payments including the original invoice or voucher. The invoice or voucher you are currently entering is the first payment.

When the next recurring payment is created, this value is reduced by 1. For example, if twenty payments are to be made, enter 20 during invoice entry or voucher entry. The next time a new recurring payment is created, the number of payments will be 19.

Form-specific information

When the number of payments is 1, invoices are not generated.

---

**See Also**

- *Entering Standard Invoices (P03105)*
**Reviewing Recurring Invoices**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice Entry Methods (G03111), choose Recurring Invoice Inquiry or Recurring Invoice Report

After you enter recurring invoices, you might want to verify them before recycling them. To do so, review recurring invoices on the following:

- Recurring Invoice Inquiry
- Recurring Invoice Report

 Normally, you review invoices online. However, if you have numerous invoices to review, the report is a more usable format. The report is a traditional invoice journal for proofing and balancing. It shows transactions from the A/R Ledger table and related information from the Account Ledger table.

---

**See Also**

- *Revising Recurring Invoices (P03120)* for information about updating recurring invoices on Recurring Invoice Inquiry
Process Options for Recurring Invoices Report

PRINT FORMAT CONTROL:
1. Enter a format to print:  
   ' ' = 132 characters  
   '1' = 198 characters, including tax amounts and Journal Entry remarks.

SUBHEADING CONTROL:
2. Enter a '1' to print the User ID from the Batch Header file (F0011) in the report subheading. If left blank, the User ID from the A/R Ledger file (F0311) will print.

ACCOUNT NUMBER DISPLAY MODE:
3. Enter the type of the account number to print on the Journal:  
   ' ' = Number entered during input.  
   '1' = Structured Account.  
   '2' = Short Account ID.  
   '3' = Unstructured Account.

ROUNDING FACTOR:
4. Enter desired rounding factor:  
   ' ' = no rounding  
   '0' = round to whole numbers  
   '1' = divide by 10  
   '2' = divide by 100  
   '3' = divide by 1,000  
   '4' = divide by 10,000  
   '5' = divide by 100,000

   Amounts will be rounded to the nearest whole number. Actual amounts are used to accumulate totals.

TAX PROCESSING:
5. Enter a '1' to use the Tax Workfile (F0018) to print the VAT Receivable amounts and also to balance A/R Ledger and General Ledger amounts with Use and VAT Taxes (for posted invoices). If left blank, only the tax amount from the A/R Ledger file (F0311) will be printed.

   NOTE: This option is only valid when option 1 is set to '1' (Print 198 character format).

TAX PROCESSING (CONT’D):
6. Enter a '1' to bypass out of balance errors on unposted invoices with non-recoverable tax. If left blank, errors will be processed.
Revising Recurring Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice Entry Methods (G03111), choose Recurring Invoice Inquiry

Before recycling your recurring invoices, you might choose to revise them. You can:

- Change selected fields. To prevent conflicts between old recurring invoices and new recurring invoices, the system assigns a new document number each time it generates a recurring invoice.
- Cancel the invoice. To do this, you must use the Standard Invoice Entry form.
- Delete or void the invoice. To do this, you must use the Work With Customer Ledger Inquiry form.

To revise recurring invoices

On Recurring Invoice Inquiry
1. Display all recurring invoices or complete any of the following fields to limit your search:
   - Company
   - G/L Offset
   - Net Due Date
   - Recurring Frequency

2. Choose the Invoice Entry option next to the invoice you want to revise.

3. On Accounts Receivable Entry, change the following fields if necessary:
   - Net Due Date
   - Gross Amount
   - Discount Available
   - Remark

4. Choose the Detail function (optional).
5. Change the following fields, if necessary:
   - Number of Payments
   - Recurring Frequency
   - Invoice Date

**What You Should Know About**

**Revising paid invoices**
If an invoice is paid, you can only update the recurring frequency and number of remaining payments on Recurring Invoice Inquiry.

**Canceling a recurring invoice**
To cancel a recurring invoice, clear the Frequency and Number of Payments fields on Standard Invoice Entry. After you recycle the invoice, these fields will be blank. You cannot change or reactivate a recurring invoice once it is cancelled.

**Deleting a recurring invoice**
You can delete a recurring invoice that has never been recycled.
Recycling Recurring Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice Entry Methods (G03111), choose Recycle Recurring Invoices

After you enter, review, and revise recurring invoices, recycle them to create a new batch of invoices. Recycle Recurring Invoices generates invoices based on the number of payments and recurring frequency you specify when you enter the recurring invoice.

When you recycle an invoice, the system makes a copy of the previous invoice and updates the appropriate fields. It repeats this process every time you recycle the invoice until the number of payments equals one. A customer does not have to pay an existing invoice in order to generate the next cycle of recurring invoices.

This process updates information in the following tables:

- Batch Header (F0011)
- Customer Master (F0301)
- A/R Ledger (F0311)
- Account Ledger (F0911)

What Happens When You Recycle Recurring Invoices?

When you recycle recurring invoices, the system:

- Removes the recurring frequency and number of payments on either the original invoice or the most recent copy.
- Creates a new invoice and updates the following:
  - Invoice number with a new number
  - Batch number with a new number
  - Number of payments (decreases by one)
  - G/L Date and net due date, using the recurring frequency to calculate the next due date
  - Invoice date and number according to the processing options
- Updates the A/R Ledger table for the new invoice.
• Creates an error report, if errors exist. Errors include:
  • No accounting distribution records created. This occurs when no records are found in the Account Ledger table for the recurring invoice.
  • G/L date for the newly created invoice is for a prior fiscal year (PYEB).
  • G/L date is for a prior month (PBCO) and prior month dates have not been specified in the general accounting constants.
  • G/L date does not fall within a valid fiscal date pattern for the company.

When you first recycle a recurring invoice, the system:

• Makes a copy of the original invoice
• Clears the recurring frequency and number of payments on the original invoice
• Duplicates the recurring frequency from the original to the copy
• Subtracts one payment from the number of payments on the original invoice

**Before You Begin**

☐ Set up a separate version for each recurring frequency you use, for example, monthly, quarterly, or annually. Use data selection to select a specific frequency.

☐ Set up a next number series for your recurring invoices (optional).

**Processing Options for Recycle Recurring Invoices**

**DEFAULT PROCESSING:**
1. Enter a '1' to use today’s date as the invoice date. Enter a '2' to duplicate the invoice date. Default of blank will increment the invoice date.

**Exercises**

See the exercises for this chapter.
Test Yourself: Working with Recurring Invoices

1. Circle the document type that is associated with recurring invoices:
   - RI
   - RM
   - RR
   - RA

2. When entering a recurring invoice, only one pay item is allowed.
   True or False

3. From the following list, select three procedures that you can do to prevent a recurring invoice from being recycled:
   a. Change the pay status of the invoice to H.
   b. Change the number of remaining payments to 01 on the invoice.
   c. Use the data selections to exclude selection of the invoice.
   d. Set the number of payments and recurring frequency to blank.
   e. a, b, and d.

The answers are in Appendix B.
Manual Receipts Processing

Objectives

- To update invoices for payment
- To enter receipts that match to invoices
- To enter receipts when you cannot match them to specific invoices
- To enter receipts directly to the general ledger
- To select invoices for receipt application
- To create chargeback invoices for disputed amounts
- To create write-offs and adjustments
- To spread unapplied receipts to invoices
- To void and reverse non-sufficient funds (NSF) receipts

About Manual Receipts Processing

One of the most important steps in the accounts receivable process is to quickly enter payments received from your customers in order to recognize your current cash position. The Accounts Receivable system provides the flexibility you need to enter and maintain various types of receipts.

Manual receipts processing consists of:

- Updating invoices for payment
- Working with invoice match receipts
- Working with other types of receipts
- Approving and posting receipts
- Working with alternate methods of application
- Revising receipts
- Printing receipt information
**Which Form Do You Use to Enter Manual Receipts?**

Depending on the amount of account information you have for a customer, you can use either of the following forms to enter manual receipts:

- **Receipts Entry (Heads Down)**: Use this form when you need a fast way to enter receipts and already know the customer number and amounts. It is convenient if you enter receipts from an input form, such as a bank deposit statement.

- **Receipts Entry (Heads Up)**: Use this form to display all open activity for a customer. You can pre-load all open items and then select them as paid. When you use this form to enter receipts, you typically pre-load account information for a particular customer, parent account, or statement before applying a receipt.

The examples shown in this section use the Receipts Entry (Heads Up) form. However, you can use Receipts Entry (Heads Down) to complete any of the tasks included in this section.

**What Are the Steps for Processing Manual Receipts?**

You use the standard J.D. Edwards three-tier processing steps to manage manual receipts. They are:

1. Enter
2. Review
3. Post
The following illustrates the receipts entry process.

What Does the System Require to Process Manual Receipts?

The system requires certain information to process receipts and apply them to the open items in a customer’s account. Concepts that you should be familiar with include:

- Dates (deposit dates and system dates)
- Original document (invoice) types
- Matching document (receipt) types
- Type of input codes
Accounts Receivable

**Dates**

The system uses one of the following dates to process receipts:

- **Receipt item date**
  You enter this date on Receipts Entry. This is the date shown on the customer's receipt or item.

- **Deposit date (G/L)**
  You enter this date on Receipts Entry.

**Original Document Types**

When you display open items for a customer, each pay item consists of an original document type. Common document types include:

- **RI (Regular Invoice)**
  This is an invoice that you create using either standard invoice entry or speed invoice entry.

- **RR (Recurring Invoice)**
  This is a recurring invoice that you create using standard invoice entry and indicating the frequency and number of payments.

- **RU (Unapplied Receipt)**
  This is a receipt that you do not match to a specific invoice. The system applies this receipt to the customer's overall account to reduce the open balance.

- **RB (Chargeback Invoice)**
  This is an amount that is in dispute. The system creates a new invoice transaction.

- **RM (Credit Memo)**
  This is an overpaid amount.

- **NO (Netting Original)**
  The system creates this document to offset a voucher closed during the netting process.
**Matching Document Types**

After you enter receipts, adjustments, and so on, the system assigns a matching
document type to each original transaction. Common matching document types
include:

- **RC**  
  Receipt

- **RE**  
  Change to the invoice gross amount

- **RO**  
  Void receipt

- **RV**  
  NSF (non-sufficient funds) receipt

- **RA**  
  Adjustment

- **RQ**  
  Chargeback amount (always associated with original
document type RB)

- **RS**  
  Spread of unapplied receipt

- **NM**  
  Closes a voucher during the netting process

**Type of Input Codes**

The system applies each receipt according to the type of input code you enter.
The following lists the type of input (TI) codes and the action that the system
takes during processing:

- **Blank (No processing)**  
  The system does not try to match the receipt to an invoice
  pay item.

- **B (Balance Forward)**  
  The system automatically applies the receipt to the oldest
  invoices in chronological order of net due date.

- **I (Invoice Match)**  
  The system applies the receipt to the invoices you specify.
  You can choose to allow or disallow discounts.
D (Disallowed Discount) The system:

- Applies the receipt to the invoices you specify
- Closes the original invoice
- Creates a chargeback invoice for the amount of the disallowed discount

U (Unapplied Receipt) You apply the receipt to a particular customer account, not to a specific invoice. The system reduces the total of the customer's open amount due by the amount of the receipt, but does not apply the receipt to specific invoices.

C (Chargeback) This indicates that an invoice amount is in dispute. The system creates a new invoice for the disputed amount.

G (General Ledger) The system applies the receipt directly to a G/L account without applying it to any invoice. Use this code for miscellaneous, non-A/R receipts.

A (Adjustment) This is a manual adjustment for minor write-offs or outstanding items, such as disputed tax or freight charges. If you use this code, you must also enter a reason code for the adjustment.

W (Write-off) The system applies the receipt to the invoice and automatically writes off the difference. You can write off both overpayments and underpayments. If you use this code, you must also enter a reason code for the write-off.

S (Spread) You distribute an unapplied receipt or credit memo and apply it to open invoices.

F (Automatic Currency Gain/Loss) The system automatically creates this code to record a currency gain or loss when you enter a receipt.

R (Range of Invoices) You can use this code to specify the beginning and ending range of invoices to which you want to apply receipts. This is similar to the I (invoice match) code.

X (Exclude from Range) You can use this code to indicate those invoices within the range to exclude from the receipt application.

I (Invoice Match – Net Amount with Discount) The system applies the receipt to the net amount of specific invoices (gross amount less the discount). If you use this code, you cannot change the discount information.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Invoice Match – Total Open Amount without Discount</td>
<td>The system applies the receipt to the entire open amount of specific invoices and ignores the discount. If you use this code, you cannot change the discount information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Invoice Match – Multiple Invoices with One Receipt</td>
<td>You use this code to delete one line item at a time from the unposted receipt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Update Invoices for Payment

Updating Invoices for Payment

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing
From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose Speed Status Change

To quickly change the pay status and due dates of your open A/R invoices, you can update them individually or update a group of invoices globally.

Updating invoice for payment consists of:

- Displaying open invoices
- Updating an individual invoice
- Updating a group of invoices

When you update invoices for payment, the system updates the A/R Ledger table (F0311).
To display open invoices

Before you update invoices for payment, you must display them. You can display the open invoices for a specific customer, parent account, or statement.

On Speed Status Change

1. Complete one of the following fields:
   - Address Number
   - Parent Number
   - Document Number
   - Job or Business Unit
   - Statement Number
2. To further limit the information displayed, complete the following fields:
   - Net Due Date
   - Discount Due Date
   - Invoice Date
   - Pay Status
   - Document Type
   - G/L Offset
   - Currency Code

To update an individual invoice

You can quickly change the payment information of an invoice, such as the pay status or discount amount, without accessing the original invoice on Standard Invoice Entry.

On Speed Status Change

1. Change information in any of the following fields:
   - Pay Status
   - Payment Instrument
   - Discount Available
2. Choose the Detail function.
3. Change information in any of the following fields:
   - Alternate Payer
   - Statement Number
   - Remark
   - Payment Terms

▶ To update a group of invoices

You can quickly change payment information for multiple invoices at one time. For example, you might want to extend the discount period for a preferred customer. The most efficient way to do this is to update the discount due date on all of the invoices for the customer globally.

On Speed Status Change

1. To select the group of invoices you want to update, complete any of the following fields:
   - Address Number
   - Parent Number
   - Statement Number
   - Job or Business Unit
   - Statement Number
2. Complete any of the following optional fields:
   - Pay Status (From/To)
   - Net Due Date
   - Discount Due Date

3. Scroll to the last invoice.

   If you do not do this, the system only updates the invoices that appear on this and previous forms.

4. Choose the Update Status/Due Date function.

What You Should Know About

Verifying the updated information

To verify your changes after you update a group of invoices for payment, locate the appropriate invoices.

Processing Options for A/R Speed Status Change

STATEMENT NUMBER REVISIONS:
1. Enter a ’1’ to allow updates to be made to the statement number (fold area). If left blank, you will not be able to update the statement number.
Test Yourself: Updating Invoices for Payment

1. You want to change the discount amount on invoice 849 for customer 1001. What is the most efficient way to do this?

   a. Locate customer 1001 on Speed Status Change, find invoice 849 in the list of invoices, and change the discount.

   b. Locate the invoice on Speed Status Change and change the discount.

2. True or False

   You can change the discount due date for an invoice on Speed Status Change.

3. You need to change the net due date from July 20, 1998 to August 15, 1998 for all pay items associated with an invoice. What is the most efficient way to do this?

   a. Locate the invoice and specify August 15, 1998 as the net due date.

   b. Locate the invoice and change the net due date to August 15, 1998. Choose the Update Status/Due Date function to globally update the due dates.

   c. Locate the invoice and change the net due date to August 15, 1998 for each pay item.

The answers are in Appendix B.
Work with Invoice Match Receipts

When you receive payment from a customer, you can quickly match the receipt to an invoice or a group of invoices. Matching receipts to open invoices is the most common method of applying receipts. Generally, the receipt pays the invoice in full.

Working with invoice match receipts consists of:

- Displaying open items
- Entering basic receipts
- Reviewing the results of receipts entry
- Reviewing gain and loss information
- Entering receipts with discounts
- Entering receipts without discounts
- Creating chargebacks for discount amounts

Receipt information is stored in the A/R Ledger table (F0311).

Before You Begin

- Set up the appropriate AAIs for receipts processing
Displaying Open Items

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

Before you enter a receipt, you might need to display the open items in a customer's account. Depending on the information you specify, you can display open items by:

- A customer or parent account
- A statement number or multiple statement numbers
- The domestic currency of the company
- The currency of the invoices associated with each customer

Displaying open items consists of:

- Displaying open items by customer number
- Displaying open items by parent account
- Displaying open items by a single statement number
- Displaying open items by multiple statement numbers
- Displaying invoices by domestic currency of the company
- Displaying multi-currency invoices for a customer
Displaying open items is the first task in the receipts application process. You use the information displayed to apply receipts accordingly.

**What You Should Know About**

| Changing the sequence of information displayed | The system initially displays open items by net due date. You can change this sequence by toggling to an alternate format. |
| Summarized pay items | An * (asterisk) in the Pay Item field indicates that the pay items are summarized. To toggle between summarized and detailed information, choose the Summarized Pay Item Toggle function. |
| Viewing an attached memo | The system highlights a pay item if an internal memo is attached to it. To view and update the memo, access generic text for the appropriate pay item. |

**To display open items by customer number**

On Receipts Entry

1. Complete the following required field:
   - Display Account
   
   Do not press Enter.

2. To display the open items for the customer, choose the Account Inquiry function.

3. To limit the information displayed, complete the following field:
   - Company

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display Acct</td>
<td>The address book number that identifies the customer associated with the transaction.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To display open items by parent account

On Receipts Entry

1. Complete the following field:
   - Display Account

   Do not press Enter.

2. To display the open items for the parent, choose the Parent Inquiry function.

   Do not press Enter.

3. To limit the information displayed, complete the following field:
   - Company

In the following example, the system displays all open invoice items for the parent account and all its associated child accounts. Notice the different customer numbers in the Account Number column.
To display open items by a single statement number

On Receipts Entry

1. Complete the following required field with the statement number:
   - Display Account
     Do not press Enter.

2. To display open items for a statement number, choose the Statement Inquiry function.

To display open items by multiple statement numbers

On Receipts Entry

1. To display open items for multiple statement numbers, choose the Statement Inquiry function in the following field:
   - Display Account
     Do not press Enter.

2. On Statement Selection, complete the first blank field of the first column with a statement number.
3. Move to the next field to complete another statement number.
4. Complete as many statement numbers as necessary and press Enter.
The system loads the invoices associated with the statement numbers on Receipts Entry in statement number, invoice number order.

**What You Should Know About**

**Invalid statement numbers**  
The system highlights any statement numbers it cannot find when you press Enter on Statement Selection.

**Summarized pay items**  
If an invoice contains multiple pay items and you set a processing option to summarize them, the invoice displays on Receipts Entry as a single item with an * (asterisk) in the Pay Item field.

![To display invoices by domestic currency of the company](#)

On Receipts Entry

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Display Account
   - Company

2. Complete the following field with an * (asterisk):
   - Currency Code

3. To display invoices by the domestic currency of the company, choose the Account Inquiry function.

   Do not press Enter.

4. To view the original currency of an invoice, choose the Detail function.
To display multi-currency invoices for a customer

On Receipts Entry

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Display Account
   - Company

2. Complete the following field with a currency that is foreign to the company you specified:
   - Currency Code

3. Choose the Account Inquiry function to display:
   - The domestic currency (USD) that is associated with the company
   - The currency of the customer (GBP) that is associated with each invoice
The following example shows the currency that is associated with each invoice.

**Entering Basic Receipts**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

In order for your general ledger to accurately reflect the money you receive, you must enter information about a customer's payment. To do so, you can enter a receipt with basic information. This is the second task in the receipts application process.

You enter receipts in batches, just as you enter invoices in batches. To make your bank reconciliation process easier, you might want to group the different types of receipts into different batches.

The system uses the receipt number to identify the receipt and its associated invoices as one record. Therefore, if you have more than one receipt with the same receipt number, even if they are from different customers, you should enter them in different batches. This eliminates seemingly “duplicate” records in the system.
To enter basic receipts

On Receipts Entry

1. Display the open items for the customer, parent account, or statement number.

2. Complete the following fields:
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Receipt/Item Amount
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)
   - Type Input

3. Complete the following optional fields:
   - Bank Account
   - Remark
   - Currency Code
   - Exchange Rate

4. If necessary, override the information in the following fields:
   - Amount Applied
   - Discount Taken
   - Account Number

5. Access the detail area (optional).
6. Complete the following fields (optional):
   - Remark
   - Offset
   - Company
   - G/L Account
   - Subledger

7. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Recpt/Item Number</td>
<td>The number of the document, such as a receipt, an adjustment, or a credit that you apply against an original document, such as an invoice. For example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Original (DOC)—Matching Rec/Item (DOCM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A/R Original Invoice – Invoice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Receipt – Invoice – Receipt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Credit Memo/Adjustment – Invoice – Credit Memo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A customer's document number on a receipt. This number must be unique within the batch. It can also be an item number used for spreads, adjustments, or other types of receipts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work with Invoice Match Receipts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Recpt/Item Amount</td>
<td>The amount of the receipt from the customer. This amount must balance to the detail of the amount applied to the open invoices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receipt/Item Date</td>
<td>The date of the matching receipt or item – Julian.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receipt Type of Input</td>
<td>A code that specifies the type of receipt input. This input type directly affects the manner in which the receipt is processed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amount Applied</td>
<td>The amount of the receipt/payment or item to be applied to the open balance of an invoice or voucher pay item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can apply amounts for partial payments. The total amount applied must equal the payment amount.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### What You Should Know About

**Specifying a company**

If you do not specify a company in the header of Receipts Entry, you must do so in the detail area next to the appropriate invoice or customer.

**Calculating the amount remaining on a receipt**

The system calculates and displays the amount remaining if the full amount of the receipt has not been applied or if more than the amount has been applied.

**Recalculating the detail of a receipt**

To recalculate the detail, choose the Recalculate Detail function when entering a receipt. This is especially helpful when you apply discounts to receipts.

If there are multiple invoices, choose the Search/Bottom function to move to the last item in the list. If you do this with a due date in the Skip to Due Date field, the cursor moves to the invoice with the specified due date.
Reviewing the Results of Receipts Entry

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing.

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method.

After you enter a receipt, you might want to verify that you applied it correctly or view the current open amount for the customer. To do so, review the results of receipt entry on Customer Ledger Inquiry. This is the third task in the receipts application process.

To review the results of receipt entry

On Receipts Entry


2. On Customer Ledger Inquiry, complete any of the following fields:
   - Customer Number
   - Parent Number
   - Invoice Number From/Thru
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Statement Number
   - Date From/Thru
3. To view only paid items, complete the following field:
   - Paid

See Also
   - Locating Customer Ledger Information (P032002)

Reviewing Gain and Loss Information

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

After you enter a receipt, the system automatically creates any realized gains or losses. If the rate of exchange changes between the time you enter the invoice and the time you receive payment, there is a gain or loss.

The system uses AAI items RG (realized gain) and RL (realized loss) to determine the G/L account number.

When you review the receipt:
   - In foreign mode, the system displays the foreign amount received.
   - In domestic mode, the system calculates and displays a gain or loss record.

Example: Currency Gain/Loss

The following example shows a partial receipt for an invoice. It illustrates the gain or loss and the entries created in each step of the process.

The receipt, when displayed in foreign mode, shows the foreign amount received.
**Invoice and Receipt**

**Invoice Entry**
- Invoice date: July 1, 1998
- Transaction amount: 100 (FRF)
- Exchange rate: 33.5
- Domestic amount: 3,350 (BEF)

**Receipt (current rate)**
- Receipt date: August 1, 1998
- Transaction amount: 100 (FRF)
- Exchange rate: 34.0
- Domestic amount: 3,400 (BEF)
- Currency Gain (−)/Loss (+): 25

**Journal Entries**

**Invoice Entry**
- Accounts: Sales and A/R
- Ledger types: AA, CA
- Debit: A/R (AA ledger) 3,350 and (CA ledger) 100
- Credit: Sales (AA ledger) 3,350 and (CA ledger) 100

**Receipt**
- Accounts: A/R, Cash, and Realized Gain
- Ledger types: AA, CA
- Debit: Cash (AA ledger) 3,375 (CA ledger) 100
- Credit: A/R (AA ledger) 3,350 (CA ledger) 100
- Credit: Realized Gain (AA ledger) 25

**To review gain and loss information**

On Receipts Entry

Follow the steps to review the results of receipts entry.

*See Reviewing the Results of Receipts Entry.*
Entering Receipts with Discounts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

When you apply a receipt to an invoice or a group of invoices, you can choose to allow the discount. The system creates one matching document for each original document to which you apply the receipt.

When you post the receipt, the system uses AAI item RKD to distribute the amount of the discount to the appropriate account.

You can set a processing option to allow the discount taken amount to be more than the discount available. For example, you might issue a credit to a customer in the form of a discount amount for a disputed item. In most cases, however, you should not change the processing option.
Example: Invoice Match with Discount

In the following example, receipt number 4102 is received July 24, 1998 in the amount of 5,816.25. The associated invoice number is 2155.

As shown on Customer Ledger Inquiry, you can view the document type RC that the system creates for the receipt. The invoice is now fully paid.
To enter receipts with discounts

On Receipts Entry

1. Display the open items for the customer or parent account.
2. Complete the following fields:
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Receipt/Item Amount
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)
3. Specify I (invoice match) in the following field next to the appropriate invoice:
   - Type Input
4. To accept a different discount amount, override the information in the following field:
   - Discount Taken
5. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add
6. Access Customer Ledger Inquiry to view the results.

What You Should Know About

Viewing discount information

To view information about a discount, choose Detail Information in the Option field next to the appropriate receipt (RC) document on Customer Ledger Inquiry.
**Entering Receipts without Discounts**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing.

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method.

When applying a receipt to an invoice or many invoices, you can choose not to allow the discount. For example, you might not allow the discount if you receive a customer’s payment after the discount due date specified on the invoice.

If you do not allow the discount, the system leaves the original invoice open in the amount of the discount. The system creates one matching document for each original document to which you apply the receipt.

**Example: Invoice Match without Discount**

In the following example, receipt number 4187 is received in the amount of 4,450 on July 25, 1998. The associated invoice number is 2027.

![Image of the receipt entry screen]

When you review the results on Customer Ledger Inquiry:

- The original invoice amount is 4,500 with a discount of 50.
- This discount is not allowed when the receipt is applied to the invoice.
- The receipt of 4,450 is applied (RC document), leaving an open amount of 50 in the customer’s account.
To enter receipts without discounts

On Receipts Entry

1. Display the open items for the customer or parent account.
2. Complete the following fields:
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Receipt/Item Amount
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)
3. Type I (invoice match) in the following field next to the appropriate invoice:
   - Type Input
4. Remove the amount or type 0 (zero) in the following field:
   - Discount Taken
5. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add
6. Access Customer Ledger Inquiry to view the results.
Creating Chargebacks for Discount Amounts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

When applying a receipt to an invoice or many invoices, you might need to create a chargeback for the discount amount. For example, a customer might issue payment for an invoice, less the discount, even though the terms of the discount have expired.

When you create a chargeback, the system creates three documents:

- **RC** (receipt). This contains the receipt number that closes out the original invoice.
- **RQ** (chargeback amount). This provides an audit trail back to the receipt that created the chargeback invoice and always contains a credit amount.
- **RB** (chargeback invoice). This creates the chargeback invoice that the system associates with the receipt (you can print this invoice and send it to the customer). The RB document already has a posted status.

**Example: Invoice Match - Create Chargeback for Discount Amount**

In the following example, receipt number 4191 is received in the amount of 5,737.05 on July 26, 1998. The associated invoice number is 2041.
When you review the results on Customer Ledger Inquiry, the system:

- Marks the original invoice as fully paid
- Creates an invoice for the amount of the discount
- Associates the chargeback invoice to the original invoice

To create chargebacks for discount amounts

On Receipts Entry

1. Display the open items for the customer or parent account.
2. Complete the following fields:
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Receipt/Item Amount
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)
3. Specify D (invoice match with chargeback) in the following field next to the appropriate invoice:
   - Type Input
4. Do one of the following:
   • In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   • In WorldVision, click Add

5. Access Customer Ledger Inquiry to view the results.

Exercises

See the exercises for this chapter.
Test Yourself: Working with Invoice Match Receipts

1. True or False

   You can use Customer Ledger Inquiry to display all open items for a customer, parent account, or statement number.

2. What document type does the system create when you enter an invoice match receipt?
   a. R1
   b. RC
   c. RU
   d. RB

3. True or False

   If you receive payment from a customer and decide not to allow the discount, the original invoice remains open in the amount of the discount.

4. When you create a chargeback for a discount amount, what type of input code do you specify next to the invoice?
   a. I
   b. C
   c. B
   d. D

The answers are in Appendix B.
Work with Other Types of Receipts

In addition to invoice match receipts, you can use the Accounts Receivable system to enter other types of receipts. For example, you might receive payment from a customer that is not associated with a specific invoice. In this case, you apply the receipt to the customer’s account to reduce the total open balance.

The type of input code controls how the system applies the receipt and determines which matching document to create.

Working with other types of receipts consists of:

- Entering balance forward receipts
- Entering unapplied receipts
- Creating chargeback invoices
- Entering receipts with write-offs
- Entering receipt adjustments
- Entering “G” type receipts

Regardless of which type of input code you use, receipt information is stored in the A/R Ledger table (F0311).

What You Should Know About

Type of input codes

You cannot remove a type of input code after a receipt is processed. You must delete or void the receipt and re-enter it.
**Multi-Currency**

If you use multiple currencies, you can enter receipts in domestic amounts for invoices issued in foreign currencies. For example, if a business in the United States invoices a Belgian company in Belgian francs, the system lets you enter a receipt for the Belgian franc in U.S. dollars.

**Entering Balance Forward Receipts**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

To apply a receipt to the oldest open invoice or group of invoices in a customer’s account, enter a balance forward receipt.

The system creates one matching document for each original document to which you apply the receipt. That is, it:

- Creates document type RC for the receipt
- Applies the receipt to the oldest invoice first
- Applies the remaining amount to the next oldest invoice

If an amount remains on the receipt after applying it to all open invoices, the system creates an unapplied receipt record (document type RU). Later, you can apply the receipt to future invoices you create for the customer.

You can set a processing option to allow discounts when entering a balance forward receipt. The system only allows the discount when an item is paid in full.
**Example: Balance Forward Receipt**

In the following example, receipt number 4044 is received in the amount of 2,065 for Couriers Express (customer 3333) on June 30, 1998.

When you review the results on Customer Ledger Inquiry:

- The amount of 1,765 is applied to an open invoice for 1,765 due on June 14, 1998.
- The remaining amount of 300 is applied to an open invoice in the amount of 500 due on June 27, 1998.
- An amount of 200 is left open for the original invoice.
To enter balance forward receipts

On Receipts Entry

1. Display the open items for the customer or parent account (optional).
2. Complete the following fields:
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Receipt/Item Amount
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)
3. On a blank line, type B (balance forward) in the following field:
   - Type Input
4. Complete the following fields:
   - Amount Applied
   - Account Number
5. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add
6. Access Customer Ledger Inquiry to view the results.
**Entering Unapplied Receipts**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

You can apply a receipt to a customer’s overall account without applying it to a specific invoice or group of invoices. To do so, enter an unapplied receipt. For example, you might want to include the receipt in your daily bank deposit and apply it later to the appropriate invoices.

This entry method enables you to immediately enter the money you receive in the system. This is fundamental in determining your current cash position.

When you enter an unapplied receipt, the system creates two documents:

- RU (unapplied receipt). This is an original document that takes the place of a specific invoice or several invoices. The RU document establishes an audit trail to the receipt number. It always contains a credit amount.
- RC (receipt). This is the matching document that the system creates for the amount received.

The RU document already has a posted status of D. The unapplied receipt remains open until you until you spread it among the appropriate invoices.

**Example: Unapplied Receipt**

In the following example, receipt number 4192 is received July 26, 1998 in the amount of 1,500. There is no invoice for the exact amount.
On Customer Ledger Inquiry, you can view the documents that the system creates for the unapplied receipt.

► To enter unapplied receipts

On Receipts Entry

1. Display the open items for the customer or parent account.
2. Complete the following fields:
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Receipt/Item Amount
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)
3. On a blank line, type U (unapplied) in the following field:
   - Type Input
4. Complete the following fields:
   - Amount Applied
   - Account Number
5. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add
6. Access Customer Ledger Inquiry to view the results.
Creating Chargeback Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

When you enter a receipt for only part of an invoice, you can create a chargeback invoice for the difference. For example, you might receive payment from a customer for only the merchandise ordered, less shipping costs. In this case, the cost of shipping is disputed by the customer because the terms were not previously agreed upon.

When you create a chargeback invoice, the system creates the following documents:

- RB (chargeback invoice). This is the original document that takes the place of a specific invoice or several invoices. The RB document creates an audit trail to the receipt number. It always contains a debit amount.
- RQ (chargeback amount). This creates an audit trail to the receipt/item number that the RB document creates.
- RC (receipt). This closes out the old invoice and creates a cross-reference to the receipt/item number.

Example: Chargeback Invoice

In the following example, a customer's payment is less than the invoice amount. Your company's policy is to close the original invoice and create a chargeback for the amount of the discrepancy.

Receipt number 4305 is received on July 31, 1998 in the amount of 45. The associated invoice number is 2044.
On Customer Ledger Inquiry, you can view the documents that the system creates for the chargeback invoice.

To create chargeback invoices

On Receipts Entry

1. Display the open items for the customer or parent account.
2. Complete the following fields:
• Receipt/Item Number
• Receipt/Item Amount
• Receipt/Item Date
• Deposit Date (G/L)

3. Type I (invoice match) in the following field next to the original invoice:
   • Type Input

4. On a blank line, type C (chargeback invoice) in the following field:
   • Type Input

5. Complete the following field with a negative amount for the difference:
   • Amount Applied

6. Complete the following field:
   • Account Number

7. Access the detail area.

8. To maintain a record of the original invoice number, complete the following field:
   • Remark

9. Complete the following optional fields:
   • Original Document Number
   • Original Document Type
   • Pay Item
   • Document Company

10. Do one of the following to create an audit trail to the original invoice:
    • In WorldSoftware, press Enter
    • In WorldVision, click Add

11. Access Customer Ledger Inquiry to view the results.

What You Should Know About

**Determining the due date for chargebacks** Use the processing options to specify how the system determines the due dates for chargebacks.
**Entering Receipts with Write-Offs**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipt entry method

When you enter an invoice match receipt and a small balance remains open on the invoice, you can have the system write it off to close the invoice. For example, you might receive a payment from a customer that is slightly less than the associated invoice. Instead of creating a chargeback invoice for the difference or leaving the amount open, you might find it in the best interest of your relationship with the customer to write off the minor amount.

You must specify a reason for the write-off. This determines which G/L account the system debits when you post the batch of receipts. You can set up the reason codes in the AAIs. For example, you set up AAI item RAxx (where xx is the 2-character code) to associate the reason codes to the G/L accounts. You might set up:

- BD (Bad debt)
- MW (Minor amount write-off)
- DC (Damage credit adjustment)
- TF (Tax/freight adjustment)

In the processing options, you specify the maximum amount that the system allows for write-offs.

When you enter a receipt with write-off, the system creates two matching documents:

- RC (Receipt)
- RA (Adjustment)
Example: Invoice Match Receipt with Write-Off

In the following example, receipt number 4282 is received in the amount of 40 on July 28, 1998. The associated invoice number is 2045.

On Customer Ledger Inquiry, you can view the documents that the system creates for the write-off.
To enter receipts with write-offs

On Receipts Entry

1. Display the open items for the customer or parent account.
2. Complete the following fields:
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Receipt/Item Amount
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)
3. Type W (write-off) in the following field next to the original invoice:
   - Type Input
4. Complete the following field:
   - Amount Applied
5. Access the detail area.
6. Complete the following field:
   - Reason Code
7. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add
8. Access Customer Ledger Inquiry to view the results.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reason Code</td>
<td>A code that identifies the reason for an adjustment, or a code that prevents an individual invoice from being included on a payment reminder. You define these codes in the AAs so that the system can make the adjusting entries in the general ledger. Typical reason codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RABD – Bad Debt Expense (BD is the Adjustment Reason)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RADC – Damaged Goods Credit (DC is the Adjustment Reason)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RAMW – Minor Amount Write Off (MW is the Adjustment Reason)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RATF – Tax or Freight Dispute (TF is the Adjustment Reason)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Entering Receipt Adjustments

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

When you need to adjust the amount of an invoice or an invoice pay item, enter a receipt adjustment. You might need to adjust an invoice for:

- Bad debts or uncollectible amounts
- Minor amounts that do not warrant a collection effort
- Disputed tax or freight charges
- Reductions to an invoice amount because of damaged goods

When you enter a receipt adjustment, the system creates a single RA (adjustment) matching document for each original document that you adjust. It also adjusts the open amount of the original invoice by:

- Decreasing the amount, if the adjustment amount is positive
- Increasing the amount, if the adjustment amount is negative

### Example: Receipt Adjustment

In the following example, an adjustment of 14.36 is made to invoice 88124 on July 31, 1998.
On Customer Ledger Inquiry, you can view the documents that the system creates for the adjustment.

To enter receipt adjustments

On Receipts Entry

1. Display the open items for the customer or parent account.
2. Complete the following field with the original invoice number:
   - Receipt/Item Number
3. Complete the following field for the amount of the adjustment:
   - Receipt/Item Amount
4. Complete the following fields:
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)
5. Type A (adjustment) in the following field next to the appropriate invoice:
   - Type Input
6. Access the detail area.
7. Complete the following field:
   - Reason Code
8. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

9. Access Customer Ledger Inquiry to view the results.

**Entering “G” Type Receipts**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

You can enter a miscellaneous, or “G” type, receipt for an amount that is not directly related to a customer or invoice. For example, you might receive a refund check from an insurance company that is not associated with an A/R account. This enables you to credit the appropriate general ledger account and include the amount in your bank deposit.

The system creates a record in the A/R Ledger table and uses it to post the receipt. You can view the receipt on Customer Ledger Inquiry by specifying the receipt/item number.

When you enter a G type receipt, the system:

- Removes the customer you specify in the Account Number field (if you enter one)
- Uses the remark you specify as the journal entry explanation

**Example: “G” Type Receipt**

In this example, a rebate is received from ABC Supply Company in the amount of 500. This is associated with receipt number 50152 dated July 27, 1998. The G/L account 90.9160 is credited with this amount.
On Customer Ledger Inquiry, you can view the document that the system creates for the G type receipt.
To enter “G” type receipts

On Receipts Entry

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Company
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Receipt/Item Amount
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)
   - Remark

2. On a blank line, type G in the following field:
   - Type Input

3. Access the detail area.

4. Complete the following fields:
   - G/L Account
   - Remark (optional)

5. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

Exercises
See the exercises for this chapter.
Test Yourself: Working with Other Types of Receipts

1. If you enter a reimbursement for overpayment from Clark Office Supplies, what type of input code do you use?
   a. G
   b. I
   c. A
   d. U

2. What happens to the customer’s account balance when you enter an unapplied receipt?
   a. Nothing. The receipt is applied to a miscellaneous account number.
   b. The customer’s total amount open is reduced by the receipt amount.
   c. The oldest outstanding invoices are matched and paid first.
   d. A chargeback invoice is automatically created for the customer.

3. What type of input code do you use when you create RB (chargeback invoice) and RQ (chargeback amount) documents?
   a. I
   b. C
   c. W
   d. D

4. If you write off a 5.00 amount with a reason code that indicates a bad debt, what document type does the system create?
   a. RA
   b. RW
   c. RC
   d. RO
Test Yourself: Working with Other Types of Receipts (continued)

5. What happens to the customer’s account when you enter a balance forward receipt?
   a. The customer’s total open amount is reduced by the receipt amount.
   b. The oldest outstanding invoices are matched and paid first.
   c. Nothing. The receipt is applied to a miscellaneous account number.
   d. The system automatically creates a chargeback invoice.

6. True or False
   You enter and post an unapplied receipt. The receipt does not affect any specific customer account.

The answers are in Appendix B.
Processing Options

Processing Options for Receipts Entry

DEFAULT PROCESSING:
1. Enter a default Type Input of I, 1 or 2 to automatically allocate the check amount to open invoices. Note: This feature is available when the receipt amount has been entered prior to performing a ledger display.
2. Enter a ’1’ to override the remark on the applied invoice records with the header remark.
3. Enter a ’1’ to automatically assign receipt numbers.
4. Enter the default Payment Status for Chargebacks. Leave blank to use the data dictionary default value.
5. Enter a ’1’ to create chargebacks with the invoice and net due dates of the original invoice. If original invoice information is not entered or the option is blank, these dates will default from the receipt G/L date.
6. Enter a ’1’ to summarize pay items by invoice number and due date when doing a ledger inquiry.

WRITE-OFFS:
7. Enter amounts and reason codes to control limitations of write-offs:
   - Maximum automatic write-off
   - Adjustment reason
   - Maximum automatic CREDIT write-off
   (enter as a negative number)
   - Adjustment reason
   - Maximum manual write-off
   - Maximum manual CREDIT write-off
   (enter as a negative number)

DISCOUNT TAKEN OPTIONS:
8. Enter ’1’ to allow discount taken to be greater than discount available. (Never allowed in summary mode.)
9. Enter a '1' to allow for discounts when performing spreads.

10. Enter a '1' to allow for discounts when performing balance forwards.

11. Enter a '1' to allow discounts greater than applied amount.

OPTIONAL EDITS:
12. Enter a '1' to prohibit spreads.

13. Enter a '1' to prohibit adjustments.

14. Enter a '1' to prohibit the NSF and reverse functions on unposted receipts.

15. Enter a '1' to only allow payment of invoices with a Pay Status of 'A' (approved).

16. Enter a value to select invoice overpayment edit processing:
   ' ' = No Edit
   '1' = Warning
   '2' = Error

FORMAT CONTROL:
17. Select the entry method:
   ' ' = "Heads Up" entry
   '1' = "Heads Down" entry

18. Select the Skip To value:
   ' ' = Skip To using Net Due Date
   '1' = Skip To using Invoice Number

19. Enter a '1' to allow display and update of the following fields:
    Payment Instrument
    Value Date

20. Enter a '1' for 2 cycle data entry.

21. Enter sequence numbers (1-8) to indicate which formats will appear and in what order when using the format selection function key.
    Net Due Date/Gross Amount . . .
    Discount Due Date/Gross Amount .
    Days Until Discount/Gross Amount .
    Invoice Date/Gross Amount . . .
    Net Due Date/Asset Item . . . . .
    Discount Due Date/Asset Item .
    Days Until Discount/Asset Item .
    Invoice Date/Asset Item . . .

FIELD CLEARING CONTROL:
22. Enter a '1' to retain the entered value in each field after acceptance of each transaction:
    Display Acct . . . . . .
    Company . . . . . . . .
    G/L Bank Account . . . .
    Receipt Date . . . . . .
Processing Options

Remark . . . . . . . . . . .
G/L Date . . . . . . . . . .
Value/Cleared Date . . . .
Currency Code . . . . . . .
Exchange Rate . . . . . . .
Mode (F) . . . . . . . . . .
Payment Instrument . . . .
Due Date (drafts) . . . . .
Bank Name (drafts) . . . .

CURRENCY PROCESSING:
23. Enter a ‘1’ to edit the exchange rate Effective Date Period against the G/L Period for the transaction.

JOURNAL ENTRY CREATION:
24. Select G/L Cash Entries Method:
   ‘ ’ = Create summary total J.E.’s
   ‘1’ = Create detail J.E.’s, (one J.E. for each deposit item.)
Note: If G/L Intercompany Settlement constant is set to ‘D’ or ‘2’, or the A/R Offset Method constant is set to ‘Y’, cash entries will always be created in detail.

CURRENT DOMESTIC VALUE PROCESSING:
25. Enter a ‘1’ to process receipts in the Current Domestic Value Method.
   Note: Drafts Processing must be off.

DRAFT PROCESSING:
26. Enter a ‘1’ to process drafts. Leave blank for normal mode.
   Note: Normal cash receipts can not be entered in draft mode. If you do both receipt processing and draft processing, you will need to set up two versions, one in draft mode and one in normal mode.

The following options only apply if draft mode is turned on in option 25.
27. Enter a ‘1’ to process customer generated drafts (BOR or BOC). Leave blank to process supplier generated drafts (LCR or LCC) and validate the draft number entered against the assigned draft number.
28. Enter a ‘1’ to allow entry of the alpha name.
29. Enter the default Payment Instrument for drafts WITH bank account numbers. (LCR or BOR)
30. Enter the default Payment Instrument for drafts WITHOUT bank account numbers. (LCC or BOC)
31. Enter the override Drafts Receivable short account number.
   Note: If an account is not entered,
it will be assigned from the AAIs Drafts Receivable account (RDlx, where x is the Payment Instrument).

EXCHANGE RATE:
32. Enter a '1' to protect the Exchange Rate field. If left blank, the Exchange Rate will not be protected.

What You Should Know About Processing Options

Default input type (1)  This is similar to the Balance Forward method.

Summarized pay items (5)  You can also use a function key to toggle summarized pay items.
Approve and Post Receipts

Approving and Posting Receipts

After you enter receipts, you must update your general ledger. Approving and posting receipts consists of:

- Reviewing and approving receipts for posting
- Posting A/R receipts

Depending on the requirements of your organization, you might not need to approve receipts before posting.

Reviewing and Approving Receipts for Posting

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose Receipts Journal Review

After entering receipts, you can verify their accuracy before posting them to the general ledger. You can:

- Review a list of batches
- Review detail within a batch
- Approve a batch of receipts for posting

All J.D. Edwards journal review programs work in the same way. The one for receipts displays a batch type of R (receipts).

Receipts journal information is maintained in the following tables:

- Batch Control (F0011)
- A/R Ledger (F0311)
- Account Ledger (F0911)

Before You Begin

- Set the A/R constant for management approval of input, if necessary
See Also

- Reviewing and Approving Invoices (P00201)

Posting Receipts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose Post Receipts to G/L

After you review and approve receipts, you must post them to the general ledger. During the post, the system:

- Selects unposted receipts from the A/R Ledger table (F0311)
- Edits and verifies each transaction
- Creates bank deposit records in the Account Ledger table
- Posts accepted transactions to the Account Balances table (F0902)
- Creates automatic offsets to A/R offset accounts in the Account Ledger table
- Marks the transactions as posted in the Account Ledger table (F0911)

All J.D. Edwards Post programs work in the same way. The post program for receipts includes a processing option for batch selection that is set to R (receipts). You should not change this.
See Also

- *Posting Invoices (P09800)* for detailed information about procedures, processing options, and posting reports
Work with Alternate Methods of Application

Working with Alternate Methods of Application

In addition to entering invoice match receipts, balance forward receipts, unapplied receipts, and so on, you can enter receipts using alternate methods of application. For example, you might want to take an unapplied receipt that was previously applied to a customer's account and spread it among a group of outstanding invoices.

Working with alternate methods of application consists of:

- Choosing a group of invoices
- Allocating a receipt automatically
- Spreading a receipt amount
- Transferring an unapplied receipt to a new account
- Processing receipts using the Current Domestic Value method

Regardless of which alternate method you use, receipt information is stored in the A/R Ledger table (F0311).

What You Should Know About

Stop payment notices

When you receive a stop payment notice for a receipt that you already processed, you can handle it in the same way as an NSF or you can re-enter the invoice. You can set up a specific document type to indicate the reopened invoices to automatically debit your A/R account and credit your cash account in the general ledger.

See Reversing NSF Receipts.

Refunds

To issue a refund to a customer for a paid invoice, use Standard Invoice Entry to enter a credit memo. Then use Credit Note Reimbursement to close the receivable and create a payable voucher to process the payment.
Accounts Receivable

Wire transfers
When you enter a wire transfer as a receipt, use the wire date for the receipt/item number on Receipts Entry.

Single receipt to pay multiple accounts
A customer might pay several accounts with a single receipt. Do not display open items for the customer, because several accounts are involved. Instead, access any of the following:

- Customer Ledger Inquiry
- Parent Account Inquiry
- Statement Number Inquiry

Select the appropriate open items and apply the receipt.

Choosing a Group of Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

To apply one receipt to many invoices, you can choose a group of open invoices for a specific customer or multiple customers. When you do this, the system automatically loads them on Receipts Entry. This is especially useful when the list of invoices is extensive.

You can also manually load invoices on Receipts Entry at any time. The system stores them if you return to choose additional items.

To choose a group of invoices

On Receipts Entry

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Display Account
   - Company
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Receipt/Item Amount
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)

   Do not press Enter.

2. Choose the Customer Ledger Inquiry function.
3. On Customer Ledger Inquiry, to limit the information displayed, complete any of the following fields:
   - Invoice Number (From/Thru)
   - Date From
   - Date Thru

4. Type 4 next to each invoice, or press F10 to select all receipts and press Enter.

   The system marks each invoice with an * (asterisk). The number of selected items appears at the bottom of Customer Ledger Inquiry.

5. Return to Receipts Entry.

   The invoices appear in the order in which you selected them. The system loads the default TI code set up in a processing option.

6. To finish applying the receipt, do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add
If you specify new information in the Display Account field and choose one of the following functions before you press Enter or click Add, the system replaces the invoices you selected with those for the new account or statement number without applying the receipt:

- Account Ledger
- Ledger Inquiry
- Parent Inquiry
- Statement Inquiry

**What You Should Know About**

**Selecting a parent/child account**  
You can select a group of invoices for a parent or child account on Receipts Entry. To do so:

- Choose the Account Inquiry function in the Display Account field to display the parent accounts for the customer
- Choose the Parent Inquiry function in the Display Account field to display a list of the customer's child accounts

On the Parent/Child Relationships window, locate the appropriate account and close the window.

**Summarized invoices**  
If you request summarized invoices (* in the Sequence field) on Customer Ledger Inquiry, the system lists and counts each invoice that contains multiple pay items as a single item. Otherwise, the system counts each pay item individually.

**Viewing the status of a receipt**  
As you select items and enter receipts, you can monitor your progress and change the type of input code between selections. This might be useful when you select multiple invoices and want to recognize the discount on some invoices, but not on others.

To view the status of a receipt, choose the Receipts Status function on any of the following forms to access Cash Receipts Status:

- Customer Ledger Inquiry
- Receipts Entry
- Statement Selection

The system updates the information on Cash Receipts Status as you apply amounts to more items and when you change amounts.
Allocating a Receipt Automatically

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

To speed the process of applying a receipt to open invoices, you can allocate a receipt automatically. Based on the net due date that you specify, the system automatically applies the receipt to the appropriate invoices. This method is useful when you have one receipt (for a large amount) that must be applied to several invoices quickly. It is similar to the balance forward method.

The type of input code you set in the processing options determines whether the system applies the receipt to the gross amount or the net amount of each invoice. You can specify one of the following type of input codes:

- 1 (invoice match)
- 1 (net of discount, invoice match)
- 2 (open amount, invoice match)

Based on the type input, the system applies the receipt to the open items with the earliest due dates. If the amount of the receipt is greater than all the open invoices, the system automatically creates an RU (unapplied receipt) document for the remaining amount. At some point, you must spread the unapplied amount to the correct invoices.

To allocate a receipt automatically

On Receipts Entry

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Display Account
   - Company
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Receipt/Item Amount
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose the Account Inquiry function to apply the receipt to the oldest open invoices
   - Choose the Parent Inquiry function to apply the receipt to the oldest open invoices for the parent customer
   - Choose the Statement Inquiry function to apply the receipt to the oldest open invoices for a statement

3. Review the invoices and make any necessary changes.

4. To finish applying the receipt, do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

**Spreading a Receipt Amount**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

When you have an unapplied amount or an unapplied credit memo, eventually you must apply it to a specific invoice or group of invoices. To do so, spread the receipt amount among invoices or between accounts. All amounts that you spread must balance to zero.

You can:

- Spread a credit to a debit
- Spread an amount from one account to another

The system creates one matching RS (spread) document for each item associated with the spread, both debits and credits. Each RS document is tied to the RU document number.

When you spread a receipt amount from one account to another, the system creates an RS document in the new account.
Example: Spreading a Receipt Amount

In the following example, receipt number 9777 is spread from credit (unapplied receipt) to a debit.

On Customer Ledger Inquiry, you can view the documents that the system creates.
In this example, receipt number 627 is spread from account 3003 to account 3005.

On Customer Ledger Inquiry, you can view the documents that the system creates.
To spread a credit to a debit

On Receipts Entry

1. To display the open items for the customer, complete the following fields:
   - Display Account
   - Company
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Receipt/Item Amount
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)

   Do not press Enter.

2. Choose the Display Account Ledger function.

3. Locate the RU or RM document types.

4. Complete the following field using the number of the RU or RM document:
   - Receipt/Item Number

   This creates an audit trail for the original receipt.
5. Complete the following field if you are applying a partial payment, or leave it blank:
   - Receipt/Item Amount

6. Complete the following fields:
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)

7. Type S (spread) in the following field next to the appropriate RU or RM document:
   - Type Input

8. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

9. Access Customer Ledger Inquiry to view the results.

To spread an amount from one account to another

On Receipts Entry

1. To display the open items for the customer, complete the following fields:
   - Display Account
   - Company
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Receipt/Item Amount
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)

   Do not press Enter.

2. Choose the Display Account Ledger function.

3. Locate the RU or RM document types.

4. Complete the following field using the number of the RU or RM document:
   - Receipt/Item Number
5. Complete the following fields:
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)

6. Type S (spread) in the following field next to the appropriate RU or RM document:
   - Type Input

7. On a blank line, complete the following fields:
   - Type Input
   - Amount Applied
     This must be a positive number.
   - Account Number
     This is the address book number of the new account.
   - Invoice Number
     This is the invoice number from the new account.

8. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

9. Access Customer Ledger Inquiry to view the results.

**Transferring an Unapplied Receipt to a New Account**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

In addition to spreading an unapplied receipt, you can transfer the unapplied amount to a new account without matching it to an invoice in the new account.

For example, you might have applied a receipt to an incorrect child account. Instead of voiding and re-entering the receipt, you can transfer the receipt to the correct child account.
To transfer an unapplied receipt to a new account

On Receipts Entry

1. To display the open items for the customer, complete the following fields:
   - Display Account
   - Company
   - Receipt/Item Number
   - Receipt/Item Amount
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)

   Do not press Enter.

2. Choose the Display Account Ledger function.

3. Locate the RU or RM document types.

4. Complete the following field using the number of the RU or RM document:
   - Receipt/Item Number

5. Complete the following fields:
   - Receipt/Item Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)

6. Type I (invoice match) in the following field next to the appropriate document:
   - Type Input

7. On a blank line, complete the following fields:
   - Type Input

   This is U for unapplied.

   - Amount Applied

   This must be a positive number.

   - Account Number

   This is the address book number for the new account.

8. Access the detail area (optional).
9. Complete the following field:
   - Company

10. Do one of the following:
    - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
    - In WorldVision, click Add

11. Access Customer Ledger Inquiry to view the results.

**Processing Receipts Using the Current Domestic Value Method**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

If your domestic currency is highly inflationary, you can establish a current value for your receipts based on a foreign currency that remains constant. You can use the foreign currency as a measurement of the economic value of your transactions.

To process receipts using the Current Domestic Value method, you must do the following:

- Enter your invoices in the foreign currency
- Set a processing option to process receipts using the Current Domestic Value method

When you process receipts using the Current Domestic Value method, the system:

- Converts the domestic invoice amount into its current value using the foreign invoice amount and the current exchange rate
- Creates the appropriate gain or loss record to balance the receipt transaction for the invoice

**Example: Current Domestic Value Method**

Your company sells a product to a customer. Both parties agree to the following:

- Payment will be made in the domestic currency.
- The value of the transaction at the time of payment will be determined using the Current Domestic Value method.
The invoice for the sale reflects an original domestic value of 100. At the time of the sale, the exchange rate between the domestic currency and the foreign currency is 2.0. You calculate the foreign value of the transaction as follows:

\[
100 \text{ (original domestic value) } \times 2.0 \text{ (exchange rate) } = 50 \text{ (foreign currency) }
\]

When payment is due a week later, the domestic currency has devalued. The current change rate between the domestic currency and the foreign currency is now 3.0. You calculate the current domestic value of the transaction as follows:

\[
50 \text{ (foreign currency) } \times 3.0 \text{ (exchange rate) } = 150 \text{ (current domestic value) }
\]

Using the Current Domestic Value method, your company expects to be paid 150 in the domestic currency, which is the current equivalent of 50 in the foreign currency.

**Before You Begin**

- Set the processing options for the Receipts Entry program (P03103) to process receipts using the Current Domestic Value method
- Set the Multi-Currency Conversion field to Y (yes) in the General Accounting Constants
- Set up currency codes for your companies

**What You Should Know About**

**Reviewing receipts with current domestic values**

To review the current domestic value of a receipt, you must access the Receipts Entry form. The system does not display the current domestic values on the Customer Ledger form.

**Processing receipts with discounts**

When you use the Current Domestic Value method, the system converts discounted receipts into their foreign equivalents based on the invoice exchange rate.

When you apply full payment to a discounted receipt, the system displays the discount at its original rate and the amount applied to the receipt as the current domestic value of the open amount on the invoice. Disregard these two numbers.

**Processing drafts receipts**

You cannot process drafts receipts using the Current Domestic Value method.
See Also

- Working with Multi-Currency Invoices (P03105)
- Processing Options for Receipts Entry
- Entering Basic Receipts (P03103)
Revise Receipts

Revising Receipts

After you enter receipts, you might need to revise them. For example, you might have applied a receipt to the wrong customer or invoice. Depending on the posting status, you can delete or void the receipt and apply it to the correct customer or invoice.

Revising receipts consists of:

☐ Voiding a receipt
☐ Creating an NSF receipt

What You Should Know About

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Changing an unposted receipt</th>
<th>Use Receipts Entry to change an unposted receipt. You can change the following information:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Receipt date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Receipt amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Amount applied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Remark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To change any other information, you must delete the receipt and re-enter it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reversing an unposted receipt</th>
<th>Use Receipts Entry to automatically reverse an unposted receipt and restore the open amount of the original invoice or pay item. To do so, locate the receipt. Then, using the Change action, choose the Automatic Reversing Entries function.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When you reverse an unposted receipt, no audit trail exists.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deleting unposted receipts</th>
<th>Use Receipts Entry to delete an unposted receipt. When you delete an unposted receipt, there is no audit trail.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You cannot delete a posted receipt. You must void it and apply it to the correct invoice.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Choosing the appropriate receipt

Use Receipts Entry to locate a receipt number that exists in several batches. You can access a window to view all batches that include a specific receipt number. You can then choose the appropriate receipt.

Voiding a Receipt

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

To automatically reverse a posted receipt and restore the open amount of the invoice, void the receipt. When you void a receipt, the system:

- Creates an RO document for the voided receipt
- Restores the original invoice or pay item
- Changes the pay status of the original invoice from paid to approved

When you post the batch again, the system posts only the new entries and creates reversing entries in the general ledger.

To void a receipt

On Receipts Entry

1. Locate the appropriate receipt.
2. Use the Change action and press F13 to void the receipt.
3. If a field is highlighted with a warning, press F13 again.
4. Access Customer Ledger Inquiry to view the results.
Creating an NSF Receipt

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

When a customer's bank account does not have sufficient funds available to pay the receipt that appears on the deposit statement, you can create an NSF (non-sufficient funds) receipt and re-open the invoice.

When you create an NSF receipt, the system does the following for unposted receipts:

- Reverses (deletes) the receipt without an audit trail
- Restores the open amount of the original invoice

For posted receipts, the system:

- Creates an RV (void) document for the NSF receipt and highlights the original document. When doing customer analysis, this document type helps you distinguish reversals of NSF funds from reversals for such things as entry errors.
- Restores the open amount of the original invoice.
- Changes the pay status of the original invoice from P (paid) to A (approved).
- Creates reversing entries to the general ledger during the post.

You must post the batch again. The system posts only the new entries in the batch.

To create an NSF receipt

On Receipts Entry

1. Locate the receipt.
2. Use the Change action and press F17 to reverse the NSF receipt.
3. If a field is highlighted because of a warning, press F17 again.
4. Access Customer Ledger Inquiry to view the results.

Exercises

See the exercises for this chapter.
Print Receipt Information

Printing Receipt Information

After you enter, review, and post receipts to the general ledger, you can print receipt information for proofing, balancing, and so on.

Printing receipt information consists of:

- Printing the Receipts Journal
- Printing the Receipt Deposit Journal

Printing the Receipts Journal

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing
From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose Receipts Journal Report

As an alternative to reviewing receipts online, you can print the Receipts Journal. Generally, it is easier to view receipts online. However, if there is a balancing problem, the printed journal can be a more workable format for detail review.

The processing time for this report is related to the amount of history retained in the A/R Ledger table (F0311).

You can set up your own version for more specific selection of detail. For example, you can select a specific batch or batches to print, or you can select batches for a specific user.

Before You Begin

- To print tax information on the report, you must change the Maximum Form Width field to 150 on the Printer Overrides form.
What You Should Know About Multi-Currency

The multi-currency version shows the transaction currency and both foreign and domestic amounts.

### Processing Options for Cash Receipts and Adjustments Journal Report

**DETAIL ACCOUNT FORMAT:**
1. Select the account number to print:
   - ‘1’ = account number;
   - ‘2’ = short account ID;
   - ‘3’ = unstructured account;
   - ‘4’ = (default) number entered during input.

**HEADING ACCOUNT FORMAT:**
2. Select the account number to print:
   - ‘1’ = account number;
   - ‘2’ = short account ID;
   - ‘3’ = unstructured account.

**NOTE:** This refers to the G/L Account number in the body of the report, not to the bank account in the header of the report.
Data Sequence for Receipts Journal

The system prints the transactions in the following mandatory sequence:

1. User ID
2. Batch number
3. Batch date
4. G/L account
5. Company
6. Address number
7. Payment/item number

The totals on the report depend on this exact sequence. If you modify the sequence, you must also modify the totaling logic of the program.

Printing the Receipt Deposit Journal

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose Receipt Deposit Journal

To review all payments received and processed as of a specific batch date or range of batch dates, print the Receipt Deposit Journal.

This reports lists information from the A/R Ledger table.

Before You Begin

☐ To include the bank’s address and transit account, set up the necessary information in the Address Book system and on the Bank Account Information form

What You Should Know About

Multi-Currency

The totals per G/L Bank Account will not print if you specify more than one currency. Totals are meaningless if currencies are mixed.
### Account Receivable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Customer Name</th>
<th>Check Number</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Currency Code</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>6543</td>
<td>44,269.20 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>05/12/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>48551</td>
<td>111,031.20 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>06/18/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>95124</td>
<td>89,285.60 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>08/10/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>264597</td>
<td>61,543.80 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>06/15/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>456828</td>
<td>52,020.00 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>10/15/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>845641</td>
<td>146,663.10 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>11/16/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>45961</td>
<td>61,500.00 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>12/20/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>954144</td>
<td>57,000.00 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>01/21/98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>944332</td>
<td>80,884.00 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>02/11/98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>122361</td>
<td>61,848.00 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>03/14/98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>453305</td>
<td>52,500.00 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>04/15/98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>456413</td>
<td>115,491.20 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>05/16/98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>48945</td>
<td>150,927.60 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>06/10/98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>654987</td>
<td>52,020.00 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>10/15/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central Specialty Store</td>
<td>9825</td>
<td>5,000.00 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>05/31/98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Receivables and Payables Netting

Objectives

- To net receivables and payables

About Receivables and Payables Netting

When you do a large volume of business with another organization as both a customer and a supplier, you can net your receivable and payable transactions with that organization. When you net transactions, you calculate the net amount due from or due to another organization. This allows you and the other organization to mutually resolve your open transactions with a single payment.

The decision to net might involve negotiation between you and your customer or supplier about whether to exclude certain transactions. After you determine on which side the liability exists, you either net for receipts or net for payments. The following differences exist between these two situations:

- When you net for receipts, your customer owes you more than you owe your customer. Your customer remits a payment to you for the net amount. You use your customer’s payment stub to match the receivable and payable transactions item by item.

- When you net for payments, you owe your supplier more than your supplier owes you. You select the specific transactions to net, then remit a payment for the net amount.

Receivables and payables netting consists of:

- Netting receivables and payables
- Printing netting reports

When you do a lesser volume of business with another organization as both a customer and a supplier, you can use the Credit Note Reimbursement program to reclassify a credit memo or unapplied cash in the Accounts Receivable system to an open voucher in the Accounts Payable system.

See Also

- Working with Credit Note Reimbursements (P03610)
Net Receivables and Payables

Netting Receivables and Payables

You net for receipts when your customer owes you more than you owe your customer. Your customer remits a payment to you for the net amount. You use your customer's payment stub to match the receivable and payable transactions item by item.

Netting for receipts consists of:

- Netting for receipts at receipts entry
- Netting for receipts in stand-alone mode
- Posting netted transactions for receipts

When you select transactions to net, the system does the following:

- Creates a netting matching document (document type NM) in the A/P ledger to close the voucher
- Changes the pay status of the original vouchers to P (paid)
- Creates a netting original document (document type NO) in the A/R ledger to offset the closed vouchers
- Creates a journal entry for the netting original document in the general ledger

These original and matching documents provide an audit trail.

The netting programs create records in the following tables:

- A/P Ledger (F0411)
- A/R Ledger (F0311)
- Account Ledger (F0911)

See Also

- Netting Payables and Receivables (P03455) in the Accounts Payable Guide for information about netting for payments
Example: Netting for Receipts

In the following example, you bill a customer for 1,500.00. You prepare an invoice for 1,500.00.

That customer, who is also your supplier, bills you for 1,000.00. You enter a voucher for this amount.

**Step 1**

You have an invoice for 1,500.00 and a voucher for 1,000.00.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Journal Entry</th>
<th>Accounts Payable</th>
<th>Accounts Receivable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PV 001</td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
<td>1,500.00 RI 101</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2**

The customer sends you a payment. You want to apply this receipt to close both the invoice and the voucher. To do this, you must first net for receipts. The system creates a netting matching (NM) document that offsets the existing voucher.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Journal Entry</th>
<th>Accounts Payable</th>
<th>Accounts Receivable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PV 001</td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
<td>1,500.00 RI 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV 001 NM 005</td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 3**

The system also creates a netting original (NO) document to offset the voucher against the invoice.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Journal Entry</th>
<th>Accounts Payable</th>
<th>Accounts Receivable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PV 001</td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
<td>1,500.00 RI 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV 001 NM 005</td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
<td>1,000.00 NO 005</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The net amount due from your customer is 500.00, which matches the amount of the customer's payment to you.

### Journal Entry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accounts Payable</th>
<th>Accounts Receivable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PV 001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV 001 NM 005</td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1,500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RI 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NO 005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RI 101 RC 201</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 4

You enter the payment for 500.00 as a cash receipt, which is the net difference between the last two entries generated by the system, as indicated below.

### Journal Entry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accounts Payable</th>
<th>Accounts Receivable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PV 001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV 001 NM 005</td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1,500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RI 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NO 005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1,500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RI 101 RC 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NO 005 RC 201</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Netting for Receipts at Receipts Entry

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose a receipts entry method

You can net receipts and payments when you enter cash receipts. Typically, you use this method when a customer sends you a payment for receipts and payables that the customer has already netted. You use the customer's payment stub to enter and net receipts. You can apply the receipt to your customer or to its parent.
Before You Begin

☐ On Address Book – Additional Information, set the AR/AP Netting flag to Y (Yes) for each of the customers and suppliers that you plan to net. See Entering Customers.

☐ Set the processing options for Receipts Entry to select a version of the netting program. See Processing Options for Receipts Entry.

☐ Set up the AAI for the netting suspense account (NC). See About AAI's for A/R.

▶ To net for receipts at receipts entry

On Receipts Entry

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Display Account
   - Company
   - Currency Code (optional)
   - Deposit Date (G/L)
2. Do one of the following:
   - To net transactions at the customer level, choose the Netting by Address Number function.
   - To net transactions at the customer’s parent level, choose the Netting by Parent Number function.

3. On AP/AR Netting, choose the Select option for each transaction you want to net.

4. To perform what if calculations, choose the What-If function.

5. To net the transactions you selected, press Enter.

   The system exits to Receipts Entry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display Acct</td>
<td>The address book number that identifies the customer associated with the transaction.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

          ................ Form-specific information .................

To call the netting program, the AR/AP Netting field (AT2) for this customer must be set to Y (Yes) on Address Book—Additional Information.
## Field

### Currency Code

A code that indicates the currency of a customer’s or a supplier’s transactions.

---

**Form-specific information**

The Currency Code field in the header is for the currency code of the transactions you want displayed. The Curr field in the fold area displays the original currency code of the transaction.

- If you leave this field blank, the system loads the currency code for the customer from the Address Book system. If the customer's Address Book record is blank, the currency code is supplied from the company used in the transaction.
- If you enter a specific currency code, the system displays only invoices with that currency. Combining a specific currency with D or F in the Currency Mode field displays the domestic or foreign side of currency invoices.
- To display the domestic side of invoices that have different foreign currencies, enter * in the Currency Code field and D in the Mode field. All invoices will be displayed in the company’s currency code.

You can only net transactions that have the same currency.

### Deposit Date (G/L)

A date that identifies the financial period to which the transaction is to post. The company constants table for general accounting specifies the date range for each financial period. You can have up to 14 periods. Generally, period 14 is for audit adjustments.

## What You Should Know About

### Applying discounts

Netting has no effect on the way in which the system applies discounts. The system applies discounts to vouchers and invoices but not to netting original or netting matching documents.

See *Entering Invoices with Discounts*. 
**Limiting your selections**  
You can limit the display of invoices and vouchers available for netting on AP/AR Netting. To do this, choose the Customer Ledger Inquiry or Supplier Ledger Inquiry function. Follow the steps for locating invoices or vouchers, then select invoices or vouchers. When you exit the ledger inquiry form, the system loads your selections on AP/AR Netting.

*See Working with Customer Ledger Information.*

**Voiding netted receipts**  
To void a cash receipt that includes netted transactions, follow the procedures for reversing a cash receipt. The system recognizes the existence of netted documents and gives you the option to also void netted transactions.

If you do not void netted transactions, the system deletes the cash receipt, but leaves the netting original document open and unapplied.

If you void unposted netted transactions, the system does the following:

- Deletes the netting original document
- Deletes the netting matching document
- Reopens the original voucher

If you void posted netted transactions, the system does the following:

- Creates a matching document (document type RE) in the A/R ledger to offset the netting original document
- Creates a matching document (document type PO) in the A/P ledger to reopen the voucher

You cannot delete the invoices associated with a receipt that includes netted transactions.

*See Revising Receipts.*

**See Also**

- *Entering Basic Receipts (P03103)*

**Processing Options for AP/AR Netting**

NETTING PROCESS OPTIONS:

1. Enter a ’1’ to perform A/R Netting when called from a stand-alone menu.  
   If left blank, A/P Netting will be called from a stand alone menu.

2. Enter a ’1’ for Inquiry mode only.
If left blank, the program will be called in update mode.

3. Enter a ‘1’ to override the address book authority and allow Netting. If left blank, the address book value will be used.

4. Enter a valid Pay Status code to override all A/P netted transaction records. This override is ignored when netting Manual Checks.

5. Enter a valid Payment Instrument code to override all netted transaction records. (A/P use only).

6. Enter a value to default into the Alternate Payee in A/P ledger for Payments:
   “” = Vendor Number
   “1” = Fifth Address from Address Book

AUTOMATIC POSTING:
7. Enter a ‘1’ to enable the automatic posting of netted batches on exit of program. If left blank, the user will be responsible for the postings.

VOUCHER ENTRY MODE:
8. Enter ‘1’ to allow changes in Voucher Entry. If left blank, Voucher Entry will be restricted to Inquiry mode.

INVOICE ENTRY MODE:
9. Enter ‘1’ to allow changes in Invoice Entry. If left blank, Invoice Entry will be restricted to Inquiry mode.

PROTECT INPUT FIELDS:
10. Enter a ‘1’ to protect the following fields from updates.
    Pay Status  
    Payment Instrument  
    Due Date  
    G/L Bank Account  
    Header G/L Date  
    (Today’s Date will default)

GENERAL LEDGER OFFSET:
11. Enter an override G/L offset for the Trade A/P account. If left blank, the G/L Class from the Vendor Master File will be used.

12. Enter an override G/L offset for the A/R account. If left blank, the G/L Class from the Customer Master File will be used.

REMARK IN A/P & A/R LEDGER:

VALIDATION OF TRANSACTIONS:
14. Enter a ‘1’ to limit A/P to Vouchers that have been Redistributed ONLY.

15. Enter a ‘1’ to restrict A/P & A/R Netting to Posted transactions ONLY.

DEFAULT POSTING VERSIONS FOR AUTO POST:
16. Enter a Version of the post program for the Receipts Entry Batch. If left blank ZJDE0005 will default.

17. Enter a Version of the post program for the Voucher Entry Batch. If left blank ZJDE0003 will default.

18. Enter a Version of the post program for the Manual Payments Batch. If left blank ZJDE0004 will default.

19. Enter a Version of the post program for the Invoice Entry Batch. If left blank ZJDE0002 will default.

Netting for Receipts in Stand-Alone Mode

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose A/R Stand-Alone Netting

You can net receipts and payments in stand-alone mode. Typically, you use this method to net receipts and payments when you and your customer and supplier agree to net receipts and payments but you have not yet received the customer's payment.

Before You Begin

☐ On Address Book – Additional Information, set the AR/AP Netting flag to Y (Yes) for each of the customers and suppliers that you plan to net. See Entering Customers.

☐ Set up the AAI for the netting suspense account (NC). See About AAs for A/R.
To net for receipts in stand-alone mode

On A/R Stand-Alone Netting

1. To locate transactions, complete the following fields and press Enter:
   - Company
   - Customer/Supplier Number
   - Currency Code (optional)
   - G/L Date
2. For each transaction you want to net, choose the Select option.
3. To perform what if calculations, choose the What-If Recalculations function.
4. To net the transactions you selected, use the Change action.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Company</td>
<td>A code that identifies a specific organization, fund, entity, and so on. This code must already exist in the Company Constants table (F0010). It must identify a reporting entity that has a complete balance sheet. At this level, you can have intercompany transactions. NOTE: You can use company 00000 for default values, such as dates and automatic accounting instructions (AAIs). You cannot use it for transaction entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Due Date</td>
<td>Date the net payment is due (accounts receivable). In accounts payable, this is the discount due date. If you leave this field blank in invoice entry or voucher entry, the system computes the due date using the invoice date and the payment terms code. If you leave the payment terms field blank, the system computes payment terms using the payment terms code from the Customer Master Information file (F0301) or Supplier Master Information table (F0401) for that customer or supplier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cust/Vendor</td>
<td>A number that identifies an entry in the Address Book system. Use this number to identify employees, applicants, participants, customers, suppliers, tenants, and any other Address Book members.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G/L Date</td>
<td>A date that identifies the financial period to which the transaction is to post. The company constants table for general accounting specifies the date range for each financial period. You can have up to 14 periods. Generally, period 14 is for audit adjustments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curr Code</td>
<td>A code that indicates the currency of a customer’s or a supplier’s transactions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What You Should Know About**

**Limiting your selections**  
You can limit the display of invoices and vouchers available for netting on AP/AR Netting. To do this, choose the Customer Ledger Inquiry or Supplier Ledger Inquiry function. Follow the steps for locating invoices or vouchers, then select invoices or vouchers. When you exit the ledger inquiry form, the system loads your selections on AP/AR Netting.

*See Working with Customer Ledger Information.*

**Displaying a full A/R form**  
Choose the Full A/R function to display A/R records only.

**Toggling form format**  
Choose the Toggle Formats function to toggle the format of the form.
Posting Netted Transactions for Receipts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Manual Receipts Processing

From Manual Receipts Processing (G0312), choose A/R Netting Post

When the system creates netting matching (NM) and netting original (NO) documents, it places them in separate batches. A processing option for AP/AR Netting allows you to post these batches automatically. You can also post these batches manually.

Processing Options for A/R Netting Post

1. Enter a '1' if this post is for A/R Netting. If left blank, A/P Netting will be assumed. ____________

A/P NETTING :

2. Enter the Receipts Entry Batch Number ____________

3. Enter the Voucher Entry Batch Number ____________

A/R NETTING :

4. Enter the Payments Batch Number ____________

5. Enter the Invoice Batch Number ____________

Default Posting Versions :

6. Enter a Version of the post program for the Receipts Entry Batch. If left blank ZJDE0005 will default. ____________

7. Enter a Version of the post program for the Voucher Entry Batch. If left blank ZJDE0003 will default. ____________

8. Enter a Version of the post program for the Manual Payments Batch. If left blank ZJDE0004 will default. ____________

Default Posting Versions (cont)

9. Enter a Version of the post program for the Invoice Entry Batch. If left blank ZJDE0002 will default. ____________
Print Netting Reports

Printing Netting Reports

When you do business with another organization as both a customer and a supplier, you can print netting reports that show whether your company owes or is owed money.

These reports do not make adjustments to the account ledgers. The reports only list unusual conditions, such as:

- The A/R balance is a credit.
- The A/P balance is a debit.
- The customer or supplier has both A/R and A/P balances.

You can use this information to net the receivable and payable balances for eligible organizations.

Printing netting reports consists of the following tasks:

- Printing the Receivables and Payables Netting report
- Creating the A/R and A/P Netting Workfile table
- Printing the Netting – Aging report

See Also

- *Netting Receivables and Payables (P03455)*
Printing the Receivables and Payables Netting Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports
From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Receivables/Payables Netting

You print the Receivables and Payables Netting report when you want the system to calculate the potential offsets between open A/R balances and open A/P balances. This report is a version of the Open A/R Detail report.

This report lists information from the A/R Ledger and A/P Ledger (F0411) tables.

When you print this report, the system does the following:

1. Totals the open A/R and open A/P balances for each account.
2. Compares the two sums.
3. Calculates the potential offsets.

   For example, an account with an open A/R balance of 50,000 and an open A/P balance of 30,000 has a potential A/R offset of 20,000. If the opposite is true, the accounts has a potential A/P offset.

4. Calculates the net amount of the two offset fields and lists the grand total in the appropriate column.

Before You Begin

- Verify that the Address Number Join File table (F03450) exists in your library. Unlike other reports, the Receivables and Payables Netting report does not create the table if it does not exist.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Phone Number</th>
<th>Open A/R</th>
<th>Open A/P</th>
<th>A/R</th>
<th>A/P</th>
<th>Potential Offsets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1001</td>
<td>Edwards, J.D. &amp; Company</td>
<td>844–8000</td>
<td>15,470.10</td>
<td>675.00</td>
<td>14,795.10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1001</td>
<td>Edwards, J.D. &amp; Company</td>
<td>844–8000</td>
<td>880.00</td>
<td>2,200.00</td>
<td>62,335.64</td>
<td>12,571.65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1003</td>
<td>Central Specialty Store</td>
<td>629-3003</td>
<td>5,000.00-</td>
<td></td>
<td>5,000.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3005</td>
<td>Centralized Apparel</td>
<td>629-3400</td>
<td>6,000.00</td>
<td>12,250.00</td>
<td>6,250.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3965</td>
<td>DeAnna's Dell</td>
<td>794-7877</td>
<td>3,725.00-</td>
<td></td>
<td>3,725.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4175</td>
<td>Abernathy &amp; Hitch</td>
<td>234-1887</td>
<td>4,391.17</td>
<td>4,000.00</td>
<td>391.17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5733</td>
<td>Newark Office Supply</td>
<td>456-8521</td>
<td>3,005.00</td>
<td>1,320.00</td>
<td>1,320.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6630</td>
<td>Eddie Bean Outlet Store</td>
<td>670-3000</td>
<td>10,000.00-</td>
<td></td>
<td>10,000.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6736</td>
<td>Tattered Books</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>1,320.00</td>
<td>1,320.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6795</td>
<td>Bonjour Baking Company</td>
<td>697-1919</td>
<td>10,577.07</td>
<td>3,645.00</td>
<td>6,932.07</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7001</td>
<td>JDE Europe</td>
<td>2-647.08.00</td>
<td>778,529</td>
<td>405,639</td>
<td>372,836</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7002</td>
<td>JDE France</td>
<td>4090 08 07</td>
<td>6,096</td>
<td>5,500,412</td>
<td>5,494,316</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7005</td>
<td>De Vydt S.A./N.V.</td>
<td>3-687.01.00</td>
<td>3,086.93</td>
<td>2,067.34</td>
<td>2,067.34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7501</td>
<td>Colombian Coffee Company</td>
<td>12136587</td>
<td>10,602,108</td>
<td>500,506</td>
<td>10,101,602</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Data Selection for Receivables and Payables Netting Report**

Each data selection field should be equal to *ALL* so that the report includes all data and gives a complete picture of potential netting.

**Data Sequence for Receivables and Payables Netting Report**

This report is sequenced by address number and company. You should not change this sequence.
Creating the A/R and A/P Netting Report Workfile Table

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports

From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Build Netting Report File

Before you can print the Netting – Aging Report, you must create the workfile it uses. When you do this, the system rebuilds the A/R and A/P Netting Workfile table (F03465) based on current information in the A/R Ledger and A/P Ledger tables.

Before You Begin

- Verify that the A/R and A/P Netting Workfile table (F03465) exists in your library. Unlike other programs, the program that builds the netting report workfile does not create the table if it does not exist.

Processing Options for Build Netting Report Workfile

A/R BUILD OPTION:
1. Enter the DREAM Writer version ____________ for the Netting Workfile build for Accounts Receivable (DREAM Writer form P034651). If left blank, a default of ZJDE0001 will be used.

A/P BUILD OPTION:
2. Enter the DREAM Writer version ____________ for the Netting Workfile build for Accounts Payable (DREAM Writer form P034652). If left blank, a default of ZJDE0001 will be used.

Data Selection for Build Netting Report Workfile

By default, the system includes only open invoices and vouchers in the A/R and A/P Netting Workfile table. You can use data selection to limit the size of the table. For example, you can select records based on a company and a fiscal period.

You can change the data selection as follows:

- For both A/R and A/P, by changing the data selection for Build Netting Report Workfile (P03465)
- For A/R, by changing the data selection for A/R Netting File Refresh (P034651)
- For A/P, by changing the data selection for A/P Netting File Refresh (P034652)
**Printing the Netting - Aging Report**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports

From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Netting - Aging Report

You print the Netting – Aging report when you want the system to age balances. This report lists transactions by customer and supplier aged by currency type.

By selecting different versions of this report, you can review detailed or summary information. You can also review multi-currency or domestic currency only versions of the report.

This report lists information from the A/R and A/P Netting Workfile table (F03465).

When you print this report, the system:

1. Totals the open A/R and open A/P details for each account.
2. Ages the balances for each account as determined by the processing options.

**Before You Begin**

- Create the A/R and A/P Netting Report Workfile table. See *Creating the A/R and A/P Netting Report Workfile Table*.

**Data Selection for the Netting - Aging Report**

You can use data selection to limit the detail on the report. For example, you can include any fields in the Address Book (F0101), as well as many of the fields shared by the A/R Ledger and A/P Ledger tables.

**Data Sequence for the Netting - Aging Report**

This report is sequenced by company and address number. You may add to this sequence, but you should not change it.
Automatic Receipts Processing

Objectives

- To load receipts from bank tapes (lock-box processing)
- To enter batch receipts
- To process batch receipts
- To review and change unprocessed items

About Automatic Receipts Processing

To decrease the amount of time it takes to enter receipts manually, you can use a bank tape, an optical reader, or a magnetic scanner to automatically enter batch receipts. Additionally, you can use speed receipts entry to quickly apply high-volume, simple receipts at the same time.

Automatic receipts processing consists of:

- Loading bank tapes
- Working with speed receipts
- Entering batch receipts
- Processing batch receipts
- Working with unprocessed items

What Is the Purpose of Batch Receipts?

The purpose of entering and processing batch receipts is to automatically apply many receipts to open receivables at the same time.

When you enter batch receipts, the system stores them in a temporary worktable. These receipts remain in this worktable until you process them. When you process batch receipts, the system automatically applies the receipts in the worktable to the appropriate invoices in the A/R ledger.
The following graphic illustrates automatic receipts processing.

1. Load your custom bank tape (lock box)
2. Enter batch receipts (manual or scanned)
3. Process batch receipts
4. Did receipts process correctly?
   - YES: Print bank deposit journal
   - NO: Rework unprocessed items
Load Bank Tapes

Loading Bank Tapes

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Automatic Receipts Processing

From Automatic Receipts Processing (G0313), choose <Load Bank Tape – Custom

If you receive payments directly from a customer's bank on custom bank tapes (lock box), you must load the information from the bank tape to the Accounts Receivable system to apply them to the customer's account.

When you load a bank tape, the system:

- Reads the tape from the bank
- Creates a Bank Tape Worktable (F03551) to store the information from the tape
- Converts the information in the worktable to the Batch A/R Cash Application table (F0312)

The following graphic illustrates how the system processes bank tape information.
After the system converts the information in the worktable to the Batch A/R Cash Application table, it applies the receipts to the appropriate customer accounts in the A/R Ledger table (F0311). The system stores those items that it cannot process in the Batch A/R Cash Application Worktable until you rework and process them. Then it applies the reworked items to the A/R Ledger table.

Before You Begin

☐ Set the appropriate processing options for the version you want to run. You must access the processing options from the menu before you choose the Load Bank Tape – Custom program. Once you choose this program from the menu, you cannot change the processing options.

☐ Ensure that the bank tape program is customized based on the information provided by your bank.

☐ Activate Auto Cash on accounts receivable constants.

☐ Ensure that the following information is set up in the customer master record for each customer eligible for bank tape processing:

- A bank transit account number, as well as an account number
- An auto receipt value
- An auto cash algorithm

► To load the bank tape

1. Choose the Load Bank Tape – Custom program from the menu.
2. Respond to the warning message.
3. Install the bank tape on a tape drive, if you have not already done so.
4. Respond to the prompts that the system displays.

What You Should Know About

Releasing the lock on the system

If you press exit at the Load the tape prompt, the system locks up. To release the lock, choose 4 in the Option field and press Enter.

See Also

- Entering Batch Receipts (P03121) for information about using an alternate method of entering receipts into the Accounts Receivable system.
**Processing Options for Load Your Custom Bank Tape**

**TAPE DEVICE AND LIBRARY:**
1. Enter the tape device name.  
   (Default is TAP01)

2. Enter the Data File Library to be used for the load of the F03551 file.  
   (Default is *LIBL)

**JOURNAL ENTRY CREATION:**
3. Enter ‘1’ to create a single Journal Entry for each deposit item. Leave blank to create a summarized Journal Entry that includes all deposit items.

**What You Should Know About Processing Options**

Journal entry creation
(3)

Do not enter detail and summary records in the same batch. Instead, create a separate batch for each type of record. The mode (detail or summary) in which you enter transactions from the bank tape affects later processing.

When you process batch receipts, you must use the corresponding version (detail or summary) to process the batch. For example, if you enter receipts from the tape in summary mode, you must later process them in summary mode. If you enter them in summary mode and then try to run the detail version when processing batch receipts for the same receipts, the system cannot process them.

**Data Selection for Load Your Custom Bank Tape**

The versions for Process Batch Receipts include the correct data selections. Do not change this information.
Work with Speed Receipts

Working with Speed Receipts

As an alternative to the complex method of entering manual receipts, you can use a speed method to quickly enter high-volume, simple receipts. For example, you might have several receipts that you need to apply directly to invoices. The speed receipts entry method enables you to reduce the number of keystrokes associated with each transaction, which decreases the amount of data entry time.

Working with speed receipts consists of:

- Setting up header information
- Selecting open items for application (optional)
- Applying receipts to invoices
- Applying receipts to statements
- Entering unapplied receipts
- Entering chargebacks

When you work with speed receipts, you can:

- Enter each receipt directly.
- Select open items for a customer. Based on the information you specify, the system automatically loads the open items for application.

Because Speed Receipts Entry is designed for efficiency, you can only enter the following types of receipts:

- Receipts that are directly associated with an invoice or a group of invoices
- Receipts that are directly associated with a statement number
- Unapplied receipts
- Chargebacks
Unlike manual receipts, speed receipts are stored in the Batch A/R Cash Application table (F0312). They remain in this temporary worktable until you process them. When you process them, the system updates the records in the A/R Ledger table (F0311).

The following shows some of the advantages and disadvantages of the speed receipts entry method.

**Advantages**
- You can focus on specific types of high-volume receipts.
- You can concentrate on the source document instead of the keyboard, which reduces entry time.
- You can set up default information for common fields to apply to all detail lines of a receipt.
- You can avoid overwriting information on the top of the form when you complete your last detail line. The system automatically rolls up to a new page of detail lines.
- You can use one hand on the numeric keyboard for data entry.
- You can toggle between setup mode and entry mode without losing any previously entered information.
- You can correct or modify a receipt before you commit it to the Batch A/R Cash Application table.
- You can suspend the entry of a partial batch and continue it at a later time.
- You can postpone the validation of transactions until you process the batch.
- You can cross-reference chargebacks by specifying an alphanumeric value as the chargeback reference.

**Disadvantages**
- You cannot enter all types of receipts.
- You cannot change or modify a receipt on the Speed Receipts Entry form once you commit it. You must use the Batch Receipts Entry form to do so.
- You cannot immediately view the results of receipts entry on the Customer Ledger Inquiry form.
- You must process speed receipts before updating the A/R Ledger table.
What You Should Know About

Using the Enter function versus the Commit function

When entering speed receipts, you use two primary functions:

- Enter
- Commit

When you choose the Enter function, the system:

- Copies the default header information into the detail of the receipt.
- Calculates the amount remaining on the receipt.
- Redisplays information for review. This lets you modify the information you set up without updating the Batch A/R Cash Application table.

When you choose the Commit function, the system updates the Batch A/R Cash Application table. If you need to make further changes, you must use the Batch Receipts Entry form.
### Using the Setup function versus the Entry function

Choose the Setup/Entry function to toggle between the setup and entry modes. You can toggle between either input mode at any time without losing previously entered information. In setup mode, you can override any field that is protected in entry mode.

When you first access the Speed Receipts Entry form, you are automatically in setup mode. In this mode, you can enter header information and default column values.

In entry mode, the system:

- Restricts the entry of header fields and default column fields
- Protects the columns that you designate as unused
- Limits entry to the receipt detail

### Suspending a partial batch

You might need to suspend a batch that is partially complete and then continue adding transactions to it later. To do this, commit the transactions entered so far and exit the batch with an amount remaining.

### Entering receipts to an existing batch

You can re-enter an existing batch at any time to enter additional receipts. To do this, specify the batch number on a blank Speed Receipts Entry form. The system displays:

- The previously committed transactions
- The total amount you expect to enter for the batch
- The total amount remaining on the receipt

### Revising a receipt

Once you commit a transaction, you cannot change or delete it on the Speed Receipts Entry form. To do so, you must use the Batch Receipts Entry form.
Setting Up Header Information

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Automatic Receipts Processing.

From Automatic Receipts Processing (G0313), choose Speed Receipts Entry.

To simplify entering receipts, you can set up default header information for a receipt. For example, you can specify the G/L bank account to debit when you post the receipt.

When you set up header information, you can:

- Enter default values that apply to all detail lines of a receipt
- Enter a default value in any column header field that is blank to avoid entering identical information in each associated detail line
- Designate a column header field as unused during entry

Setting up header information is the first task in the speed receipts entry process. After you do this, you enter the detail for the receipt.

Example: Header Information

The following example shows the default information that the system needs to apply receipts to company 100 and debit bank account 100.1110.BEAR with a G/L date of 6/30/98.
To set up header information

On Speed Receipts Entry

1. To specify default values, complete any of the following optional fields:
   - G/L Bank Account
   - G/L Date
   - Amount Expected
   - Company
   - Currency Code
   - Exchange Rate

2. To specify default column values, complete the blank fields above the corresponding columns.

3. To designate a column as unused, specify a slash (/) in the blank field above the appropriate column.

Selecting Open Items for Application

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Automatic Receipts Processing

From Automatic Receipts Processing (G0313), choose Speed Receipts Entry

As an alternative to entering receipt information directly, you can select open items in a customer's account and automatically load them in the detail lines. You can specify the criteria that the system uses to load the open items. For example, you might want to specify a range of invoices with a specific invoice date.

Selecting open items for payment is an optional task in the speed receipts entry process. You can select open items before or after setting up the necessary header information for a receipt.

Before You Begin

☐ The following task assumes that you have specified the receipt number and receipt date as column overrides when setting up header information.
To select open items for application

On Speed Receipts Entry

1. Set up the necessary header information (optional).
2. Choose the Select Documents function.

3. On Document Selection Window, complete one of the following fields:
   - Address Number
   - Parent Number

4. To limit the information displayed, complete any of the following fields:
   - Document Number/Through
   - Due Date/Through
   - Invoice Date/Through
   - Company
   - Currency
   - Reference
What You Should Know About

**Skip to Due Date field**  Unlike most Skip to fields in the Accounts Receivable system, the Skip to field on Speed Receipts Entry acts as a Skip-to Document field or Skip to Due Date field, depending on the selection criteria you specify. If you select a range of documents, the documents appear in order of the document number. If you select a date range, the documents appear by due date. If you specify both or neither a document or due date, the documents appear in the order you set in a processing option.

When you specify a skip to due date, the system summarizes the information displayed. This minimizes the time it takes to access and display the selected documents.

**Removing unwanted items**  You can use the Compress Display function to remove unwanted items in the detail of a receipt. The system:

- Removes all items that you do not mark with a 1
- Consolidates the marked items to the top of the detail information

You can then select additional open items to be loaded on Speed Receipts Entry following the marked items. You can use this function as many times as necessary prior to committing the transactions to the Batch A/R Cash Application table.

**Reviewing the detail of a document**  To review the detail of a document, such as the document type or the discount available, choose the Customer Ledger Detail Information option next to the appropriate document.

If the transaction is summarized, you cannot review the detail.
Applying Receipts to Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Automatic Receipts Processing
From Automatic Receipts Processing (G0313), choose Speed Receipts Entry

When you receive a payment from a customer, regardless of the amount, you can quickly apply the receipt directly to an invoice or a group of invoices. Applying receipts to open invoices is the most common method of receipt entry.

Example: Invoice Match Receipt

The following example shows receipt number 6275, which was received for the amount of the invoice (1,765). It is being applied to invoice 1998 for Couriers International (customer 3333).

Before You Begin

☐ The following task assumes that you have specified the receipt number and receipt date as column overrides when setting up header information.
To apply receipts to invoices

On Speed Receipts Entry

1. Set up the necessary header information.
2. Select the necessary open items for application (optional).
3. Toggle to entry mode.
4. Specify 1 (invoice match) in the following field:
   - Option
5. To override default information, complete the following fields for each document that matches an invoice:
   - Document Number
   - Remitted Amount
6. To update the detail lines, press Enter.
7. Choose the Commit function to update the Batch A/R Cash Application table.

What You Should Know About

Applying receipts to invoices with discounts

You can enter an invoice match receipt with a discount amount. To do so:

- Set the appropriate processing options when you process batch receipts to allow discounts and determine the cut-off date.
- Enter the net amount of the receipt in the Remitted Amount field on Speed Receipts Entry. If you do not, the system creates an unapplied receipt for the remaining amount after taking the discount.
Applying Receipts to Statements

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Automatic Receipts Processing.

From Automatic Receipts Processing (G0313), choose Speed Receipts Entry.

In addition to applying receipts to invoices, you can apply a receipt to a statement number.

When you apply a receipt to a statement, the system applies the amount of the receipt to the oldest open invoice or group of invoices on the statement. This is similar to entering balance forward receipts.

Example: Statement Match Receipt

The following example shows a receipt for 1,000 applied to statement number 8.

Before You Begin

☐ The following task assumes that you have specified the receipt number and receipt date as column overrides when setting up header information.
To apply receipts to statements

On Speed Receipts Entry

1. Set up the necessary header information.
2. Select the necessary open items for application (optional).
3. Toggle to entry mode.
4. On a blank line, specify 2 (statement match) in the following field:
   - Option
5. Specify the statement number in the following field:
   - Document Number
6. Complete the following field:
   - Remitted Amount
7. To update the detail lines, press Enter.
8. Choose the Commit function to update the Batch A/R Cash Application table.

Entering Unapplied Receipts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Automatic Receipts Processing

From Automatic Receipts Processing (G0313), choose Speed Receipts Entry

You can apply a receipt to a customer's account balance instead of matching it to a specific invoice or group of invoices. To do this, enter an unapplied receipt. For example, you might not know which invoices to match a receipt to during entry. This method enables you to enter the amount of the receipt into the system immediately and match it to invoices at a later time.

If you do not specify a document number, the system handles it like an unapplied receipt.

The following example shows a receipt for 5250 from Couriers International (Customer 3333). In this example, the invoice number to apply the receipt against is unknown.
Example: Unapplied Receipt

Before You Begin

☐ The following task assumes that you have specified the receipt number and receipt date as column overrides when setting up header information.

▶ To enter unapplied receipts

On Speed Receipts Entry

1. Set up the necessary header information.
2. Toggle to entry mode.
3. On a blank line, specify 1 or 2 in the following field:
   - Option
4. Complete the following fields:
   - Remitted Amount
   - Address Number
5. To update the detail lines, press Enter.
6. Choose Commit to update the Batch A/R Cash Application table.
What You Should Know About

Matching an invoice to an unapplied receipt
You can match an invoice to an unapplied receipt. First, apply the receipt to the appropriate invoices. Then, enter a negative invoice match receipt to the unapplied receipt. Use a different receipt number for the transaction. The amount remaining is zero.

Entering Chargebacks

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Automatic Receipts Processing
From Automatic Receipts Processing (G0313), choose Speed Receipts Entry

Depending on whether you are entering a chargeback for an open invoice or an amount not associated with an invoice, you can:

- Enter a receipt with a chargeback
- Enter a stand-alone chargeback

The following describes the two types of chargebacks and how the system handles them.

Receipt with a chargeback
When applying a receipt to an invoice, you can enter a chargeback for an amount left open on the invoice. For example, you might want to charge back an incorrect or expired discount amount. You must identify a customer reference number to indicate that the document is a chargeback.

When you enter a receipt with a chargeback, the system:

- Matches the receipt to the appropriate invoice or group of invoices (a stand-alone chargeback)
- Closes the original document
- Creates a chargeback for the remaining amount of the document
- Stores the information you specify as the chargeback reference on the chargeback for later use
Stand-alone chargeback  You can enter a stand-alone chargeback for an amount that is not associated with a specific invoice. For example, you might enter a stand-alone chargeback for an amount that was previously written off and should not have been, or when you do not know the number of the original invoice.

When you enter a stand-alone chargeback, the system:

- Creates a chargeback invoice for the amount you specify as the remitted amount. You must specify a negative amount.
- Stores the information you specify as the chargeback reference on the chargeback for later use.

Example: Receipt with a Chargeback

The following example shows a receipt for 900. The invoice amount was 957.25. When the receipt is processed and updated, the system will create a chargeback for the difference, 57.25. In the Chargeback Reference field, the receipt number is entered for future reference.
**Example: Stand-Alone Chargeback**

The following example shows a chargeback that is not associated with an invoice. In this example, the invoice has been paid so no invoice exists to which you can attach the chargeback.

![Image of Chargeback Entry]

**Before You Begin**

- The following tasks assume that you have specified the receipt number and receipt date as column overrides when setting up header information.

**To enter a receipt with a chargeback**

On Speed Receipts Entry

1. Set up the necessary header information.
2. Select the necessary open items for application (optional).
3. Toggle to entry mode.
4. On a blank line, specify 1 or 2 in the following field:
   - Option
5. To indicate this is a chargeback, complete the following fields:
   - Chargeback Reference
   - Reason Code (optional)
6. To override default information, complete the following fields:
   - Document Number
   - Remitted Amount
7. To update the detail lines, press Enter.
8. Choose the Commit function to update the Batch A/R Cash Application table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chargeback Reference</td>
<td>An alphanumeric value used as a cross-reference or secondary reference number. Typically, this is the customer number, supplier number, or job number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The customer reference might be, for example, a stock number or cross-reference number to another system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What You Should Know About

**Invoice match chargebacks**

The system stores the original invoice information on the chargeback record if you enter that information when you create the chargeback.

To enter a stand-alone chargeback

On Speed Receipts Entry

1. Set up the necessary header information.
2. Select the necessary open items for application (optional).
3. Toggle to entry mode.
4. On a blank line, specify 1 or 2 in the following field:
   - Option
5. To indicate this is a chargeback, complete the following fields:
   - Chargeback Reference
   - Reason Code (optional)
   - Address Number
6. Specify a negative amount in the following field:
   - Remitted Amount
7. To update the detail lines, press Enter.
8. Choose the Commit function to update the Batch A/R Cash Application table.

What You Should Know About

Applying a receipt using the chargeback reference

To quickly apply a receipt to a chargeback, specify one of the following in the Option field and a number in the Chargeback Reference field:

- . (period)
- , (comma)

The system matches the receipt to the chargeback based on the chargeback reference you specify when creating the chargeback.
Processing Options for Speed Receipts Application

PRE-LOADED HEADER VALUES:
1. Any values entered into the following options will be loaded into the fields upon entry into the program:
   - G/L Bank Account.
   - Default Company.
   - Selection Option.
   - Reason Code.

EDITING OPTIONS:
2. Enter a '1' to defer validation of values until the batch is processed. Leave blank to validate transactions when Enter is pressed.

LEDGER LOAD OPTIONS:
3. Enter a '1' to display only approved items.
4. Enter a '1' to summarize pay items by document (when in document sequence) or due date and document (when in due date sequence). Leave blank to display each pay item separately.
5. Enter a '1' to sequence ledger by document number. Leave blank to sequence by due date. (If a due date is specified in the selection window, it will always sequence by due date.)

JOURNAL ENTRY CREATION
6. Enter '1' to create journal entries in detail (one entry per deposit item). Leave blank to create summary journal entries.

EXCHANGE RATE:
7. Enter '1' to protect the Exchange Rate field. If left blank, the Exchange Rate will not be protected.
Enter Batch Receipts

Entering Batch Receipts

If you do not use bank tapes to load receipts from your customers into the Accounts Receivable system, you can enter receipts by using one of the following alternate methods:

- Entering scanned receipts
- Entering manual receipts

As you enter receipts, the system removes them from the entry lines to the detail portion of the Batch Entry form. Batch receipts information is stored in the Batch A/R Cash Application table (F0312) until you process the receipts.

Before You Begin

- Specify in the processing options whether you will scan receipts or enter them manually. This determines the type of information that the system displays.

What You Should Know About

- **Changing scanned receipts**
  To change scanned receipts, choose Work next to the appropriate receipt. Change the necessary information and re-scan the check.

- **Deleting scanned receipts**
  To delete a receipt from the batch, choose the Delete option next to the appropriate receipt.

- **Exiting the batch**
  If you exit the batch with an amount remaining that is not equal to zero, the system displays a warning message. This warning does not prevent you from exiting the batch.

- **Multi-Currency**
  If you do not specify a currency code, the system uses the domestic currency of the company.
Entering Scanned Receipts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Automatic Receipts Processing

From Automatic Receipts Processing (G0313), choose Batch Receipts Entry

To speed the entry of receipts, you can use an optical reader or a magnetic scanning device to enter batch receipts. You scan the information on the bottom edge of the customer’s payment to automatically enter the bank transit number and bank account number. If your bank has encoded the payment, the batch number is automatically entered when you scan the receipt.

Depending on how you set the processing options, you can scan the receipt and:

- Manually enter the amount and the date.
- Manually enter only the date. The scanner enters the amount of the payment.

The Batch Receipts Entry form is designed for a magnetic ink character reader (MICR).

To enter scanned receipts with manual amount and date

On Batch Receipts Entry
Complete the following fields:

- G/L Date
- Deposit Amount Expected
- Amount
- Receipt Date

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Deposit Amt Expected   | On batch header forms, this is the total amount that you expect to enter for the batch. This amount must be entered without decimals. For journal entries in the general ledger, this amount is the total of the debits. In other systems, it is the total amount of all documents in the batch. The system keeps track of the amount you enter and displays the difference, if any, when you finish the batch. When you review batches of transactions, this is the difference between the input total and what you actually entered. Example:  
  - Input Total – 10052  
  - Total Entered – 10000  
  - Total Remaining – 52  
  
  If you are using batch control but you did not enter an input total, this amount appears as a negative number when you review batches.  
  
  NOTE: Depending on how your system uses batch review, this field might not apply to batches created by your particular system. |
| Amount                 | The amount of the receipt/payment or item to be applied to the open balance of an invoice or voucher pay item.  
  
  You can apply amounts for partial payments. The total amount applied must equal the payment amount. |

**To enter scanned receipts with manual date only**

On Batch Receipts Entry

Complete the following fields:

- G/L Date
- Deposit Amount Expected
- Receipt Date

The scanner enters the encoded receipt amount and MICR information.
**Entering Manual Receipts**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Automatic Receipts Processing.

From Automatic Receipts Processing (G0313), choose Batch Receipts Entry.

In addition to using a magnetic scanner or an optical reader to enter batch receipts, you can enter them manually.

> **To enter manual receipts**

On Batch Receipts Entry

1. Complete one of the following fields:
   - Document
   - Address Number

   If you do not know the address (customer) number, you can specify a bank transit number and bank account number to retrieve the appropriate customer number.

2. Complete the following fields:
   - G/L Date
   - Deposit Amount Expected
   - Receipt Number
- Receipt Amount
- Receipt Date
- Company

3. Override the default information (optional).
4. Do one of the following and then press Enter:
   - Specify a document number if the TI code is I (invoice matching)
   - Specify a statement number if the TI code is T (statement)
5. To exit the batch, press F3.

**What You Should Know About**

**Changing manual batch receipts** You can change a manual batch receipt before or after you close the batch. To change a receipt, choose the Work option next to the appropriate receipt. Make the necessary changes and exit the batch again.
Processing Options for Batch Receipts Entry

DEFAULT PROCESSING:
1. Enter the default Cash Receipt Type of Input Code to be used.
   I = Invoice
   B = Balance Forward
   U = Unapplied Cash

INPUT OPTIONS:
2. Enter ‘1’ if data is to be input through the use of an optical reader.
3. Enter ‘1’ if the receipt amount is to be keyed in rather than scanned.
   (use only if option 2 is ‘1’)

G/L ENTRIES:
4. Enter ‘1’ to create G/L entries in detail (one entry for each deposit item). If left blank, G/L entries will be created in summary.

FIELD CLEARING CONTROL:
5. Enter a ‘1’ to retain the entered value in each field after acceptance of each transaction:
   Receipt Number . . .
   Receipt Date . . .
   Type Input Code . .
   Customer Number .
   Company .
   Bank Transit Number .
   Customer Bank Account .
   Remark .
   Statement Number .
   Purchase Order .
   Purchase Order Type .
   Currency Code .
   Exchange Rate .
   Mode (F) .
   Document Company .
   Reference .

EXCHANGE RATE:
6. Enter a ‘1’ to protect the Exchange Rate field. If left blank, the Exchange Rate will not be protected.
What You Should Know About Processing Options

Field clearing control

Do not enter detail and summary records in the same batch. Instead, create a separate batch for each type of record. The mode (detail or summary) in which you enter transactions from the bank tape affects later processing.

When you process batch receipts, you must use the corresponding version (detail or summary) to process the batch. For example, if you enter receipts from the tape in summary mode, you must later process them in summary mode. If you enter them in summary mode and then try to run the detail version when processing batch receipts for the same receipts, the system cannot process them.

Data Selection

The versions for Process Batch Receipts include the correct data selections. Do not change this information.

Exercises

See the exercises for this chapter.
Process Batch Receipts

Processing Batch Receipts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Automatic Receipts Processing

From Automatic Receipts Processing (G0313), choose Process Batch Receipts

After you enter batch receipts, you must process them to update the A/R ledger. To do so, run the Process Batch Receipts program.

When you run Process Batch Receipts, the system:

- Creates the appropriate matching document for each receipt applied
- Updates the original document with the resulting matching document created during receipt application

You can choose from the following modes to process your batch receipts:

**Detail mode**

This version creates a single journal entry for each pay item on the invoice.

**Summary mode**

This version creates a single journal entry for all pay items associated with an invoice.

When you process batch receipts, the system does the following in sequential order:

- The system searches for the TI code you assigned during entry (whether manually or from the bank tape). If you did not specify a TI code for the receipt, the system uses the default code you specified in the processing options for Batch Receipts Entry.
- If no default TI code exists, the system searches the Customer Master table (F0301) for the auto cash algorithm defined for the customer.
- If no algorithm exists for the customer, the system searches for it in the Company Constants table (F0010).
- If no algorithm exists in the company constants, the system searches for it in the processing options for Process Batch Receipts.
## Accounts Receivable

- If the system cannot find the algorithm anywhere, it either:
  - Generates an error and prints it on an Exceptions Report indicating that it is unable to apply the receipt
  - Forces an unapplied receipt if you set the appropriate processing option

The system creates an R batch type in the A/R Ledger table (F0311) for the items that are successfully processed. Unprocessed items remain in the Batch A/R Cash Application table (F0312) until you correct or rework them.

### Before You Begin

- Do not change the data selection or data sequence

### What You Should Know About

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Processing receipts in summary mode</th>
<th>If you enter receipts in summary mode, you must process them in summary mode. The system cannot process them in detail mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Posting batch receipts</td>
<td>After you process batch receipts, you must post them to the general ledger.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Processing Options for Process Batch Receipts

**DEFAULT PROCESSING:**

1. Enter ‘1’ to force an Unapplied Cash application if Invoice Match fails.

2. Enter the default G/L date to use if the Receipt G/L date is blank. (Lock-Box Transactions Only.)

3. Enter a ’1’ to process all discounts. If left blank, the cut-off date entered below will be used.

4. Enter the cut-off date for discounts. If left blank, the current date will be used.

5. Enter a ’1’ to reduce the discount taken when the applied amount is more than the discounted amount. If the applied amount is more than the gross amount, no discount will be taken.

6. Enter the SHORT account id of the default G/L Bank Account to use when the Receipt Bank Account is left blank. Leave blank to use the AAI Bank Account as the default Bank.
7. Enter a miscellaneous address number to use when the Receipt address is left blank. Leave blank to force rework of miscellaneous receipts.

8. Enter the default company number to use when the Receipt company number is left blank. (Lock-Box Transactions Only)

9. Enter the default Auto Cash algorithm to use if the Receipt transaction type is left blank and both the Customer Master and Company Constants default algorithms are blank.

INVOICE MATCH ALGORITHMS:
10. Enter the order in which invoice matching algorithms should be used. Leave blank to ignore an algorithm.
    Match on single pay item
    Match on all pay items
    Match on contiguous pay items
    Apply to pay items in order
    Match on any combination of items

NOTE: These algorithms will not be used if the Pay Item is specified on the receipt.

OVERRIDE OPTIONS:
11. Enter ‘1’ to override company number using the company number of the matching invoice. This will overlay both the default company number and the company number of the receipt record.

12. Enter ‘1’ to override the G/L Bank Account using the AAI Bank Account for the Receipt company. This will override both the default Bank Account and any Bank Account entered in the Receipt record.

AUTOMATIC WRITE-OFF OPTIONS:
13. Enter the maximum amount for automatic write-offs. Leave blank to prohibit automatic write-offs.

14. Enter the adjustment Reason Code to use for automatic write-offs.

15. Enter the maximum amount for CREDIT write-offs. Leave blank to prohibit automatic credit write-offs.

16. Enter the adjustment Reason Code to use for automatic credit write-offs.

ADDITIONAL UPDATE OPTIONS:
17. Enter ‘1’ to automatically update
the Bank Transit Number file.

OPTIONAL EDITS:
18. Enter a ‘1’ to only allow payment of invoices with a pay status of ‘A’ (approved).

Exercises
See the exercises for this chapter.
Work with Unprocessed Items

Working with Unprocessed Items

When processing batch receipts, there might be items that the system cannot process. For example, you might have designated a receipt to be applied to an invoice, but there is no associated invoice number in the A/R ledger. You must revise unprocessed items to update the A/R Ledger table (F0311).

Working with unprocessed items consists of:

- Reviewing unprocessed items
- Changing unprocessed items
- Reviewing batch receipts activity

Reviewing Unprocessed Items

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Automatic Receipts Processing

From Automatic Receipts Processing (G0313), choose Rework Unprocessed Items

You can review two levels of information when working with unprocessed items. You can:

- Review a list of unprocessed batches
- Review detail within a batch
To review a list of unprocessed batches

When you review unprocessed items that might need to be updated, you can display a list of batches based on your user ID, a batch number, a date range, and so on.

On Rework Unprocessed Items

Display all batches for all users, or complete any of the following fields to limit the information displayed:

- User ID
- Batch Number
- Batch Date From
- Batch Date Thru
To review detail within a batch

In addition to reviewing a list of unprocessed batches, you can review transaction detail within a specific batch of receipts. For example, you might want to review the number of unprocessed receipts within a batch and the total gross amount of the batch.

On Rework Unprocessed Items

1. Display the appropriate list of batches.
2. Choose the Detailed Batch Review option next to the appropriate batch to access Unprocessed Item Review.
Changing Unprocessed Items

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Automatic Receipts Processing.

From Automatic Receipts Processing (G0313), choose Rework Unprocessed Items.

You can change or “rework” various information on an unprocessed item. For example, you might want to change a G/L date or a bank account number that was entered incorrectly in the Batch A/R Cash Application table (F0312).

When you change an unprocessed item, it no longer appears on Unprocessed Item Review.

To change an unprocessed item

On Rework Unprocessed Items

1. Display the appropriate list of batches.
2. Choose the Detailed Batch Review option next to the appropriate batch to access Unprocessed Item Review.
3. On Unprocessed Item Review, choose the Work Unprocessed Items option next to the appropriate receipt number to access Cash Receipts Entry.
4. On Cash Receipts Entry, make the necessary changes to the unprocessed item.
You cannot change the following information:

- Receipt/Item Number
- Receipt/Item Amount

**What You Should Know About**

**Reviewing open items**  You can review open items and choose the invoice or pay item to apply the receipt to. To do so, review the type of input code that the system displays and change it if necessary.

If no open items exist to apply the receipt to, the system automatically creates an RU (unapplied receipt) document.

**Reworking unprocessed items automatically**  You can also rework unprocessed items automatically. To do so, correct the error at the batch level and run one of the rework versions of the Process Batch Receipts program.

For example, you might want to rework a batch of unprocessed items if a processing option was incorrectly set for the Process Batch Receipts program. After you correct the appropriate processing option, the system corrects the entire batch when you process batch receipts again.

**Reviewing Batch Receipts Activity**

**From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Automatic Receipts Processing**

**From Automatic Receipts Processing (G0313), choose Batch Receipts Activity Register**

To review your batch receipts activity, run the Batch Receipts Activity Register program.

You can run two versions of the Batch Receipts Activity Register report:

- Bank Deposit Journal
- Receipt Application Activity Report

The difference between the two versions is the data selection. Do not change the data sequence on either version.
To review a list of all unprocessed items in the Batch A/R Cash Application table (F0312), run the Bank Deposit Journal version. This lists the items that are not approved for posting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Customer Name</th>
<th>Check Number</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Currency Code</th>
<th>G/L Account</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4245</td>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>6543</td>
<td>44,269.20</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>05/12/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4245</td>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>6546</td>
<td>111,031.20</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>06/18/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4245</td>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>95124</td>
<td>69,285.60</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>08/10/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4245</td>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>264914</td>
<td>82,510.20</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>09/24/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4245</td>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>456828</td>
<td>52,020.00</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>10/15/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4245</td>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>94561</td>
<td>61,500.00</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>12/20/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4245</td>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>954144</td>
<td>57,000.00</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>01/21/98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4245</td>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>946632</td>
<td>80,884.00</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>02/11/98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4245</td>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>122561</td>
<td>61,848.00</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>03/14/98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4245</td>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>653265</td>
<td>52,000.00</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>04/15/98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4245</td>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>456413</td>
<td>115,891.20</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>05/16/98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4245</td>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>48945</td>
<td>150,627.60</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>06/10/98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4245</td>
<td>Cloud Nine Health Supply</td>
<td>654987</td>
<td>52,020.00</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>10/15/97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3003</td>
<td>Central Specialty Store</td>
<td>5825</td>
<td>5,000.00</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>05/31/98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Receipt Application Activity Report

To review all processed items in the following tables, run the Receipt Application Activity version:

- Batch A/R Cash Application
- A/R Ledger

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Receipt/Item Num</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Currency</th>
<th>Customer</th>
<th>Discount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9205</td>
<td>03/19/98</td>
<td>74,092.80</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>Edwards &amp; Edwards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment/Item Num</td>
<td></td>
<td>74,092.80</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>Total Applied</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercises

See the exercises for this chapter.
Test Yourself: Working with Batch Receipts

1. Match the following tables to their table names:

   ___ A/R Ledger

   ___ Batch A/R Cash Application

   a. F0311

   b. F0315

   c. F0312

2. When you enter receipts using the lock-box method or batch receipts entry, the system initially stores them in the ______ table.

3. To transfer receipts information from the Batch A/R Cash Application table to the A/R Ledger table, you must:

   a. Scan the information into the system

   b. Enter the information using Receipts Entry - Heads Up or Heads Down

   c. Post the receipts to the general ledger

   d. Run the Process Batch Receipts program

The answers are in Appendix B.
Credit and Collections Management

Objectives

- To set up information for credit and collection management
- To update A/R information for credit and collection management
- To determine the average number of days a customer is late in paying invoices
- To locate summarized information about the status of an account
- To review and work customer accounts for credit management
- To create credit reporting tapes
- To review and work past-due accounts for collection management
- To print credit and collections reports

About Credit and Collections Management

Effective management of credit and collections information is fundamental to an Accounts Receivable department. The J.D. Edwards Accounts Receivable system offers a variety of features to help manage your receivables. You can set up and define information to meet the specific needs of your business.

Credit and collections management consists of:

- Setting up credit and collection information
- Updating A/R information for customer analysis
- Determining average days late
- Reviewing account status information
- Managing credit information
- Creating credit reporting tapes
- Managing collections information
- Printing credit and collections reports
The following lists the various ways to effectively manage your credit and collections information.

**Credit information**
When managing credit information, you can access a variety customer information from a centralized online location. For example, you can:

- Review a summary of an account’s credit status and identify customers who are over their credit limit
- Change and update credit limits and credit review dates
- Analyze a customer’s payment trends and transaction history
- Create a future tickler message or reminder
- Enter and review notes about a customer

You can also:

- Create daily lists of customers who require credit attention
- Review a complete history of open and closed items by a specific credit manager, sales location, or account representative
- Access and review current aging information for a customer
- Create magnetic tapes of A/R information about customers to send to credit agencies

**Collections information**
When managing collections information, you can:

- Analyze your customer accounts and implement collection decisions quickly by accessing various A/R information from one centralized online location
- Monitor and work your customer accounts that are past due or have tickler messages scheduled for review
- Display customized lists of customers so that you can review and document collection issues and commitments
- Print payment reminders or delinquency notices for past-due accounts
- Determine if you want a customer to appear on a collection report
- Review online payment reminder and collection information
Set Up Credit and Collection Information

Setting Up Credit and Collection Information

Before you can manage credit and collection activity on a customer's account, you must set up various types of credit and collection information. This task consists of:

- Defining finance charges
- Defining a credit limit
- Defining collection information
- Setting up category codes for A/R
- Setting up credit messages for A/R

Defining Finance Charges

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer and Invoice Entry

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Customer Master Information

As part of your collection activities, you might want to assess finance charges on overdue invoices. To do so, you must define the percentage that the system uses to calculate finance charges.
To define finance charges

On Customer Master Information

Complete the following fields:

- Monthly Finance Charge Percentage
- Apply Finance Charges

See Also

- Entering Customers (P01053)
Defining a Credit Limit

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer and Invoice Entry

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Customer Master Information

If you give a customer the option of purchasing goods or services “on account,” you might want to define a credit limit. To do so, specify an amount in the customer master record.

► To define a credit limit

On Customer Master Information

Complete the following fields:

- Credit Manager (optional)
- Last Credit Review Date
- Credit Limit

See Also

- Entering Customers (P01053)
Defining Collection Information

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer and Invoice Entry

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Customer Master Information

Before you can send a customer a reminder about an overdue invoice or include a customer on a collection report, you must define collection information in the customer master record.

To define collection information

On Customer Master Information

Complete the following fields:

- Collection Manager (optional)
- Number of Reminders
- Collection Report

See Also

- Entering Customers (P01053)
- Setting Up Text for Payment Reminders (P03280)
Setting Up Category Codes for A/R

From Address Book (G01), enter 29

From Address Book Setup (G0141), choose Address Book Category Codes

Before you can review credit information for a customer, you must set up category codes 1 and 2 in the Address Book system. This enables you to define specific groups for online review and reporting purposes. For example, you might want to set up groups for:

- All customers for a branch office (category code 1)
- All customers associated with a specific account representative (category code 2)

To set up category codes for A/R

1. Access the appropriate list of address book category codes.

2. Follow the steps to set up a user defined code.

See Also

- About Category Codes (P00051) in the Address Book Guide
- Setting Up User Defined Codes for A/R (P00051)
Setting Up Credit Messages for A/R

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Valid Credit Messages

Before you assign a credit message to a customer, such as Over credit limit, you must set up the message. The message appears when you locate a customer, an invoice associated with that customer, and so on.

▶ To set up credit messages for A/R

On Valid Credit Messages

Follow the steps to set up a user defined code.

See Also

- Setting Up User Defined Codes for A/R (P00051)
Update A/R Information for Customer Analysis

Updating A/R Information for Customer Analysis

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management
From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Credit Analysis

Refresh

To effectively analyze and manage account activity for a customer, you should update the customer’s A/R information. To do so, run Credit Analysis Refresh at the beginning or end of each business day. This ensures that the credit and collections information for the customer is current.

After you run Credit Analysis Refresh, you can determine which customers:

- Are over their credit limit
- Are due for a credit review
- Have overdue balances on their account
- Are due for a collection review

When you run Credit Analysis Refresh, the system gathers information from the following tables and then updates the A/R Cash Management worktable (F0315):

- A/R Ledger (F0311)
- Customer Master (F0301)
- Electronic Mail (F0113)

If you update parent information and do not run Credit Analysis Refresh, you might have customers who are associated with two or more parent records. This can result in duplicate records for the same customer.

The Credit Analysis program also updates the credit messages on Customer Master Information.
The following graphic illustrates the types of information that the system updates in the A/R Cash Management worktable.

- Past due invoices
- Parent accounts over credit limit or past credit review data
- Tickler messages
- Address Book (Customer Master) (F0101)
- Message Log Ledger (F0113)
- A/R Ledger (F0311)
- A/R Cash Management Worktable (F0315)
Example: Updating Credit Messages

The following example shows a customer record before and after it is updated by the Credit Analysis Refresh program.

Before

On Customer Master Information, both the credit message and temporary credit message information is blank for customer 3333.
Accounts Receivable

After

Notice that the temporary credit message code is now set to 7, On Credit Hold per Accounting. Customer 3333 has an invoice that is past due within the 91-to-120-day aging category. The permanent credit message remains unchanged.

Before You Begin

☐ Run the Update A/R from Address Book program to ensure that the A/R Ledger table contains current information.

Processing Options for Credit Analysis Refresh

AGING:
1. Enter a ‘1’ to retrieve the aging specifications from A/R Company Constants. (Default of blank will use the processing options for aging.)
   NOTE: If selected, all other aging processing options will be ignored.

AGING “AS OF” DATE:
2. Enter the “as of” Date to age open balances. (If left blank, the current date is used as the default.)
   Note: If Company Constants aging is requested, this date will only update the Credit Management “As of” date data area (AR0315), and will NOT be used for aging.

AGING (Cont’d):
3. Specify one of the following dates to
Update A/R Information for Customer Analysis

age accounts from:
D = Due Date
I = Invoice Date
G = General Ledger Date
S = Statement Date
(If left blank, "D" is the default.)

4. Specify one of the following methods for aging calculations:
   1 = Aging Days
   2 = Fiscal Periods
   3 = Calendar
(If left blank, "1" is the default.)
AGING (Cont’d):
5. Enter the following aging category information:
   Aging days: Beginning thru thru thru thru thru thru thru

TEMPORARY CREDIT MESSAGES:
6. If using Temporary Credit Messages, enter the aging category at which an open amount is considered late and should be flagged with the Temporary Credit Message entered below. Leaving this option BLANK means that nothing is considered late enough to flag the account with a Temporary Credit Message, and all accounts will have the Temporary Credit Message reset to be the same as the Credit Message, (unless the reset function is bypassed using option 8, below.)

7. Enter the Temporary Credit Message.

8. Enter a '1' to bypass the function that resets the Temporary Credit Message to be the same as the Credit Message. BLANK means that the Temporary Credit Message will be changed to be the same as the Credit Message if the open amount is no longer overdue or if blank was entered in option 6 above. The temporary credit message is automatically reset to the permanent message if the open amount is no longer overdue.

DRAFT PROCESSING:
9. Indicate which drafts to include in the outstanding draft calculation:
   ' ' = Do not include drafts (Default)
   '1' = Include ALL unpaid drafts
   '2' = Include only drafts not due
What You Should Know About Processing Options

Temporary credit message – aging category (6)

When you enter the past due period, it causes the temporary credit code on the customer master to override the permanent credit code. Aging categories include:

- 1 (0 – 30 days)
- 2 (31 – 60 days)
- 3 (61 – 90 days)
- 4 (91 – 120 days)

Temporary credit message (7)

The temporary credit message overrides the permanent credit message on the Customer Master Information form as long as the customer has past due amounts in the aging category specified in processing option 6. An example of a temporary credit message is On Credit Hold per Accounting. These are user defined codes (00/CM).

Data Selection and Sequence

Do not change the data selection and sequence for this program. You can run the DEMO version to include customers with zero balances in the worktable.

Exercises

See the exercises for this chapter.
Determine Average Days Late

Determining Average Days Late

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Recalculate Average Days Late

As part of your credit and collections activities, you might want to know the average number of days it takes a customer to pay an invoice. To do so, you must run Recalculate Average Days Late.

Recalculate Average Days Late calculates the average number of days a customer is late in paying an invoice based on the information in the A/R ledger. When you process invoices and receive payments from customers, the system stores this information in the A/R Ledger table (F0311).

The system stores the calculated information in the Customer Master table (F0301). You can view the results on Account Status Summary and on Customer Payment History.

Example: Average Days Late Calculation

The system calculates the number of average days late for each customer as follows:

- Averages the difference between the due date of an invoice and the corresponding payment date
- Includes a “weighted days to pay,” which means that it considers the amount of the invoice as well as how late the payment is

Weighting Calculation

The system uses the following formula for the weighting calculation:

Payment date – Due date = Days past due

Days past due x Payment amount = Weighted days to pay

Weighted days / Total of all payments = Average days late
The following example shows how the system calculates the total of the receipts and weighted days to determine the average days late for the customer.

In addition to the weighting information, the example uses the following:

- Invoice number
- Invoice amount
- Receipt number

**Receipt Information**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Invoice Number</th>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Invoice Amount</th>
<th>Receipt Number</th>
<th>Receipt Date</th>
<th>Receipt Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RI 6101</td>
<td>7/15/98</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>7/25/98</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI 6805</td>
<td>7/31/98</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>875</td>
<td>8/31/98</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI 7231</td>
<td>8/01/98</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>623</td>
<td>8/15/98</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total receipts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total Weighted Days Calculation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Invoice Number</th>
<th>Days Past Due</th>
<th>x Receipt Amount</th>
<th>=</th>
<th>Weighted Days</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RI 6101</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI 6805</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>250</td>
<td></td>
<td>7500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI 7231</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total weighted days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13,200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total weighted days divided by total payments equals average days late

13,200 total weighted days / 800 total payments = 16.5 average days late

**Before You Begin**

- Run the Process Batch Receipts program if you are using Lockbox Processing
What You Should Know About

**Average days late calculation**

The following types of receipts are not included in the calculation for average days late:

- Unapplied receipts
- Adjustments that have not been spread
- Write-offs

If you spread unapplied receipts to specific invoices, they are included in the calculation. When you recalculate the average days late for a customer, the system uses the RS records to go back to the original RC unapplied receipt record and uses the correct payment date for the calculation.

Data Selection for Recalculate Average Days Late

The open amount ensures that the system only selects invoices with amounts not equal (NE) to the gross amount of the invoice. That is, when the system calculates the average days late, it includes only those invoices that are paid or partially paid.

You can set the Invoice Date field to *ALL* to calculate the average days late based on inception-to-date account detail, or you can specify an “as of” date.
Review Account Status Information

Reviewing Account Status Information

You can review summarized or detailed information about an account, such as the total open amount or dates of the first and last invoice.

Reviewing account status information consists of:

- Reviewing aged “as of” information
- Reviewing real-time information

Before You Begin

- Run the Credit Analysis Refresh program to update account information

What You Should Know About

**Reviewing account information by parent**

When reviewing account information by parent account, the system does not display information in the following fields:

- Invoiced This Year
- Invoiced Prior Year

The system updates these fields at the customer level when you run the A/R Annual close process.
Multi-Currency

If a customer uses multiple currencies, the system associates decimals with amounts by:

- Specific units (ledger type BU, AU, and so on). This is determined by the data display decimals in the data dictionary.
- Individual transaction amounts that represent the foreign currency. This is determined by the currency of the transaction (ledger type CA or Mode F).
- Summary amounts that represent the foreign currency of the last currency code associated with a particular total.
- Individual transaction amounts or summary amounts that represent the domestic currency of the company.

The currency code or company you specify on Account Status Summary determines the decimals for aging and open amounts (real-time only).

The amount currency you define in the customer record determines how the system uses decimals for the following amounts:

- Invoiced this year
- Invoiced prior year
- Last paid amount
Reviewing Aged “As of” Information

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer and Invoice Entry

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Account Status Summary

You can review the status of an account as of the last time you ran the Credit Analysis Refresh program. The system displays aging information on Account Status Summary according to the processing options you set for Credit Analysis Refresh.

“As of” aging information is stored in the A/R Cash Management worktable (F0315) and the Customer Master table (F0301).

To review aged “as of” information

On Account Status Summary

1. Complete one of the following fields:
   - Parent Number
   - Customer Number
2. Complete the following optional field:
   - Company
Reviewing Real-Time Information

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer and Invoice Entry

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Account Status Summary

You can view the status of an account as of a specific date. For example, if you enter today’s date, the information is current as of today.

The real-time information that displays on Account Status Summary is stored in the A/R Ledger (F0311) and Customer Master tables. Because the A/R Ledger table contains more records than the A/R Cash Management worktable, the system might take longer to display information.

To review real-time information

On Account Status Summary

1. Complete one of the following fields:
   - Parent Number
   - Customer Number

2. Complete the following optional field:
   - Company

3. Choose the Mode function to toggle to real-time mode.
4. Change the following optional field:
   - As of Date

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>As of Date</td>
<td>The cutoff date for information you want to display on a form or print on a report.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Processing Options for Account Status Summary**

**PRINT OPTIONS:**

1. Specify one of the following print formats:
   - `' ' = Standard 132 character format. (Default)
   - `'1' = Standard 132 character format with parent number.
   - `'2' = Long 198 character format.
   - `'3' = Long 198 character format with parent number.
   - `'4' = Long 198 character format with foreign currency aging.

**AGING SPECIFICATIONS:**

2. Enter a `'1'` to retrieve the aging specifications from Accounts Receivable Constants. Default of blank will use the processing options for aging.
   NOTE: If selected, all other aging processing options will be ignored.

   **"AS OF" DATE:**

3. Enter the "As Of" date to age open balances. If left blank, the current date is used as the default.

   **ACCOUNT AGING DATE:**

4. Specify one of the following dates to age accounts from:
   - D = Due Date
   - I = Invoice Date
   - G = General Ledger Date
   - S = Statement Date
   (If blank, "D" is default)

   **AGING CALCULATIONS:**

5. Specify one of the following methods for aging calculations:
   - 1 = Aging Days (Default)
   - 2 = Fiscal Periods
   - 3 = Calendar

   **AGING CATEGORY INFORMATION:**

6. Enter the following aging category information: (for method 1 only)
   Aging Days: Beginning thru thru
CREDIT PROCESSING:
7. Specify one of the following for aging credits:
   ' ' = Apply Credits to Current Column
   '1' = Age Credits
   '2' = Apply Credits to oldest active Aging Column

“AS OF” DATE PROCESSING:
8. Enter a ‘1’ to use the “As Of” date process. (Note: DREAM Writer Based on File must be F0311A)

PROMISES, PROMISES INFORMATION:
9. Specify one of the following to print Promises, Promises:
   '1' = print 'P' message type
   '2' = print 'P' and 'F' messages
   '3' = print all message types
   If left blank, no Promises, Promises will be printed.

“FROM” TICKLER DATE:
10. Enter the “From” Tickler Date to print Promises, Promises information. If left blank, the current date will be used.

ROUNDING FACTOR:
11. Enter the desired Rounding factor:
    ' ' = no scaling (Default)
    '0' = round decimals only
    '1' = divide by 10
    '2' = divide by 100
    '3' = divide by 1000
    '4' = divide by 10000
    '5' = divide by 100000
    '6' = divide by 1000000
    Any value of 0 through 6 will round decimals to whole numbers. Amounts are divided using 4/5 rounding. Actual amounts are used to accumulate the total fields.

CATEGORY CODE:
12. Enter the category code number indicating which category code to print on the report. If left blank, no category code will print. (This pertains to the two short report formats only.)

CREDIT LIMIT:
13. Enter a ‘1’ to print the credit limit for each customer listed on the report. If left blank, no credit limit will print.

DRAFTS:
14. Enter a ‘1’ to print a separate draft amount on the report. If left
blank, a separate draft amount will not be printed. (This pertains to the long format without parent number.)

SUMMARY PAGE:
15. Enter a ‘1’ to print the company summary page at the end of the report. If left blank, no summary page will be printed.
Manage Credit Information

Managing Credit Information

After you send an invoice to a customer for goods or services that are bought “on account,” you might want to manage the customer’s credit information. For example, you might want to view which parent accounts are due for a credit review, or you might want to increase the customer’s credit limit. You manage credit information for a customer at the parent level.

Managing credit information consists of:

- Reviewing customer accounts
- Working customer accounts
- Reviewing account balances

Reviewing Customer Accounts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Credit Manager

To determine whether a customer is over its credit limit, review the customer’s account. This is the first task in managing credit information.

You can review an account (parent) that exceeds its credit limit by specifying:

- Address book category code 1 (location or branch)
- Address book category code 2 (account representative)
- Credit manager
- Collections manager

When you review a customer’s account, you can determine if the customer is due for a credit review.

The following graphic illustrates the information that the system displays when you view credit information and where that information originates.
Credit information is stored in the following tables until the system updates the A/R Cash Management worktable (F0315):

- Customer Master (F0301)
- Message Log Ledger (F0113)
- A/R Ledger (F0311)

**Before You Begin**

- Run the Credit Analysis Refresh program to ensure that the credit information you review is current
To review customer accounts

On Credit Manager

1. Display all customers who are over their credit limit, or complete any of the following fields to limit the information displayed:
   - Branch
   - Account Representative
   - Credit Manager
   - Collection Manager
   - Company
   - Worked
   - Review
   - Aging (From)
   - Aging (Thru)
   - Limit
   - Sequence

2. To access Credit Manager to review the total amount due and aging information, press F15.
## Field | Explanation
--- | ---
Category Code 01 | One of thirty reporting codes that you can assign to an address in the Address Book system. Use these codes to identify addresses for reports, mailings, and so on. Category codes are user-defined (system 01, types 01 through 30). Examples:
- Category code 01 – Location or Branch
- Category code 02 – Salesperson
- Category code 03 – New tenant
- Category code 04 – Credit officer

Form-specific information

An * (asterisk) indicates all locations or branches.

Account Representative | One of thirty reporting codes that you can assign to an address in the Address Book system. Use these codes to identify addresses for reports, mailings, and so on. Category codes are user-defined (system 01, types 01 through 30). Examples:
- Category code 01 – Location or Branch
- Category code 02 – Account Representative
- Category code 03 – New tenant
- Category code 04 – Credit officer

Form-specific information

An * (asterisk) indicates all salespeople.

Worked (1/0) | A value of Y or 1 displays all credit customers whether they have been worked or not. A value of N, 0 or blank displays all credit customers that have NOT been worked.
What You Should Know About

**Field** | **Explanation**
---|---
Review (1/0) | The Accounts Receivable system automatically flags customers for review. This is based on a pre-planned credit review date or a current tickler (E-Mail) transaction. Other flags are provided to reflect over credit limit and customer delinquencies.

A value of Y or 1 displays ONLY those customers flagged for review. A value of N, 0 or blank will display ALL customers, whether flagged for review or not.

Aging Category (From) | The category at which you want to begin the aging. For example, category 3 could indicate 60 – 90 days, and so on. You can use up to nine aging categories.

Aging Category (Thru) | The category at which you want to end the aging. For example, category 3 could indicate 60 – 90 days, and so on. You can use up to nine aging categories.

Limit (1/0) | This field is used to select customers who have exceeded their credit limit as established on Customer Master Information. A value of N, or 0 displays all customers. A value of Y or 1 displays only those customers who have exceeded their credit limit.

Credit limits are established at the parent (national account) level.

Sequence | The sequence in which a customer's balance displays.
- 1 displays the customers in descending sequence based on the amount over the credit limit
- 2 displays the customers in descending sequence of the highest balance of the oldest category

---

**What You Should Know About**

**Reviewing additional customer information**

From Credit Manager, you can access additional information that might be useful when reviewing a customer's account. For example, you can access:

- Summarized account information, such as the date of the first and last invoice
- Detailed customer ledger information
- Detailed payment history
- Electronic mail reminders with tickler dates

**Multi-Currency**

If you specify a company, the system uses the decimals of that company's currency to display amounts. If you do not specify a company, the system uses the amount currency specified in the customer record.
Working Customer Accounts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Credit Granting and Management

When managing credit information for a customer, the second task is to work the customer’s account. When working an account, you might review and change the following for the customer at the parent level:

- A customer’s credit limit
- The date of the next credit review
- A tickler message about any action you take

An account is considered “worked” after you change the date of the next credit review or enter a message about the account’s status.

When you revise the credit limit or next review date for a parent customer, the system updates the Customer Master table. However, the system does not update the following until you run the Credit Analysis Refresh program:

- Open amounts for the customer
- The amount over the credit limit

To work customer accounts

On Credit Granting & Management
1. Locate the customer.
2. Complete or change information in the following fields:
   - Credit Limit
   - Next Review Date

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Credit Limit</td>
<td>The credit limit for a customer in the Customer Master Information table (F0301). This value is used throughout the credit management programs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next Review Date</td>
<td>The review date for the client’s credit information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Form-specific information*

The system displays customers on the Credit Manager screen when the current date is the same or later than the date in this field.

**What You Should Know About**

**Revising credit information**

You cannot change the Date of Last Review and Last Reviewed By fields. The system automatically updates them when you review and change the customer’s credit limit.
Reviewing Account Balances

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Account Balance Inquiry

When you work a customer's account, you might need to research whether the customer has exceeded its credit limit. To do so, review the customer's account balance.

You can view credit information for a parent company and its associated children by specifying one of the following:

- Parent number (to view up to 25 levels of parent/child information)
- Statement address number (to view open balances for a specific customer)

Account balance information is maintained in the A/R Cash Management worktable (F0315).

Before You Begin

- Set up the necessary parent/child relationships and the instructions for statements on Customer Master Information
- Run the Credit Analysis Refresh program to build the multi-level parent/child relationships
To review account balances

On Account Balance Inquiry

1. Complete one of the following fields:
   - Parent Number
   - Statement Address Number

2. To further limit the information displayed, complete any of the following fields:
   - Level
   - Company
   - Currency
What You Should Know About

**Reviewing the credit limit**

If you specify company 00000 or leave the company blank, access the detail area to view the credit limit of the parent customer.

**Reviewing account balances for a parent customer**

When you review the account balance for a parent customer, you can:

- Leave the company blank to display the total of the parent account and its children’s accounts for all companies.
- Leave the Level field blank to display the total of all parent/child levels and their account balance.

**Multi-Currency**

- If you specify company 00000, the account balance represents the amount currency assigned in the customer record.
- If you do not specify a company or a currency, the account balance is displayed in the domestic currency of the parent customer account.
- If you specify a currency, the system only displays those account balances that are in the specified currency.
Create Credit Reporting Tapes

Creating Credit Reporting Tapes

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Create Credit Reporting Tapes

From Credit Reporting Tapes (G03151), choose an option under the Credit Reporting Tape Creation heading

As part of managing credit information for your customers, you might need to send a magnetic tape of A/R information to an outside credit agency. To do so, you must create the credit reporting tape.

When you create a credit reporting tape, the system:

- Reads information from the A/R Cash Management worktable (F0315)
- Formats your customer’s A/R information to conform to the standards of the specific credit agency
- Writes the information to the tape

You might be required to send these tapes to one or more of the following credit agencies:

- TRW
- Dun & Bradstreet
- CREDITEL

These credit agencies, in turn, process the tape and establish credit rating information about your customers.
What Are the Requirements for Credit Reporting Tapes?

The following information describes the credit agency’s requirements for credit reporting tapes.

**TRW**

This credit agency requires that you:

- Include all of your customers, regardless of their balances. You can set a processing option to include customers who have a zero balance. This ensures that the system includes those customers who pay on time or have no open amounts.
- Specify an SIC (Standard Industry Code) for the company for which you are submitting a tape. Set up the SIC for the customer in the customer master record.
- Enter the four-character business code that you obtain from TRW in the processing options.
- Use a seven-character business code to describe the payment terms for the customer. To do this, set up a cross-reference between the three-character Payment Terms field on the user defined codes list (03/PT) and the 'TRW' definition.

**Dun & Bradstreet**

This credit accepts tapes that conform to the requirements of TRW.

**CREDITEL**

This credit agency has no special requirements.

---

**Before You Begin**

- Run the Update A/R from Address Book program.
- Contact your credit reporting agency to obtain any necessary information.
- Ensure that you have a tape drive available to create magnetic tapes.
- Run the Credit Analysis Refresh program to create the A/R Cash Management worktable. Alternatively, you can set a processing option in the Create Credit Reporting Tapes program to base your credit reporting information on a temporary cash management table. This lets you submit the tape program without running Credit Analysis Refresh.
- Initialize your media tape to either 1600 or 6250 BPI with standard IBM tape labels.
To create a credit reporting tape

1. Choose the menu selection for one of the following:
   - TRW
   - Dun & Bradstreet
   - CREDITEL
2. Respond to the prompts that the system displays.
3. Set the appropriate processing options.

What You Should Know About

**Submitting more than one version at the same time**
If you try to submit more than one version of the Create Credit Reporting Tapes program, the system displays an error message because each version accesses the Credit Tape worktable (F03902 or F03902C).

**Creating credit tapes for multiple companies**
To create a credit tape for multiple companies, set up separate versions of the Create Credit Reporting Tapes program.
Processing Options for TRW and Dun & Bradstreet

SUBMITTING COMPANY INFORMATION:
1. Enter your ‘Contributor’ number.  

2. Enter your ‘Business Category’ code. 

‘AS OF’ DATE:
3. Enter the ‘As Of’ Date to be used as the A/R cutoff date. 

CREDIT REPORT AMOUNTS:
4. Enter the code to be used for the printed amounts on credit reports. 
   ‘0’ = Actual amount to be displayed
   ‘1’ = +100000 to be displayed on account balances over $100,000
   ‘2’ = +200000 to be displayed on account balances over $200,000
   ‘3’ = +300000 to be displayed on account balances over $300,000
   ‘4’ = +400000 to be displayed on account balances over $400,000
   ‘5’ = +500000 to be displayed on account balances over $500,000 

TAPE CREATION OPTIONS:
5. Enter the tape device name to use (Default is TAP01). 

6. Enter the Data File Library to use for the load of the F03920 file (Default is *LIBL). 

CREDIT/CASH MANAGEMENT BUILD:
7. Enter a ‘1’ to rebuild the temporary A/R Credit/Cash Management work file prior to generating the tape. 
   NOTE: If you do not build the temp. work file, the existing Credit/Cash Management file will be used. 
   If a ‘1’ is entered, the Based On File must be F0315WJA. 

8. Enter a ‘1’ to rebuild the temporary A/R Credit/Cash Management work file with zero balance records. 
   If left blank, records with an open amount of zero will not be included.
Processing Options for Create CREDITEL Reporting Tape

SUBMITTING COMPANY INFORMATION:
1. Enter your CREDITEL membership number.

‘AS OF’ DATE:
2. Enter the ‘As Of’ Date to be used as the A/R cutoff date

TAPE CREATION OPTIONS:
3. Enter the tape device name to use (Default is TAP01).
4. Enter the Data File Library to use for the load of the F03920C file (Default is *LILB).

CREDIT/CASH MANAGEMENT BUILD:
5. Enter a ‘1’ to rebuild the temporary A/R Credit/Cash Management work file prior to creating the tape.
   NOTE: If you do not build the temp. work file, the existing Credit/Cash Management file will be used.
   If a ‘1’ is entered, the Based On File must be F0315WJA.

6. Enter a ‘1’ to rebuild the temporary A/R Credit/Cash Management work file with zero balance records.
   If left blank, records with an open amount of zero will not be included.
Manage Collections Information

Managing Collections Information

After you send invoices to your customers, you might need to manage their accounts for collection purposes. For example, you might need to review and analyze a customer's past-due account and determine whether to send it to an outside collections agency.

Managing collections information consists of:

- Reviewing past-due accounts
- Reviewing payment history
- Reviewing account balances
- Working past-due accounts
- Reviewing collection management information

Reviewing Past-Due Accounts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Collections Manager

To determine which customer accounts are overdue and the number of days in which the accounts are delinquent, review past-due accounts. You can control the information that the system displays by setting a processing option.

In addition, you can review:

- Accounts for a specific collection manager or all collection managers
- Accounts with outstanding collections messages
- Accounts that have been “worked”
- Accounts that are past due in specific aging categories
Collections information is stored in the following tables until the system updates the A/R Cash Management worktable (F0315):

- Customer Master (F0301)
- A/R Ledger (F0311)

**Before You Begin**

- Run the Credit Analysis Refresh program to ensure that the collections information is current

**To review past-due accounts**

On Collections Manager

1. Display all past-due accounts for all collection managers, or complete the following field to limit the information displayed:
   - Collections Manager

2. To further limit the information, complete any of the following fields:
   - Company
   - Parent
   - Worked
• Review
• Aging From
• Aging Thru

3. To access Collection Manager to review the total amount due and aging information, press F15.

What You Should Know About

Reviewing additional account information
From Collections Manager, you can access additional account information that might be useful when you review past-due accounts. For example, you can access:

• Detailed customer ledger information
• Summarized account information, such as the date of the first and last invoice
• Customer master information
• Detailed messages about any action taken to collect overdue amounts

Multi-Currency
If you specify a company, the system uses the decimals of that company’s currency to display amounts. If you do not specify a company, the system uses the amount currency you set up in the customer record.
Processing Options for Accounts Receivable Collections Manager

DEFAULT PROCESSING:
1. Enter the Aging Categories to be displayed on the screen. (If left blank the values will default from the Data Dictionary.)

   From Category  ____________
   Thru Category  ____________

2. Enter a "1" if the User ID is to be loaded into the Collections Manager field on the screen. (A default of blanks will not load the User ID.)

What You Should Know About Processing Options

Aging categories (1)  The aging categories determine customer accounts that appear on Collections Manager. Only accounts that have activity in the selected past due ranges will appear. Values are:

- F = Future (−999–0)
- C = Current (0–30)
- 1–7 = Past due aging ranges: 1 (30–60), 2 (61–90), (91–120), and so on

Reviewing Payment History

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Customer Payment History

Alternatively, you can access customer payment history from the Credit Manager form.

As part of your collection activities, you might want to analyze the payment trends of a customer. To do so, review the customer's payment history.

Customer payment history consists of A/R activity over three fiscal quarters. This information is maintained in the A/R Ledger table.

Before You Begin

- Run the Average Days Late program to update the number of days a customer is late in paying their invoices
To review payment history

On Customer Payment History

1. Complete one of the following fields:
   - Parent Number
   - Customer Number

2. To further limit the information displayed, complete any of the following fields:
   - Company
   - From Year
   - From Month
   - Document Type (Include/Exclude)

What You Should Know About

Multi-Currency

If you enter multiple currencies for a customer, the total amounts on Customer Payment History will be meaningless hash totals (a combination of all currencies entered). To avoid hash totals, set up multiple address book numbers for a customer, each with its own currency.
Reviewing Account Balances

To determine the open amount on an account, review the customer’s account balance. Reviewing account balances consists of:

- Reviewing balances by administrator
- Reviewing balances by business unit

Account balance information is stored in the A/R Ledger table.

Reviewing Balances by Administrator

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Balance by Administrator

To view account information by location or account representative, review balances by administrator. You can view account balances by the information you defined for category codes 01 and 02 in the address book. For example, you can view all open account balances that are assigned to a specific salesperson.

► To view balances by administrator

On Balance by Administrator
Display all account balances for your default location or branch, or complete any of the following fields to limit the information displayed:

- Location or Branch
- Salesperson
- Paid

What You Should Know About

**Reviewing other types of account information**

You can access other types of account information for a customer on Balance by Administrator. For example, you can access:

- Customer ledger information
- Account status information
Reviewing Balances by Business Unit

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Inquiry by Business Unit

In addition to reviewing a customer's account balance by administrator, you can review the open amount of the account by business unit.

To review balances by business unit

On Inquiry by Business Unit

1. Complete the following field:
   - Business Unit

2. To limit the information displayed, complete any of the following fields:
   - Document Type
   - Paid
   - G/L Offset
What You Should Know About

Specifying a business unit

The business unit you specify on Inquiry by Business Unit is the business unit of the invoice record, not the business unit for the G/L distribution.

Working Past-Due Accounts

When managing collection information for your customers, you might need to work those accounts that are past due. An account is considered “worked” after you contact the customer and enter a collections message.

After you work a past-due account, the customer no longer appears on Collections Manager. If the account remains past due based on the tickler date, the account will appear again.

Promises Entry and Inquiry is a version of the Address Book Message Log. You can view a list of customers and use the search type and category codes to create specific lists of customers.

Working past-due accounts consists of:

- Reviewing promises messages
- Entering promises messages

See Also

- Working with Employee Mail Boxes (P01250) and Working with Messages (P01250) in the Address Book Guide
Reviewing Promises Messages

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management.

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Promise Entry and Inquiry.

When working past-due accounts, you might need to review promises messages for the customer. A promises message might contain detailed information about the action taken to collect overdue invoices on a customer’s account.

For example, a promise message might read *A delinquency notice was sent June 30, 1998.* A promises message might also document a conversation with a customer about its past-due account balance. For example, the message might read *Spoke with the accounts payable manager, John White, and he said payment will be sent at the end of the month.*

To review promises messages

On Promises Entry & Inquiry

1. Complete the following field or a portion thereof:
   - Skip to

2. Choose the See Memo option next to the customer to access Message Inquiry and view a portion of the first line of text for each message.
3. On Message Inquiry, choose the View/Enter Message option next to the appropriate message.

**Entering Promises Messages**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Promise Entry and Inquiry

To document any communication with a customer, such as a commitment to pay an invoice on a certain day, enter a promises message. You can enter promises messages to better manage collection reminders, customer communications, and future actions.

To enter promises messages

On Promises Entry & Inquiry

1. Complete the following field or a portion thereof:
   - Skip to

2. Choose the Send Memo option next to the customer to access Message View/Entry.
3. On Message View Entry, complete the following fields:
   - Tickler Date
   - Message Type 1
   - Message Type 2
   - Name
   - Company (optional)
   - Phone (optional)
   - Speed Message Type

4. Complete the necessary text on the Message lines.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>The future reminder date. The system will not send the message until this date. The default value is today’s date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message Type – 1</td>
<td>A code used to classify types of messages. For example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I Internal Message – entering message of this type does not remove customer from credit or collection review.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P Promises, Promises Message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F Other Promises, Promises Message – a secondary classification of Promises, Promises messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If using Promises, Promises, you might want the default to be P, so that you can print your reports using this code.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Manage Collections Information

#### Field

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Message Type – 2</td>
<td>A code that classifies the type of messages. For example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Direct Sale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Distributor Sale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Message Type</td>
<td>A user defined code (01/MT) that specifies speed messages in the Electronic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mail system. When a Speed Message Type code is entered on Message View/Entry,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the code's description is automatically added as the message text. Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>are, “Please call back” or “Returned your call”.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### What You Should Know About

**Entering a message without working an account**

You can enter a promises message for a customer without working the account. To do so, specify I (internal) in the M1 field and leave the tickler date blank. This designates the message is for internal purposes.

#### Reviewing Collection Management Information

**From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer and Invoice Entry**

**From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Customer Ledger Inquiry**

As you monitor and work your past-due accounts, you might need to decide whether to send payment reminders to a customer or whether the customer should appear on a collection report. To do so, review collection management information.

If you determine that a customer should appear on a collection report to be sent to an outside collections agency, you must verify that a reason code is defined.
To review collection management information

On Customer Ledger Inquiry

1. Define the necessary invoice search criteria.
2. Choose the Collection Management option next to the appropriate invoice.
3. On Collection Management, verify information in the following fields:
   - Reminder Stop Reason Code
   - Reminder Stop Until Date
   - Collection Report
   - Collection Reason Code
   - Apply Finance Charges
   - Level of Last Sent Reminder
   - Date of Last Reminder
   - Date of Collection Report
   - Date of Interest Invoicing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reminder Stop Reason Code</td>
<td>A code that identifies the reason for an adjustment, or a code that prevents an individual invoice from being included on a payment reminder. You define these codes in the AAI's so that the system can make the adjusting entries in the general ledger. Typical reason codes are: RABD – Bad Debt Expense (BD is the Adjustment Reason) RADC – Damaged Goods Credit (DC is the Adjustment Reason) RAMW – Minor Amount Write Off (MW is the Adjustment Reason) RATF – Tax or Freight Dispute (TF is the Adjustment Reason)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reminder Stop Until Date</td>
<td>The system does not send reminders to the customer until after this date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collection Report (Y/N)</td>
<td>A code that indicates whether invoices for a particular customer appear for collection. If this field is Y (the default), invoices appear on the collection report after the maximum number of reminders have been sent to the customer and the final collection report is generated. If you enter N in this field, the customer's invoices are not eligible to appear on the collection report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collection Reason Code</td>
<td>A user defined code (system 03/type CL) that indicates either the reason that the invoice was sent to collections or the particular collection agency responsible for the collection. A code is entered in this field when an invoice is sent to collections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Apply Finance Charges (Y/N) | A code that indicates whether finance charges should be applied or waived for the account. Valid codes are:  
  Y Yes, apply finance charges  
  N No, do not apply finance charges  
  blank Process this account through the Interest Invoicing program (P03540) |
| Level of Last Sent Reminder | This field specifies the level of the payment reminder that was sent on the last issue of payment reminders. It can either be level 1, 2, 3 or 4, where 4 indicates that the customer's account is to be sent to collections. |
| Date Of Last Reminder       | The date of the most recent past-due notice to the customer.                                                                                   |
| Date Of Collection Report   | This date when an invoice was sent to collection.                                                                                             |
| Date of Interest Invoicing  | The date of an interest invoice.                                                                                                               |
Test Yourself: Managing Credit and Collections Information

1. True or False

You should run the Credit Analysis Refresh program before you review credit and collection information.

2. Match the following programs to their functions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Program/Answer</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Credit Manager</td>
<td>a. Electronic mail information about communications with customers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collection Manager</td>
<td>b. Online display of customers who are past due.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit Analysis Refresh</td>
<td>c. Online display of customers in need of a credit review.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Promise Entry</td>
<td>d. Updates the A/R Cash Management worktable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Circle the one criterion that the Credit Analysis Refresh program does not use to determine if a customer’s account should be included in the A/R Cash Management worktable:

a. Customers assigned a credit message, such as Requires Credit Check
b. Customers requiring a credit review
c. Customers with past-due amounts
d. Customers over their credit limit
e. Customers with current promises, promises messages and tickler dates

The answers are in Appendix B.
Print Credit and Collections Reports

Printing Credit and Collections Reports

You can print reports to help you review and manage credit and collection information for your customers.

Printing credit and collections reports consists of:

☐ Printing the Open Credit/Collection Items report
☐ Printing the A/R Account Summary report
☐ Printing the Promises Listing report

Printing the Open Credit/Collection Items Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Open Credit/Collection Items

To review accounts that have not been reviewed or worked as of a specific date, print the Open Credit/Collection Items report. After you work a customer’s account, it does not appear on this report until the next review date.

To see only those accounts that belong to a specific credit or collections manager, do one of the following:

☐ Print the outstanding collections items version
☐ Print the outstanding credit items version

Each version lists summarized information from the A/R Cash Management worktable (F0315).
### Printing the Outstanding Collections Items Version

You can print this version to review a list of outstanding items for customers with past-due accounts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Document</th>
<th>Co. Name</th>
<th>Address Number</th>
<th>G/L Account</th>
<th>Amounts</th>
<th>P/L</th>
<th>LT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do Invoice No.</td>
<td>Inv Date</td>
<td>G/L Date</td>
<td>Account Description</td>
<td>G/L Account</td>
<td>Offset</td>
<td>Invoice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI 300113 001</td>
<td>06/30/98</td>
<td>100 Cantrell Sea &amp; Ski</td>
<td>313113</td>
<td>500.00</td>
<td>5.00</td>
<td>500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI 300213 001</td>
<td>06/05/98</td>
<td>100 Cantrell Sea &amp; Ski</td>
<td>313113</td>
<td>2,575.00</td>
<td>25.75</td>
<td>2,575.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total:** 3,075.00

### Printing the Outstanding Credit Items Version

You can print this version to review a list of outstanding credit items for parent accounts only. The system calculates all credit limits at the parent level and applies the child balances against the credit limit of the parent.

This version lists parent accounts that have not exceeded their credit limit, but have reached their credit review date.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Customer Number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Phone Number</th>
<th>Over Credit Limit</th>
<th>Amount Due</th>
<th>R</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1001 Edwards, J.D. &amp; Company</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>844-8000</td>
<td>177,844.11</td>
<td>R</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Processing Options for Outstanding Credit/Collection Items

Enter an "As Of" date to include items which have not been worked. If left blank today's date will be used.

Printing the A/R Account Summary Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose A/R Account Summary

To review summarized account information that includes the promises messages attached to each account, print the A/R Account Summary report.

This report lists information from the A/R Ledger table (F0311) and the Message Log Ledger table (F0113).

Processing Options for Accounts Receivable Summary

PRINT OPTIONS:
1. Specify one of the following print formats:
' ' = Standard 132 character format. (Default)
'1' = Standard 132 character format with parent number.
'2' = Long 198 character format.
'3' = Long 198 character format with parent number.
'4' = Long 198 character format with foreign currency aging.

AGING SPECIFICATIONS:
2. Enter a ‘1’ to retrieve the aging specifications from Accounts Receivable Constants. Default of blank will use the processing options for aging. NOTE: If selected, all other aging processing options will be ignored.

"AS OF" DATE:
3. Enter the “As Of” date to age open balances. If left blank, the current date is used as the default.

ACCOUNT AGING DATE:
4. Specify one of the following dates to age accounts from:
   D = Due Date
   I = Invoice Date
   G = General Ledger Date
   S = Statement Date
   (If blank, “D” is default)

AGING CALCULATIONS:
5. Specify one of the following methods for aging calculations:
   1 = Aging Days (Default)
   2 = Fiscal Periods
   3 = Calendar

AGING CATEGORY INFORMATION:
6. Enter the following aging category information: (for method 1 only)
   Aging Days: Beginning
column
   thru
column
   thru
column
   thru

CREDIT PROCESSING:
7. Specify one of the following for aging credits:
   ' ' = Apply Credits to Current Column (Default)
   '1' = Age Credits
   '2' = Apply Credits to oldest active Aging Column

"AS OF" DATE PROCESSING:
8. Enter a ‘1’ to use the “As Of” date process. (Note: DREAM Writer Based on File must be F0311A)

PROMISES, PROMISES INFORMATION:
9. Specify one of the following to
print Promises, Promises:
'1' = print 'P' message type
'2' = print 'P' and 'F' messages
'3' = print all message types
If left blank, no Promises, Promises will be printed.

"FROM" TICKLER DATE:
10. Enter the "From" Tickler Date to print Promises, Promises information. If left blank, the current date will be used.

ROUNDING FACTOR:
11. Enter the desired Rounding factor:
' ' = no scaling (Default)
'0' = round decimals only
'1' = divide by 10
'2' = divide by 100
'3' = divide by 1000
'4' = divide by 10000
'5' = divide by 100000
'6' = divide by 1000000
Any value of 0 through 6 will round decimals to whole numbers. Amounts are divided using 4/5 rounding. Actual amounts are used to accumulate the total fields.

CATEGORY CODE:
12. Enter the category code number indicating which category code to print on the report. If left blank, no category code will print. (This pertains to the two short report formats only.)

CREDIT LIMIT:
13. Enter a '1' to print the credit limit for each customer listed on the report. If left blank, no credit limit will print.

DRAFTS:
14. Enter a '1' to print a separate draft amount on the report. If left blank, a separate draft amount will not be printed. (This pertains to the long format without parent number.)

SUMMARY PAGE:
15. Enter a '1' to print the company summary page at the end of the report. If left blank, no summary page will be printed.
Printing the Promises Listing Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Credit/Collection Management.

From Credit and Collection Management (G0315), choose Promises Listing.

To review a list of both current and closed promises messages, print the Promises Listing report.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Name and Telephone</th>
<th>Person/Company</th>
<th>Telephone</th>
<th>Ext</th>
<th>User</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>04/15/98</td>
<td>4001</td>
<td>Ready Mix Co</td>
<td>Ready Mix Co</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DEM001</td>
<td>10/10/91</td>
<td>08:50:06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/13/93</td>
<td>5661</td>
<td>Able Bakery Company</td>
<td>Z5Hill</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DEM001</td>
<td>07/13/93</td>
<td>08:39:45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/13/93</td>
<td>5661</td>
<td>Able Bakery Company</td>
<td>Z5Hill</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DEM001</td>
<td>07/13/93</td>
<td>08:40:04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/13/93</td>
<td>5750</td>
<td>T.J. Max</td>
<td>Collectors</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DEM001</td>
<td>07/13/93</td>
<td>08:05:06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/13/93</td>
<td>5768</td>
<td>London Development Group</td>
<td>Z5Hill</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DEM001</td>
<td>07/13/93</td>
<td>08:39:02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/13/93</td>
<td>5768</td>
<td>London Development Group</td>
<td>Z5Hill</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DEM001</td>
<td>07/13/93</td>
<td>08:39:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01/28/98</td>
<td>5768</td>
<td>London Development Group</td>
<td>Z5Hill</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DEM001</td>
<td>07/13/93</td>
<td>08:37:12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Processing Options for Promises Listing

PPAT Message Printing Option:
1. Enter a ‘1’ to print the first line of the PPAT message. Leave blank to print the complete message.
2. Enter a ‘1’ to print To-Do-List format. Leave blank to print regular format.

Data Selection for Promises Listing

Set the Message Type 1 field to P (promises). This separates promises from other messages, such as internal messages which are attached to accounts that have not been worked.
A/R Reports

Objectives

- To assist in reviewing and managing A/R information

About A/R Standard and Analytical Reports

To effectively manage your accounts receivable information, such as customer account balances, you can print the following types of A/R reports.

- Print standard reports
- Print analytical reports

Why Would You Print Standard Reports?

Print standard reports to review and manage open A/R balances and aging information for:

- All customers
- A specific customer
- A parent company
- A specific category code
- Multi-currency amounts

Why Would You Print Analytical Reports?

Print analytical reports to review and analyze information about:

- Totals by customer, pay status, and parent/child accounts
- Open amounts by customer within a specific business unit
- Credit and collections, such as unresolved matters
- Customer totals by a specific G/L account
Print Standard Reports

Printing Standard Reports

You can print standard reports to review and manage A/R information, such as open account balances for all customers or specific customers.

Printing standard reports consists of:

- Printing the Open A/R Summary report
- Printing the Open A/R Detail report
- Printing the Open A/R with Foreign Amounts report

These reports read information from the Customer Master (F0301) and A/R Ledger (F0311) tables.

The processing time for these reports depends on the amount of history retained in the Customer Master and A/R Ledger tables. You might want to print standard reports during off-peak hours.

Printing the Open A/R Summary Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports

From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Open A/R Summary Reports

To review current summary information about account balances and aging records, print the following versions of the Open A/R Summary report:

- Print the A/R Summary by Company
- Print the A/R Summary by Category Code
- Print the A/R Summary by Parent
Specify your aging categories for this report in one of the following:

**A/R constants**
Specify the aging by due date

**Processing options**
Specify the aging by aging method and by type of date
(due date, invoice date, or G/L date).

### Printing A/R Summary by Company

To review an alphabetic list of accounts and a summarized total of each customer's open items, print the A/R Summary by Company report. This aging report lists totals by company and a grand total of all open A/R items. You can print this report with or without promise information.

The totals and aging amounts reflect only transactions you select.

---

**Processing Options for Accounts Receivable Summary**

**PRINT OPTIONS:**
1. Specify one of the following print formats:
   
   `'` = Standard 132 character format. (Default)
‘1’ = Standard 132 character format with parent number.
‘2’ = Long 198 character format.
‘3’ = Long 198 character format with parent number.
‘4’ = Long 198 character format with foreign currency aging.

AGING SPECIFICATIONS:
2. Enter a ‘1’ to retrieve the aging specifications from Accounts Receivable Constants. Default of blank will use the processing options for aging. Note: If selected, all other aging processing options will be ignored.

“AS OF” DATE:
3. Enter the “As Of” date to age open balances. If left blank, the current date is used as the default.

ACCOUNT AGING DATE:
4. Specify one of the following dates to age accounts from:
D = Due Date
I = Invoice Date
G = General Ledger Date
S = Statement Date
(If blank, “D” is default)

AGING CALCULATIONS:
5. Specify one of the following methods for aging calculations:
1 = Aging Days (Default)
2 = Fiscal Periods
3 = Calendar

AGING CATEGORY INFORMATION:
6. Enter the following aging category information: (for method 1 only)
Aging Days: Beginning thru thru thru thru

CREDIT PROCESSING:
7. Specify one of the following for aging credits:
’ ’ = Apply Credits to Current Column (Default)
‘1’ = Age Credits
‘2’ = Apply Credits to oldest active Aging Column

“AS OF” DATE PROCESSING:
8. Enter a ‘1’ to use the “As Of” date process. (Note: DREAM Writer Based on File must be F0311A)

PROMISES, PROMISES INFORMATION:
9. Specify one of the following to print Promises, Promises:
‘1’ = print ‘P’ message type
’2’ = print ‘P’ and ‘F’ messages
’3’ = print all message types
If left blank, no Promises, Promises will be printed.

"FROM" TICKLER DATE:
10. Enter the “From” Tickler Date to print Promises, Promises information. If left blank, the current date will be used.

ROUNDING FACTOR:
11. Enter the desired Rounding factor:
’’ = no scaling (Default)
’0’ = round decimals only
’1’ = divide by 10
’2’ = divide by 100
’3’ = divide by 1000
’4’ = divide by 10000
’5’ = divide by 100000
’6’ = divide by 1000000
Any value of 0 through 6 will round decimals to whole numbers. Amounts are divided using 4/5 rounding. Actual amounts are used to accumulate the total fields.

CATEGORY CODE:
12. Enter the category code number indicating which category code to print on the report. If left blank, no category code will print. (This pertains to the two short report formats only.)

CREDIT LIMIT:
13. Enter a ‘1’ to print the credit limit for each customer listed on the report. If left blank, no credit limit will print.

DRAFTS:
14. Enter a ‘1’ to print a separate draft amount on the report. If left blank, a separate draft amount will not be printed. (This pertains to the long format without parent number.)

SUMMARY PAGE:
15. Enter a ‘1’ to print the company summary page at the end of the report. If left blank, no summary page will be printed.
Printing A/R Summary by Category Code

To review a summary of open A/R balances by category code and customer number, print the A/R Summary by Category Code report. This aging report lists summarized totals for each customer, a total by company, and a grand total for all companies.

Use processing options to specify which category code (1-10) you want to include on the report.

This example uses category code 02 (account representative) from the Address Book system.

See Also
- Processing Options for Accounts Receivable Summary (P03413)

Data Selection and Sequence for A/R Summary by Category Code

Verify that the category code you specify for the data sequence is the same as the category code you specified in data selection.

Printing A/R Summary by Parent

To review a summary of child (subsidiary) accounts within each parent (national) account, print the A/R Summary by Parent report. This aging report lists totals for the parent and the company and a grand total of all accounts.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Phone Number</th>
<th>Co Balance</th>
<th>Current</th>
<th>Aging</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Last Payment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6390</td>
<td>Books Brothers</td>
<td>(202) 455-1111</td>
<td>00015</td>
<td>1000.00</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1863946</td>
<td>Brenda Spond</td>
<td>(303) 488-4000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8553</td>
<td>Brookville Grille &amp; Door Co.</td>
<td>(303) 555-2525</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8407</td>
<td>Brown, Harvey J.</td>
<td>(708) 577-1325</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5334</td>
<td>Cady, John</td>
<td>(303) 321-5646</td>
<td>00015</td>
<td>1000.00</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1862420</td>
<td>Cafe in the Park</td>
<td>(303) 951-3528</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6349</td>
<td>Canadian Concrete Finishing</td>
<td>(303) 555-7599</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6365</td>
<td>Capable Cable Contractors</td>
<td>(303) 555-6577</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5362</td>
<td>Carbone &amp; Carlino</td>
<td>(303) 320-1956</td>
<td>00015</td>
<td>5000.00</td>
<td>2525</td>
<td>2525</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3030</td>
<td>Carriage Creations</td>
<td>(303) 797-2500</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>23010.00</td>
<td>14975</td>
<td>4250</td>
<td>3785</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5363</td>
<td>Centennial Technical Park</td>
<td>(303) 555-1234</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>751</td>
<td>Centennial Tech. Park Phase 1</td>
<td>(303) 555-1234</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>752</td>
<td>Centennial Tech. Park Phase 2</td>
<td>(303) 555-1234</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5805</td>
<td>Central Electric</td>
<td>(212) 455-5474</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3001</td>
<td>Centralized Apparel</td>
<td>(303) 629-3000</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>3860.20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>2840</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>3002</td>
<td>Central Express Store</td>
<td>(303) 629-3002</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>4345.00</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>1300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>3003</td>
<td>Central Specialty Store</td>
<td>(602) 629-3003</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td>3100</td>
<td>13075</td>
<td>2175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>3004</td>
<td>Centre Gift Store</td>
<td>(215) 629-3004</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>9025.21</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>5650</td>
<td>1890</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3005</td>
<td>Central Specialty Store</td>
<td>(404) 629-3400</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>15294.36</td>
<td>8925</td>
<td>2259</td>
<td>2610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>3006</td>
<td>Centralized Apparel</td>
<td>(404) 629-3400</td>
<td>000100</td>
<td>1000.00</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Printing the Open A/R Detail Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports
From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Open A/R Detail Reports

To review open items such as invoices, sales orders, credit memos or unapplied cash for every customer, print the Open A/R Detail report. This report shows totals for each company and a grand total for all companies.

You can choose to print versions of this report that include:

- Discount information and remarks
- Aging (short and long)
- Detail by account representative
- Retainages
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Phone Number</th>
<th>Co</th>
<th>Balance</th>
<th>Open</th>
<th>Current</th>
<th>1–30</th>
<th>31–60</th>
<th>61–90</th>
<th>Over 90</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6390</td>
<td>Books Brothers</td>
<td>(202) 455–1111</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3863464</td>
<td>Brenda Spond</td>
<td>(303) 488–4000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6333</td>
<td>Brookville Grille &amp; Door Co.</td>
<td>(708) 575–3721</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>354</td>
<td>Cadby, John</td>
<td>(303) 321–5646</td>
<td>00015</td>
<td>1500.00</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>06/18/98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>386420</td>
<td>Cafe in the Park</td>
<td>(303) 951–3528</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6349</td>
<td>Canadian Concrete Finishing</td>
<td>(303) 555–7599</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6365</td>
<td>Capable Cable Contractors</td>
<td>(303) 555–6577</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3030</td>
<td>Carriage Creations</td>
<td>(303) 797–2500</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>23010.00</td>
<td>14975</td>
<td>4250</td>
<td>3785</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>05/31/98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06/18/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>750</td>
<td>Centennial Technical Park</td>
<td>(303) 555–1234</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>751</td>
<td>Centennial Tech. Park Phase 1</td>
<td>(303) 555–1234</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>752</td>
<td>Centennial Tech. Park Phase 2</td>
<td>(303) 555–1234</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>665</td>
<td>Central Electric</td>
<td>(212) 455–5474</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3001</td>
<td>Centrum Incorporated</td>
<td>(212) 629–3000</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>3860.20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>2640</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>994949.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3002</td>
<td>Central Express Store</td>
<td>(202) 629–3002</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>4345.00</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>1300</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4835.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/31/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3003</td>
<td>Central Specialty Store</td>
<td>(602) 629–3003</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>20100.00</td>
<td>3100</td>
<td>13075</td>
<td>2175</td>
<td>1750</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>994949.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3004</td>
<td>Centre Gift Store</td>
<td>(215) 629–3004</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>9025.21</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>5650</td>
<td>1890</td>
<td>735</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3003</td>
<td>Central Specialty Store</td>
<td>(602) 629–3003</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>20100.00</td>
<td>3100</td>
<td>13075</td>
<td>2175</td>
<td>1750</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>994949.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3005</td>
<td>Centralized Apparel</td>
<td>(404) 629–3400</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>15294.36</td>
<td>8925</td>
<td>2259</td>
<td>2610</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Processing Options for Open A/R Detail

PRINT OPTIONS:
1. Enter one of the following formats: ____________
   ’’ = 132 characters; aging without G/L offset. (Default)
   ’1’ = 198 characters; 6 aging categories.
   ’2’ = 132 characters; discount, G/L offset, and remark.
   ’3’ = 132 characters; aging with G/L offset.

AGING SPECIFICATIONS:
2. If an aging report has been selected: ____________
   Enter a ’1’ to retrieve the aging specifications from A/R Constants.
   Default of blank will use the processing options for aging.
   (NOTE: Report MUST be sequenced and set to page break by company if company defaults are requested)
   NOTE: If selected, all other aging processing options will be ignored.

"AS OF" DATE:
3. Enter the “As Of” date to age open balances. If left blank, the current date is used as the default.

ACCOUNT AGING:
4. Specify one of the following dates to age accounts from: ____________
   D = Due Date (Default)
   I = Invoice Date
   G = General Ledger Date
   S = Statement Date

AGING CALCULATIONS:
5. Specify one of the following methods for aging calculations: ____________
   1 = Aging Days (Default)
   2 = Fiscal Periods
   3 = Calendar

CATEGORY INFORMATION:
6. Enter the following aging category information: (for method “1” only) ____________
   Aging Days: Beginning thru thru thru thru thru

CREDIT PROCESSING:
7. Enter a ’1’ to age credits or a blank (default) to apply credits to the current column.

"AS OF" DATE PROCESSING:
8. Enter a ’1’ to use “As Of” date process. (Note: DREAM Writer Based-On file must be F0311A)
PROMISES, PROMISES INFORMATION:
9. Enter one of the following:  
   ‘ ‘ = No Messages print  
   ‘1’ = Print message type P  
   ‘2’ = Print message type P and F  
   ‘3’ = Print all messages

"FROM" TICKLER DATE:
10. Enter "From" Tickler Date to print Promises, Promises information. If left blank, the current date will be used.

CONTACT NAMES:
11. Enter a ‘1’ to print contact names from the Who’s Who file. If left blank, contact names will not be included on the report

ROUNDING FACTOR:
12. Enter desired rounding factor:  
   ‘ ‘ = No rounding  
   ‘0’ = Round decimals only  
   ‘1’ = Divide by 10  
   ‘2’ = Divide by 100  
   ‘3’ = Divide by 1000  
   ‘4’ = Divide by 10000  
   ‘5’ = Divide by 100000  
   ‘6’ = Divide by 1000000  
Any value from 0-6 will round the decimals to whole numbers. Amounts are divided using 4/5 rounding. Actual amounts are used to accumulate total fields.

DRAFTS:
13. Enter a ‘1’ to print a separate draft amount on the report. If left blank, the draft column will not appear on the report. (This applies to all formats except long aging).

GENERIC TEXT:
14. Enter a ‘1’ to print the generic text for pay items in a 40 character width, a ‘2’ to print text in an 80 character width. If left blank, generic text will not be printed.

Data Selection for Open A/R Detail

Set the Payment/Item Document Type to NE (not equal) RE (change to invoice gross amount). The Open Amount should be NE *ZERO. Other data selections are optional.
Printing the Open A/R Foreign Amounts Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports

From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Open A/R Foreign Amounts

To review A/R detail for both foreign and domestic amounts, print the Open A/R Foreign Amounts report. This report is similar to the Open A/R Detail report, but includes:

- The base company currency
- The transaction currency
- The original and open foreign balances

Use a processing option to age the open A/R amounts from a specific date.

Before You Begin

☐ Set the multi-currency constant on Accounts Receivable Constants
## Processing Options for Open A/R with Foreign Amounts

**PRINT OPTIONS:**

1. Enter one of the following print formats:
   - ‘ ’ = Foreign and Domestic information. (132 characters)
   - ‘1’ = Aging information. (132 characters)
   - ‘2’ = Foreign and Domestic with aging information. (Long, 198 characters)

**AGING SPECIFICATIONS:**

2. If an aging format has been selected
   Enter a ‘1’ to retrieve the aging specifications from A/R Constants.
   If left blank, the processing option values for aging will be used.
   (NOTE: Report MUST be sequenced and set to page break by company if company defaults are requested.)
NOTE: If selected, all other aging processing options will be ignored.

"AS OF" DATE:
3. Enter the "As Of" date to age open balances. If left blank, the current date is used as the default.

ACCOUNT AGING:
4. Specify one of the following dates to age accounts from:
   D = Due Date (Default)
   I = Invoice Date
   G = G/L Date
   S = Statement Date

AGING CALCULATIONS:
5. Specify one of the following methods for aging calculations:
   1 = Aging Days (Default)
   2 = Fiscal Periods
   3 = Calendar

CATEGORY INFORMATION:
6. Enter the following aging category information: (for method "1" only)
   Aging Days: Beginning thru thru thru

CREDIT PROCESSING:
7. Enter a '1' to age credits amounts. If left blank (Default), credits will be applied to the current column.

COMMA SUPPRESSION:
8. Enter a '1' to suppress commas from the original, open, and discount amount columns, allowing these columns to display into the billions. If left blank (Default), commas will appear in these columns.

ROUNDING FACTOR:
9. Enter the desired rounding factor:
   ' ' = no rounding (Default)
   '0' = round decimals only
   '1' = divide by 10
   '2' = divide by 100
   '3' = divide by 1000
   '4' = divide by 10000
   '5' = divide by 100000
Rounding will be to whole numbers.
Actual amounts are used to accumulate totals.
Print Analytical Reports

Printing Analytical Reports

To review and analyze information about your customer’s accounts, print analytical reports.

Printing analytical reports consists of:

- Printing the Summary by Pay Status report
- Printing the Summary by Parent/Child report
- Printing the Open A/R by Business Unit and Address report
- Printing additional credit and collection reports
- Printing the Customer Totals by G/L Account report

The processing time for these reports depends on the amount of history retained in the Customer Master (F0301) and A/R Ledger (F0311) tables. Print analytical reports during off-peak hours.

Printing the Summary by Pay Status Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports
From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Summary by Pay Status

To review a summarized total of open amounts by customer and pay status, print the Summary by Pay Status report. Examples of pay status include:

- A (Approved for payment)
- H (Hold pending approval)
- P (Paid)
- R (Retainage)
## Receivable Summary by Pay Status

### As of 06/30/98

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Phone Number</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Current</th>
<th>31–60</th>
<th>61–90</th>
<th>91–120</th>
<th>Over 120</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7005</td>
<td>De Vydt S.A./N.V.</td>
<td>(32)3-687.01.00</td>
<td>Approved for Payment</td>
<td>750–</td>
<td>750–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7003</td>
<td>Euromart</td>
<td>(44)71-647-8802</td>
<td>Approved for Payment</td>
<td>543343</td>
<td>543343</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7007</td>
<td>International Enterp</td>
<td>2.779.1286</td>
<td>Approved for Payment</td>
<td>6015585</td>
<td>6015585</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Draft Accepted</td>
<td>53200</td>
<td>53200</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total International Enterp</td>
<td>6068785</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7006</td>
<td>International Transp</td>
<td>2.641.0700</td>
<td>Approved for Payment</td>
<td>843750</td>
<td>843750</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Draft Accepted</td>
<td>31250</td>
<td>31250</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total International Transp</td>
<td>875000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7001</td>
<td>JDE Europe</td>
<td>(32)2-647.08.00</td>
<td>Approved for Payment</td>
<td>778529</td>
<td>778529</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Draft Accepted</td>
<td>328987</td>
<td>328987</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total JDE Europe</td>
<td>1107516</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7002</td>
<td>JDE France</td>
<td>(33)1-40 90 08 07</td>
<td>Approved for Payment</td>
<td>6096</td>
<td>6096</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total Parker Supplies</td>
<td>21325</td>
<td>21325</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323213</td>
<td>Parker Supplies</td>
<td>42-72-40-60</td>
<td>Approved for Payment</td>
<td>21325</td>
<td>21325</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total Model Multi-National Corporate</td>
<td>8621315</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Processing Options for Summary by Pay Status

**AGING SPECIFICATIONS:**
1. Enter a ‘1’ to retrieve the aging specifications from Accounts Receivable Constants. Default of blank will use the processing options for aging.
   
   **NOTE:** If selected, all other aging processing options will be ignored.

**“AS OF” DATE:**
2. Enter the “As Of” date to age open balances. If left blank, the current date is used as the default.

**ACCOUNT AGING DATE:**
3. Specify one of the following dates to age accounts from:
   - D = Due Date
   - I = Invoice Date
   - G = General Ledger Date
S = Statement Date  
(If blank, "D" is default)

**DRAFT PROCESSING:**
4. Enter a '1' to age DRAFT amounts using the dates from the original invoice. Default of blank will perform aging using the draft dates.

**AGING CALCULATIONS:**
5. Specify one of the following methods for aging calculations:
   1 = Aging Days (Default)  
   2 = Fiscal Periods  
   3 = Calendar

**AGING CATEGORY INFORMATION:**
6. Enter the following aging category information: (for method 1 only)  
   Aging Days: Beginning thru thru thru thru

**CREDIT PROCESSING:**
7. Enter a '1' to age credits, a '2' to apply credits to the oldest balance, or a blank (default) to apply credits to the current column.

**PROMISES, PROMISES INFORMATION:**
8. Enter a '1' to print Promises, Promises information for each customer.

**"FROM" TICKLER DATE:**
9. Enter the "From" Tickler Date to print Promises, Promises information. If left blank, the current date will be used.

---

**Printing the Summary by Parent/Child Report**

1. From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports
2. From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Summary by Parent/Child

To review a multi-level management summary of A/R with both parent (national) and child (subsidiary) account totals, print the Summary by Parent/Child report.

This report can list up to 25 levels of parent-to-child relationships.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Phone Number</th>
<th>Balance</th>
<th>Open</th>
<th>Current</th>
<th>1 – 30</th>
<th>31 – 60</th>
<th>61 – 90</th>
<th>Over 90</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6390</td>
<td>Books Brothers</td>
<td>(202) 455-1111</td>
<td>00015</td>
<td>1500.00</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1863946</td>
<td>Brenda Zund</td>
<td>(303) 488-4000</td>
<td>00015</td>
<td>5050.00</td>
<td>2525</td>
<td>2525</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6533</td>
<td>Brookville Grille &amp; Door Co.</td>
<td>(303) 575-3251</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>23010.00</td>
<td>14975</td>
<td>3750</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8437</td>
<td>Brown, Harvey J.</td>
<td>(708) 575-1125</td>
<td>00015</td>
<td>5050.00</td>
<td>2525</td>
<td>2525</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5534</td>
<td>Cady, John</td>
<td>(303) 321-5646</td>
<td>00015</td>
<td>1500.00</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1862420</td>
<td>Cafe in the Park</td>
<td>(303) 951-3528</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>23010.00</td>
<td>14975</td>
<td>3750</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6349</td>
<td>Canadian Concrete Finishing</td>
<td>(303) 555-7599</td>
<td>00015</td>
<td>5050.00</td>
<td>2525</td>
<td>2525</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6365</td>
<td>Capable Cable Contractors</td>
<td>(303) 555-6577</td>
<td>00015</td>
<td>5050.00</td>
<td>2525</td>
<td>2525</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5362</td>
<td>Carbone &amp; Carlino</td>
<td>(303) 320-1956</td>
<td>00015</td>
<td>5050.00</td>
<td>2525</td>
<td>2525</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5362</td>
<td>Carriage Creations</td>
<td>(303) 797-2500</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>23010.00</td>
<td>14975</td>
<td>3750</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>750</td>
<td>Centennial Technical Park</td>
<td>(303) 555-1234</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>3860.20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>2840</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>250.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>751</td>
<td>Centennial Tech. Park Phase 1</td>
<td>(303) 555-1234</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>3860.20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>2840</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>250.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>752</td>
<td>Centennial Tech. Park Phase 2</td>
<td>(303) 555-1234</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>3860.20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>2840</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>250.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5805</td>
<td>Central Electric</td>
<td>(212) 455-5474</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>3860.20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>2840</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>250.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3001</td>
<td>Centrum Incorporated</td>
<td>(212) 629-3000</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>3860.20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>2840</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>250.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3002</td>
<td>Central Express Store</td>
<td>(303) 629-3002</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>4345.00</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>1300</td>
<td>4835.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3003</td>
<td>Central Specialty Store</td>
<td>(602) 629-3003</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>20100.00</td>
<td>3100</td>
<td>13075</td>
<td>2375</td>
<td>1750</td>
<td>994949.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3004</td>
<td>Centre Gift Store</td>
<td>(215) 629-3004</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>9025.21</td>
<td>750</td>
<td>5650</td>
<td>1890</td>
<td>735</td>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3005</td>
<td>Centralized Apparel</td>
<td>(404) 629-3400</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>15294.36</td>
<td>8925</td>
<td>2259</td>
<td>2610</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3005</td>
<td>Centralized Apparel</td>
<td>(404) 629-3400</td>
<td>00001</td>
<td>15294.36</td>
<td>8925</td>
<td>2259</td>
<td>2610</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Processing Options for Summary by Parent/Child

"AS OF" DATE:
1. Enter the "As Of" date to age open balances. If left blank, the current date is used as the default.

ACCOUNT AGING:
2. Specify one of the following dates to age accounts from:
   D = Due Date
   I = Invoice Date
   G = General Ledger Date
   S = Statement Date
   (If blank, "D" is default.)

AGING CALCULATIONS:
3. Specify one of the following methods for aging calculations:
   1 = Aging Days (Default)
   2 = Fiscal Periods
   3 = Calendar

AGING CATEGORIES:
4. Enter the following aging category information: (for method 1 only)
   Aging Days: Beginning
   thru
   thru
   thru
   More . .
   thru

CREDIT PROCESSING:
5. Enter a ‘1’ to age credits, a ‘2’ to apply credits to the oldest balance, or a blank (default) to apply credits to the current column.

"AS OF" DATE PROCESSING:
6. Enter a ‘1’ to use the "As Of" date process.

PROMISES, PROMISES INFORMATION:
7. Enter a ‘1’ to print Promises, Promises information for each customer.

"FROM" TICKLER DATE:
8. Enter the "From" Tickler Date to Promises, Promises information.
   If left blank, the current date will be used.

LEVEL OF DETAIL:
9. Enter the lowest level of detail to be printed (i.e. ‘1’ equals parent information only). Default of blanks will print all levels.

COMPANY:
10. Enter a company to process. Default of blank will process all companies.
Printing the Open A/R by Business Unit and Address Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports

From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Open A/R by BU and Address

To review open A/R detail by customer within a business unit, print the Open A/R by Business Unit and Address report. The totals are at the business unit and customer levels. You can print this report using information from the As of Ledger table (F0311A) to list A/R information as of a specific date.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Remark</th>
<th>Co Ty Number</th>
<th>Itm</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Open</th>
<th>Current</th>
<th>1 – 30</th>
<th>Over 30</th>
<th>Retained Amt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>07/25/98</td>
<td>Vehicle 257 Tune</td>
<td>1 RI</td>
<td></td>
<td>760 000</td>
<td>06/25/98</td>
<td>250.00</td>
<td>250</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08/24/98</td>
<td>Vehicle 246 Tune</td>
<td>1 RI</td>
<td></td>
<td>760 001</td>
<td>06/25/98</td>
<td>250.00</td>
<td>250</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/25/98</td>
<td>Vehicle 221 Pain</td>
<td>1 RI</td>
<td></td>
<td>760 002</td>
<td>06/25/98</td>
<td>300.00</td>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/25/98</td>
<td>Vehicle 243 Pain</td>
<td>1 RI</td>
<td></td>
<td>760 003</td>
<td>06/25/98</td>
<td>200.00</td>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/25/98</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 RI</td>
<td></td>
<td>6 000</td>
<td>06/25/98</td>
<td>1,073.00</td>
<td>1,073</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A&amp;B Electric Motor Servic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03/17/98</td>
<td>Dynamic Distribution Co.</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>833</td>
<td>000</td>
<td>02/15/98</td>
<td>1,510.15</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,510.15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03/03/98</td>
<td>Erickson Electric</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>834</td>
<td>000</td>
<td>02/15/98</td>
<td>2,500.15</td>
<td></td>
<td>2,500.15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02/14/98</td>
<td>Famous Fred’s Marine Supp</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>835</td>
<td>000</td>
<td>01/15/98</td>
<td>5,005.10</td>
<td></td>
<td>5,005.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03/03/98</td>
<td>General American</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>836</td>
<td>000</td>
<td>02/15/98</td>
<td>800.15</td>
<td></td>
<td>800.15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02/14/98</td>
<td>New York Office Supply</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>837</td>
<td>000</td>
<td>01/15/98</td>
<td>3,005.00</td>
<td></td>
<td>3,005.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/04/98</td>
<td>New York Office Supply</td>
<td>75 RI</td>
<td>1063</td>
<td>000</td>
<td>06/04/98</td>
<td>9,917.17</td>
<td></td>
<td>9,917.17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/15/98</td>
<td>London Development Group</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>4645</td>
<td>000</td>
<td>04/15/98</td>
<td>8,766.12</td>
<td></td>
<td>8,766.12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/15/98</td>
<td>Bonjour Baking Company</td>
<td>100 RI</td>
<td>2022</td>
<td>000</td>
<td>06/15/98</td>
<td>546.62</td>
<td></td>
<td>546.62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/15/98</td>
<td>Bonjour Baking Company</td>
<td>100 RI</td>
<td>2023</td>
<td>000</td>
<td>06/15/98</td>
<td>988.14</td>
<td></td>
<td>988.14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/20/98</td>
<td>Bonjour Baking Company</td>
<td>100 RI</td>
<td>2024</td>
<td>000</td>
<td>06/20/98</td>
<td>2,648.81</td>
<td></td>
<td>2,648.81</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/25/98</td>
<td>Bonjour Baking Company</td>
<td>100 RI</td>
<td>2025</td>
<td>000</td>
<td>06/25/98</td>
<td>774.90</td>
<td></td>
<td>774.90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/27/98</td>
<td>Bonjour Baking Company</td>
<td>100 RI</td>
<td>2049</td>
<td>001</td>
<td>06/27/98</td>
<td>5,216.60</td>
<td></td>
<td>5,216.60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Processing Options for A/R Detail Report by Business Unit/Address

PRINT FORMATS:
1. Enter one of the following print formats:
   ' ' = 132 characters, without aging. (Default)
   '1' = 132 characters, with aging.
   '2' = 198 characters, with foreign currency aging.

SUBHEADINGS:
2. Enter a '1' to have the report subheading appear with Business Unit first and Address second. If left blank, Address will be first and Business Unit will be second.

"AS OF" AGING:
3. Enter the "As Of" date to age open balances. If left blank, the current date is used as the default.

ACCOUNT AGING:
4. Specify one of the following dates to age accounts from:
   D = Due Date
   I = Invoice Date
   G = General Ledger Date
   S = Statement Date
   (If blank, "D" is default.)

AGING CALCULATIONS:
5. Specify one of the following methods for aging calculations:
   1 = Aging Days (Default)
   2 = Fiscal Periods
   3 = Calendar

AGING CATEGORY INFORMATION:
6. Enter the following aging category information: (for method "1" only)
   Aging Days: Beginning
   thru
   thru
   thru

"AS OF" DATE PROCESSING:
7. Enter a '1' to use "As Of" date process. (Note: DREAM Writer Based on File must be F0311A)

PROMISES, PROMISES INFORMATION:
8. Enter a '1' to print Promises, Promises information for each customer.

"FROM" TICKLER DATE:
9. Enter the "From" Tickler Date to print Promises, Promises information. If left blank, the current date will be used.

ROUNDING FACTOR:
10. Enter required rounding factor: ______________________
   ' ' = no rounding (Default)
   '0' = round decimals only
   '1' = divide by 10
   '2' = divide by 100
   '3' = divide by 1,000
   '4' = divide by 10,000
   '5' = divide by 100,000
   '6' = divide by 1,000,000
   Any value of 0 - 6 will round decimals to whole numbers. Amounts are divided using 4/5 rounding. Actual amounts are used to accumulate total fields.

RETAINAGE:
11. Enter a '1' to show retainage amounts in the fourth aging column. If left blank, the retainage column won’t appear on the report. (Note: a '1' will reduce domestic and foreign aging categories from four to three.)

TOTAL MATCHING DOCUMENTS:
12. Enter a '1' to include matching document amounts in the Original total column on the report. If left blank, only original document amounts will be included.

Data Selection and Sequence for Open A/R by Business Unit

The following data selections are mandatory:

- Payment/Item Document Type = NE (not equal to) RE (change in invoice gross amount)
- Type Input = NE G
- Pay Status = NE #Value
- Open Amount = NE # Value

All other data selections are optional.

Business unit and parent must appear first in the data sequence. After these two criteria, you can add other sequencing and totaling lines. To print a new page for each business unit, set the Page Break field for each business unit accordingly.
Printing Additional Credit and Collections Reports

To assist you in managing your credit and collections activities for your customer accounts, you can print various credit and collections reports.

Printing additional credit and collections reports consists of:

- Printing the Customer Receipts History report
- Printing the Disputed Items (Outstanding Chargebacks) report
- Printing the Unresolved Matters report
- Printing the Problem Accounts Receivable report

All of these reports are versions of the Open A/R Detail report.

Printing the Customer Receipts History Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports

From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Customer Receipts History

To review both paid and open items for each customer, print the Customer Receipts History report. The information on this report is similar to the information you can view on Customer Ledger Inquiry.
Processing Options for Customer Receipts History

PRINT OPTIONS:
1. Enter one of the following formats:  
   ' ' = 132 characters; aging without  
   G/L offset. (Default)  
   '1' = 198 characters; 6 aging  
   categories.  
   '2' = 132 characters; discount, G/L  
   offset, and remark.  
   '3' = 132 characters; aging with  
   G/L offset.

AGING SPECIFICATIONS:
2. If an aging report has been selected:  
Enter a '1' to retrieve the aging  
specifications from A/R Constants.  
Default of blank will use the process-  
ing options for aging.  
(NOTE: Report MUST be sequenced and  
set to page break by company if  
company defaults are requested)  
NOTE: If selected, all other aging  
processing options will be ignored.

"AS OF" DATE:
3. Enter the "As Of" date to age open  
   balances. If left blank, the current  
   date is used as the default.

ACCOUNT AGING:
4. Specify one of the following dates to  
   age accounts from:  
   D = Due Date  
   I = Invoice Date  
   G = General Ledger Date  
   S = Statement Date

AGING CALCULATIONS:
5. Specify one of the following methods  
   for aging calculations:  
   1 = Aging Days (Default)  
   2 = Fiscal Periods  
   3 = Calendar

CATEGORY INFORMATION:
6. Enter the following aging category  
   information: (for method "1" only)  
   Aging Days:  
   Beginning  
   thru  
   thru  
   thru  
   thru

CREDIT PROCESSING:
7. Enter a '1' to age credits or a  
   blank (default) to apply credits to  
   the current column.

"AS OF" DATE PROCESSING:
8. Enter a '1' to use "As Of" date  
   process. (Note: DREAM Writer Based-On  
   file must be F0311A)
PROMISES, PROMISES INFORMATION:
9. Enter one of the following:                      ____________
   ' ' = No Messages print    (Default)
   '1' = Print message type P
   '2' = Print message type P and F
   '3' = Print all messages

"FROM" TICKLER DATE:
10. Enter "From" Tickler Date to print              ____________
    Promises, Promises information.
    If left blank, the current date will
    be used.

CONTACT NAMES:
11. Enter a '1' to print contact names              ____________
    from the Who's Who file. If left
    blank, contact names will not be
    included on the report

ROUNDING FACTOR:
12. Enter desired rounding factor:                  ____________
    ' ' = No rounding
    '0' = Round decimals only
    '1' = Divide by 10
    '2' = Divide by 100
    '3' = Divide by 1000
    '4' = Divide by 10000
    '5' = Divide by 100000
    '6' = Divide by 1000000
    Any value from 0-6 will round the
decimals to whole numbers. Amounts are
divided using 4/5 rounding. Actual
amounts are used to accumulate total
fields.

DRAFTS:
13. Enter a '1' to print a separate                 ____________
    draft amount on the report. If left
    blank, the draft column will not
    appear on the report. (This applies
to all formats except long aging).

GENERIC TEXT:
14. Enter a '1' to print the generic                ____________
    text for pay items in a 40 character
    width, a '2' to print text in an 80
    character width. If left blank,
generic text will not be printed.
Data Selection for the Customer Receipts History Report

You can change the data selection. For example:

- To exclude audit trails for amounts changed in posted invoices, set the Payment/Item Document Type field to N (not equal) RE
- To exclude general ledger receipts, set the Type Input field to NE (not equal) G (general ledger)

The following data selections are mandatory:

- Payment/Item Document Type = NE RE
- Type Input = NE G

Printing the Disputed Items (Outstanding Chargebacks) Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports

From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Disputed Items/Chargebacks

To review unpaid chargeback invoices, print the Disputed Items (Outstanding Chargebacks) report. This report lists the chargeback invoices you created on Receipts Entry to rebill customers for the open amount on partially paid or disputed items.

For example, a chargeback might be for freight charges or disallowed discounts.
Printing the Unresolved Matters Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports

From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Unresolved Matters

To determine the problems that need to be resolved with your customer accounts, print the Unresolved Matters report. This report lists problem invoices and unusual conditions, such as:

- Unapplied receipts
- Unapplied credit memos
- Chargeback invoices
- Partially paid balances

The Unresolved Matters report reads information from the A/R Ledger table. Printing this report does not adjust the status of any item.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Number/Name</th>
<th>Base Currency</th>
<th>Customer</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Document Number</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Gross Amount</th>
<th>Open Amount</th>
<th>Discount</th>
<th>Remark</th>
<th>Gross Amount</th>
<th>Open Amount</th>
<th>Foreign Currency</th>
<th>Transaction Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4006 A&amp;B Electric Motor Service</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2082-001</td>
<td>06/25/98</td>
<td>1,073.00</td>
<td>1,073.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2313 Baker Manufacturing, Ltd</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>838-000</td>
<td>06/28/98</td>
<td>3,752.00</td>
<td>3,752.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6795 Bonjour Baking Company</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2022-000</td>
<td>04/15/98</td>
<td>948.62</td>
<td>948.62</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1,200.00</td>
<td>CAD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2024-000</td>
<td>06/20/98</td>
<td>2,648.81</td>
<td>2,648.81</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3,350.75</td>
<td>CAD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2025-000</td>
<td>06/25/98</td>
<td>774.90</td>
<td>774.90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>980.25</td>
<td>CAD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2049-001</td>
<td>06/27/98</td>
<td>5,216.60</td>
<td>5,216.60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6,599.00</td>
<td>CAD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3030 Carriage Creations</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2037-001</td>
<td>06/30/98</td>
<td>5,000.00</td>
<td>5,000.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2039-001</td>
<td>06/22/98</td>
<td>2,000.00</td>
<td>2,000.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2039-002</td>
<td>06/22/98</td>
<td>2,000.00</td>
<td>2,000.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2042-001</td>
<td>06/30/98</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RC</td>
<td>4738-004</td>
<td>04/12/98</td>
<td>2,175.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2052-001</td>
<td>05/14/98</td>
<td>1,500.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2054-001</td>
<td>05/14/98</td>
<td>1,610.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RC</td>
<td>4738-006</td>
<td>05/14/98</td>
<td>1,610.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2058-001</td>
<td>05/17/98</td>
<td>2,200.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2062-001</td>
<td>05/18/98</td>
<td>250.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2065-001</td>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td>5,875.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2070-001</td>
<td>06/15/98</td>
<td>300.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2070-001</td>
<td>06/15/98</td>
<td>300.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1,073.00
3,752.00
3,752.00
10,577.07
19,225.00
85,787.00
Processing Options for Unresolved A/R Matters Report

INVOICE SELECTIONS:
1. Enter one of the following choices for invoice selection:
   1 = Partially Paid Invoices Only
   2 = Problem Invoices Only
   3 = All Invoices
If left blank, only partially paid invoices will be printed.

Data Selection and Sequence for the Unresolved Matters Report

The data sequence for this report is mandatory. The totals are dependent on this exact sequence. If you modify the sequence, you must also modify the totaling logic of the program.

Printing the Problem Accounts Receivable Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports

From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Problem Accounts Receivable

To review a list of your customer accounts in need of attention, print the Problem Accounts Receivable report. This report lists a specified number of problem accounts, such as the account with the oldest and largest open amount.

When you print the Problem Accounts Receivable report, the system creates a worktable in order to rank the accounts. The system ranks customers first by the largest amount due and then by the greatest number of days overdue.
### Processing Options for Problem Accounts Receivable

**NUMBER OF ACCOUNTS ON REPORT:**
1. Enter the number of problem accounts to be printed. The default will be 50.

**"AS OF" DATE:**
2. Enter the “As Of” date to age open balances. If left blank, the current date is used as the default.

**AGING OPTIONS:**
3. Specify one of the following dates to age accounts from:
   - D = Due Date
   - I = Invoice Date
   - G = General Ledger Date
   - S = Statement Date
   (If blank, "D" is default.)

4. Specify one of the following methods for aging calculations:
   - 1 = Aging Days (Default)
   - 2 = Fiscal Periods
   - 3 = Calendar

**AGING OPTIONS (CONT’D)**
5. Enter the following aging category information: (for method “1” only)
   **Aging Days:**
   - Beginning
   - thru
   - thru
   - thru

---

### Accounts Receivable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Phone Number</th>
<th>Co</th>
<th>Balance</th>
<th>Open</th>
<th>Current</th>
<th>31 - 60</th>
<th>61 - 90</th>
<th>91 - 120</th>
<th>Over 120</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4242</td>
<td>Corporate Office</td>
<td>(773) 800</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>3130266.77</td>
<td>3130266.77</td>
<td>3130266.77</td>
<td>9587594.10</td>
<td>11/30/97</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1002</td>
<td>Edwards &amp; Edna</td>
<td>(214) 751</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>298250.82</td>
<td>298233.67</td>
<td>298233.67</td>
<td>1726758.87</td>
<td>03/19/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1001</td>
<td>Edwards, J.D.</td>
<td>(303) 720</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>62355.64</td>
<td>62355.64</td>
<td>62355.64</td>
<td>337613.42</td>
<td>04/14/97</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7003</td>
<td>Eurostar</td>
<td>(44) 71-647-8802</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>37301.59</td>
<td>37301.59</td>
<td>37301.59</td>
<td>1171.34</td>
<td>06/20/97</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3333</td>
<td>Couriers Express</td>
<td>(61) 775-5380</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>26546.51</td>
<td>26546.51</td>
<td>26546.51</td>
<td>1726758.87</td>
<td>03/19/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3030</td>
<td>Carriage Crewe</td>
<td>(303) 797-2500</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>19225.00</td>
<td>19225.00</td>
<td>19225.00</td>
<td>337613.42</td>
<td>06/20/97</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7001</td>
<td>JDE Europe</td>
<td>(32) 12-647-08.00</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>10986.72</td>
<td>10986.72</td>
<td>10986.72</td>
<td>745.32</td>
<td>07/15/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7038</td>
<td>Meier &amp; Sohn</td>
<td>(84) 41 44 31</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>10038.30</td>
<td>10038.30</td>
<td>10038.30</td>
<td>10038.30</td>
<td>01/30/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6795</td>
<td>Bonjour Baking</td>
<td>(41) 679-1519</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>10038.30</td>
<td>10038.30</td>
<td>10038.30</td>
<td>10038.30</td>
<td>01/30/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5768</td>
<td>London Develop</td>
<td>(213) 765-5000</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>8764.12</td>
<td>8764.12</td>
<td>8764.12</td>
<td>8764.12</td>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3005</td>
<td>Centralized Ap</td>
<td>(404) 252-3400</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>6000.00</td>
<td>6000.00</td>
<td>6000.00</td>
<td>6000.00</td>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5717</td>
<td>Famous Fred's</td>
<td>(516) 892-9877</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>5000.15</td>
<td>5000.15</td>
<td>5000.15</td>
<td>5000.15</td>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2313</td>
<td>Baker Manufact</td>
<td>(303) 720</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>3750.00</td>
<td>3750.00</td>
<td>3750.00</td>
<td>3750.00</td>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3004</td>
<td>Centre Gift St</td>
<td>(215) 250-3004</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>3750.00</td>
<td>3750.00</td>
<td>3750.00</td>
<td>3750.00</td>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7002</td>
<td>JDE France</td>
<td>(31) 11-90 95 08</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>3086.93</td>
<td>3086.93</td>
<td>3086.93</td>
<td>3086.93</td>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5743</td>
<td>Newark Office</td>
<td>(214) 557-557</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5748</td>
<td>Dynamic Distri</td>
<td>(213) 557-557</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>1510.15</td>
<td>1510.15</td>
<td>1510.15</td>
<td>1510.15</td>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5725</td>
<td>General America</td>
<td>(303) 746-7554</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>800.15</td>
<td>800.15</td>
<td>800.15</td>
<td>800.15</td>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2330</td>
<td>Dunlop Constro</td>
<td>(212) 545-5000</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td>450.00</td>
<td>450.00</td>
<td>450.00</td>
<td>450.00</td>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Data Sequence for the Problem Accounts Receivable Report

The data sequence for this report is mandatory. The totals are dependent on this exact sequence. If you modify the sequence, you must also modify the totaling logic of the program.

Printing the Customer Totals by G/L Account Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Accounts Receivable Reports

From Accounts Receivable Reports (G0314), choose Customer Totals by G/L Account

To review a list of all G/L account totals for a customer, print the Customer Totals by G/L Account report. This report selects and prints information from the Account Ledger table (F0911) and lists totals associated with each customer.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account Number</th>
<th>Address Number</th>
<th>Alpha Name</th>
<th>G/L</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Do Ty Number</th>
<th>Doc</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Co</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>P</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>210.5030</td>
<td>00005768</td>
<td>London Development Group</td>
<td>05/31/98</td>
<td>Contract Sales</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2033</td>
<td>3,377.25</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210.5030</td>
<td>00007001</td>
<td>JDE Europe</td>
<td>06/30/98</td>
<td>Denver Sales</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2048</td>
<td>7,936.51</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210.5030</td>
<td>00007003</td>
<td>Euromart</td>
<td>06/30/98</td>
<td></td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>89465</td>
<td>29,365.08</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210.5030</td>
<td>00007008</td>
<td>Product A Contract Sales</td>
<td>04/30/98</td>
<td></td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2029</td>
<td>3,128.91</td>
<td>00100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Processing Options for Customer Totals by G/L Account

ACCOUNT DISPLAY MODE:
1. Enter the type of account number to print on the Report.
   ' ' = Number entered during input.
   '1' = Structured Account.
   '2' = Short Account ID.
   '3' = Unstructured Account Number

DISPLAY ADDRESS:
2. Enter a '1' to print the supplier/customer address. If left blank, no address will print.

Data Sequence for the Customer Totals by G/L Account Report

If you specify customer totals based on the AA ledger, the totaling sequence is address number, account ID, business unit, and company. If you specify customer totals based on the CA ledger, the totaling sequence is address number, currency code, and account ID.
A/R Draft Processing

Objectives

- To initiate draft processing
- To enter drafts
- To revise draft information
- To review and post drafts
- To prepare drafts for remittance
- To remit drafts to your bank on magnetic tape or paper
- To set up required information for draft processing

About A/R Draft Processing

The Accounts Receivable system provides an effective way to process drafts. A draft is a promise to pay a debt. Its existence changes the legal nature of the underlying liabilities. Therefore, you must classify, track, and report drafts separately from other types of obligations.

A/R draft processing consists of:

- Printing invoices and statements with drafts (optional)
- Entering drafts
- Revising drafts
- Approving and posting A/R drafts
- Selecting drafts for remittance (optional)
- Working with draft remittance
- Working with draft collections
What Are the Types of Drafts?

Two types of drafts are available:

**Manual drafts**  
Manual drafts are also called customer acceptance drafts because they must be accepted by the customer before they can be remitted to the bank. Several types of manual drafts are available:

- The supplier prints the draft with bank account information.
- The supplier prints the draft with the bank name only.
- The customer prints the draft with bank account information.
- The customer prints the draft with the bank name only.

The system distinguishes drafts with only a bank name from those with complete bank account information. This is because banks generally assess an additional fee to collect drafts if incomplete information is provided.

**Automatic drafts**  
Automatic drafts are also called pre-authorized drafts because the draft does not require customer acceptance. The supplier and customer agree in advance that the obligation will be represented with a draft. The supplier does not print and send a draft to the customer, but instead sends the draft to the supplier’s bank for collection.

What Are the Steps for Processing Drafts?

The following graphic illustrates the process flow for drafts.
Invoice Creation

Draft Acceptance

Draft Remittance

Draft Collection

Draft Organization
**Invoice Creation**

1. A customer purchases goods or services from you.
2. You enter and post an invoice. This debits accounts receivable and credits sales.

The invoice is open. No draft exists.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Customer Number 7001</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Doc Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Draft Origination**

1. You or your customer originate a draft. The draft shows the amount to be paid, the due date, banking information, and, possibly, information about the underlying liabilities (the invoices).

If you originate the draft, you can include invoices or statements. Some customers expect one draft per invoice. Other customers expect one draft for a statement of invoices. You can either send invoices with drafts attached or send statements with drafts attached.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Customer Number 7001</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Doc Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This step has no effect on the general ledger.
Draft Acceptance

1. Your customer accepts the draft.

For manual drafts, your customer can do any of the following:

- Sign and return it to you
- Change the draft (date, amount, bank, and so on), then sign and return it to you
- Print, sign, and send the customer’s own draft to you

For automatic drafts, the draft is accepted without a response from your customer.

The draft has no legal force until the customer accepts it.

2. You enter and post the draft, whether it is manual or automatic. This credits accounts receivable and debits drafts receivable.

The invoice has been closed. The draft has been created and accepted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Customer Number 7001</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Doc Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Draft Remittance

1. You send (remit) the draft to your bank so it can collect the funds from your customer's bank. You can remit the draft either on magnetic tape or diskette, or by printing a register.

2. You can arrange to collect funds from the draft in one of the following ways:

- Wait until the funds become available on the due date specified by the draft.
- Request an advance from your bank before the due date of the draft. Typically, banks discount a draft (charge interest) when they advance funds for a draft before its due date.
3. The system creates a journal entry to credit drafts receivable and debit drafts remitted. You post the journal entry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Customer Number 7001</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Doc Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drafts Receivable</th>
<th>Drafts Remitted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>10,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Draft Collection**

1. Your bank collects the funds for the draft from the customer's bank on the due date of the draft. Your bank informs you if it cannot collect the funds.

2. On or after the due date, both the supplier and the customer recognize the transfer of cash. You update the status of the draft in your records to show that it was collected.

3. The system creates a journal entry to credit drafts remitted and debit a cash account. You post the journal entry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Customer Number 7001</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Doc Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drafts Remitted</th>
<th>Cash Bank Account</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>10,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following graphic illustrates the effect of each stage of the draft process on the general ledger.

- **Invoice Creation**: Liability is Incurred
- **Draft Acceptance**: Print details
  - Draft Receivable
  - G/L A/R Trade
  - 10,000 10,000
- **Draft Remittance**: Draft is selected for payment
  - Draft Remitted
  - G/L Draft Receivable
  - 10,000 10,000
- **Draft Collection**: Draft is paid
  - Draft Receivable
  - G/L Cash
  - 10,000 10,000
Print Invoices and Statements with Drafts

Printing Invoices and Statements with Drafts

The draft process begins when you or your customer originate a draft. When you originate a draft, you can print a statement or invoice with a draft attachment to send to your customer. Some customers expect one draft per invoice. Other customers expect one draft for a statement of invoices. You can either send invoices with drafts attached or send statements with drafts attached.

The default draft format conforms to the French Bank Association format. Users in other countries might need to modify the format for their specifications. Invoices and statements use the standard J.D. Edwards report formats.

Printing invoices and statements with drafts consists of:

- Printing invoices with draft attachments
- Printing statements with draft attachments

Printing Invoices with Draft Attachments

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Daily Operations

From A/R Draft Daily Operations (G031111), choose Invoice Print with Draft

To print an A/R invoice with an attached draft for chargebacks, credit memos, and finance charges, run Invoice Print with Draft.

This program selects transactions from the A/R Ledger table (F0311). The system assigns a draft number and updates the statement number on the invoice record. The system also prints the draft number on the invoice record and the customer’s bank account on the draft attachment.

The processing time for this report is related to the amount of history retained in the A/R Ledger table.
Please be advised that your account has been debited or back charged as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Document</th>
<th>Invoice Date</th>
<th>Ty</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Remark</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>07/01/98</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>001</td>
<td>07/31/98</td>
<td>Misc Sales</td>
<td>15,895</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total Invoice Amount: 15,895

Tax Amount: 3,100

Balance Due: 18,995

A Model Multi-National Co.
Avenue Louise, 200
B-1050 Brussels

PARIS

*******18,995 04/19/98 07/31/98 00000584 *******18,995

10729 81042310-0368111 55 International Transport Bank Bruxelles Lambert
Ch. de Wavre, 297
BEF 1050 Bruxelles
Processing Options for A/R Invoice Print with Draft

INVOICE DATE RANGE:
1. Enter the As Of invoice date after which all invoices should be printed. Range will include the date entered. Mandatory entry.

2. Enter the cut off invoice date before which all invoices should be printed. Range will include the date entered. Mandatory entry.

FOREIGN CURRENCY:
3. Enter a '1' to print the invoice using the foreign amount. Default of blank will print the domestic amount.

TAX AMOUNTS:
4. Enter a '1' to print tax amount on the invoice. Default of blank will not print tax amounts.

DRAFT – ORIGINATING CITY:
5. Enter the city name where the draft is being originated to be printed on the draft.

Data Selection and Sequence for Invoice Print with Draft

The Payment Instrument field is set to EQ (equal) D so that it selects only invoices for draft customers. You can enter a user defined code other than D to identify draft customers.

The following data sequence is required:

1. Address Number
2. Document Company
3. Document Type
4. Document Number

If you change this sequence, the totals will be inaccurate.
Printing Statements with Draft Attachments

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Daily Operations

From A/R Draft Daily Operations (G031111), choose Statement Print with Draft

To print a statement with one or more invoices combined into one draft, run Statement Print with Draft.

This program processes transactions from the A/R Ledger table. The system assigns a draft number to the statement and updates the statement number for each invoice on the statement. The system also prints the draft number on the invoice record and the customer’s bank account on the draft attachment.

Before You Begin

☐ Set Print Statement field on Customer Master Information to N for each customer for whom you print drafts. If you do not, the system generates an error and does not print a statement.
Your Account with us reflects the following amount due.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Ty</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Document</th>
<th>Invoice</th>
<th>Open</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>05/20/98</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>602 000</td>
<td></td>
<td>4,020,565</td>
<td>4,020,565</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Balance Due: 4,020,565

A Model Multi-National Co.
Avenue Louise, 200
B-1050 Brussels

PARIS

****4,020,565
04/19/98 06/19/98 00000585

10024 2126230-352702 33 International Enterprises
Generale Bank
Avenue Louise, 1250
BEF 1050 Bruxelles
Processing Options for A/R Statements with Draft

CUTOFF DATE:
1. Enter the invoice cut off date. 
   Invoices with an invoice date after 
   this date will not be printed. If no 
   date is entered, it will default to 
   the system date.

ZERO/CREDIT STATEMENTS:
2. Enter a ‘1’ to omit the printing of 
   statements with a zero or credit 
   balance.

FOREIGN CURRENCY:
3. Enter a ‘1’ to print the statements 
   using the foreign amounts. Default 
   of blank will print statements in the 
   domestic amount.

DRAFT - ORIGINATING CITY:
4. Enter the city name where the draft 
   is being originated to be printed on 
   the draft.

Data Selection and Sequence for Statement Print with Draft

The following data selections are required:

- Payment/Item Document Type does not equal (NE) RE (change to invoice amount)
- Type Input does not equal (NE) G (general ledger)

The Payment Instrument field is a user defined value that identifies your customers who pay by draft. Generally, you set this field to equal (EQ) F (draft statements) on Customer Master Information.

The following data sequence is required:

1. Company
2. Address Number
3. Due Date
4. Currency Code
5. Document Number

If you change this sequence, the totals will be inaccurate.
Entering Drafts

Whether you originate the draft or your customer does, you must enter it into the Accounts Receivable system before you can process it. Entering a draft is equivalent to accepting it.

Entering drafts consists of:

- Entering manual drafts
- Creating automatic drafts

When you enter drafts, the system processes them in the same way as receipts except that the system:

- Applies draft receipts to open customer invoices.
- Uses matching document type R1 to close invoices (one per pay item).
- Records the total draft amount in the A/R Ledger table (F0311) as a new original document type R1.
- Uses batch type * (asterisk).
- Validates the draft number against the draft number created if you used Invoice Print with Draft or Statement Print with Draft. This only applies to entering manual drafts originated by your customer.
- Uses AAI item RD1x (where x is the payment instrument) to determine the drafts receivable account.
- Sets the payment status to D (draft accepted).
**Entering Manual Drafts**

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Daily Operations

From A/R Draft Daily Operations (G031111), choose Enter Our Drafts or Enter Customer Drafts

You use one of the following forms to enter a draft manually, depending on whether you originate the draft or your customer does:

**Enter Our Drafts** Use this form when your company originates drafts for the customer to sign and return.

**Enter Customer Drafts** Use this form when the customer originates the draft and sends it to your company to be accepted.

The fields you complete on Enter Our Drafts and Enter Customer Drafts are the same.

▶ **To enter manual drafts**

On Enter Our Drafts or Enter Customer Drafts
1. Complete the following fields:
   - Draft Number
   - Company
   - Draft Amount
   - Customer Bank Account Number
   - Draft Date
   - Deposit Date (G/L)
   - Due Date
   - Remark (optional)
   - Reference (optional)

2. Complete the following fields for each pay item:
   - Amount Applied
   - Account (Customer) Number
   - Invoice Number (optional)
   - Pay Item

3. Access the detail area (optional).

4. Complete the following optional fields:
   - Remark
   - Offset
5. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Draft Number  | The number of the document, such as a receipt, an adjustment, or a credit that you apply against an original document, such as an invoice. For example:  
   - Original (DOC)–Matching Rec/Item (DOCM)  
   - A/R Original Invoice – Invoice  
   - Receipt – Invoice – Receipt  
   - Credit Memo/Adjustment – Invoice – Credit Memo  
   A customer's document number on a receipt. This number must be unique within the batch. It can also be an item number used for spreads, adjustments, or other types of receipts. |
| Draft Amount  | The amount of the receipt from the customer. This amount must balance to the detail of the amount applied to the open invoices. |
| Reference     | An alphanumeric value used as a cross-reference or secondary reference number. Typically, this is the customer number, supplier number, or job number.  
   ............... Form-specific information ...............  
   This field is commonly used to identify the original invoice number because the system does not identify it when it creates an R1 original draft document. |

**What You Should Know About**

**Including a reference number during draft entry**

When entering a draft, you might want to include a reference number on it. French clients commonly do this so that the reference number appears:

- In the magnetic draft file
- On the paper draft

Although French clients do not generally enter more than a 10-character reference number, the Reference Number on Enter Drafts can handle up to 25 characters. This makes the reference number useful for other countries. This number is for informational purposes only.
See Also

- Entering Basic Receipts (P03103)

Processing Options for Drafts Entry

DRAFT PROCESSING:
26. Enter a ‘1’ to process drafts. Leave blank for normal mode.
   Note: Normal cash receipts can not be entered in draft mode. If you do both receipt processing and draft processing, you will need to set up two versions, one in draft mode and one in normal mode.

The following options only apply if draft mode is turned on in option 25.

27. Enter a ‘1’ to process customer generated drafts (BOR or BOC).
   Leave blank to process supplier generated drafts (LCR or LCC) and validate the draft number entered against the assigned draft number.

28. Enter a ‘1’ to allow entry of the alpha name.

29. Enter the default Payment Instrument for drafts WITH bank account numbers. (LCR or BOR)

30. Enter the default Payment Instrument for drafts WITHOUT bank account numbers. (LCC or BOC)

31. Enter the override Drafts Receivable short account number.
   Note: If an account is not entered, it will be assigned from the AAIs Drafts Receivable account (RD1x, where x is the Payment Instrument).
Creating Automatic Drafts

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G0311), choose Draft Daily Operations

From A/R Draft Daily Operations (G03111), choose Pre-authorized Drafts

In some cases, the supplier and customer might agree in advance that the customer pays with a draft. The supplier does not print and send a draft to the customer, but instead sends the draft to the supplier's bank for collection. The supplier's bank collects funds from the customer's bank. This process is called automatic or pre-authorized draft processing.

You create automatic drafts by running Pre-authorized Drafts. You can run this program in either proof or final mode.

**Proof mode**

You can choose to print a detailed or summarized list of transactions:

- **Detail** – prints a list of each invoice to be paid by draft.
- **Summary** – prints a summary of all invoices by customer, due date, and payment instrument to be paid by draft

**Final mode**

You can make the same selections as in proof mode. In final mode, the system:

- Creates drafts
- Creates the journal entries that debit the drafts receivable account and credit the accounts receivable account
- Changes the pay status to D (draft accepted)
- Generates a report
- Creates a table you can copy to tape

Whichever mode you choose, you can review the information and make necessary changes. You can use the Standard Invoice Entry form or the Speed Status Change form to change the pay status.
### What You Should Know About

#### Abbreviated column headings

- **PI** indicates Payment Instrument
Revise Drafts

Revising Drafts

After a draft has been accepted, you can revise it, for example, to change the bank account from which it will be paid.

Revising drafts consists of:

- Locating drafts
- Changing draft information
- Updating drafts for payment

Locating Drafts

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Daily Operations

From A/R Draft Daily Operations (G031111), choose Draft Inquiry

You can locate a draft to:

- View draft information based on specific criteria
- Verify information for a particular customer
- Change draft information

To locate drafts

On Draft Inquiry
1. Complete the following field:
   - Address Number

2. Complete any of the following fields to limit your search:
   - Payment Instrument
   - Net Due Date
   - Status
   - Paid

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>A user defined code (00/PS) that indicates the current payment status for a voucher or an invoice. Codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See Also

- Locating Customer Ledger Information (P032002) for other methods of locating drafts

Changing Draft Information

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Daily Operations

From A/R Draft Daily Operations (G031111), choose Draft Revisions

After you enter drafts but before you post them to the general ledger, you can change the pay status, customer bank account, payor, net due date, or payment instrument.

The following guidelines apply to changing draft information:

- You can only change drafts with a pay status of D (draft accepted) or H (hold, pending approval).
- You can change the pay status to D or H only.
- You cannot add or delete drafts.
- You cannot change:
  - Draft number
  - Document company
  - Gross amount
  - Customer number
  - Creation date
  - Register number/date
  - G/L bank account

To change draft information

On Draft Revisions
1. Locate the appropriate draft.
2. Change any of the following fields:
   - Pay Status
   - Customer Bank Account
   - Payor
   - Net Due Date
   - Payment Instrument

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Payor</td>
<td>The text that names or describes an address. This 40-character alphabetic field appears on a number of forms and reports. You can enter dashes, commas, and other special characters, but the system cannot search on them when you use this field to search for a name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Processing Options for A/R Draft Revisions**

**REVERSE DRAFTS REMITTED:**
1. Enter a ‘1’ to allow for the pay status to be changed from a type ‘G’ to type ‘D’. This will allow for the re-remittance of a draft.
Updating Drafts for Payment

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Daily Operations

From A/R Draft Daily Operations (G031111), choose Speed Status Change

To quickly change the payment status and due dates of your open drafts, use Speed Status Change. You can:

- Update individual drafts
- Update a group of drafts

Speed Status Change is the same program you use to update invoices. However, when you use it to update drafts, the system does not display drafts with the following payment status codes, because they cannot be changed:

- P (paid in full)
- # (payment in progress)
- G (draft remitted, but not collected)
- E (draft expired – draft deposited, but no bank confirmation)

To update drafts for payment

On Speed Status Change
Follow the steps to update an invoice for payment.

See Updating Invoices for Payment.

What You Should Know About

Data security

You should consider implementing action code security for this form to ensure that important fields are not changed, for example, Due Date and Pay Status.
Approve and Post A/R Drafts

Approving and Posting Drafts

After you enter drafts, you must approve and post them to the general ledger.

Approving and posting drafts consists of:

- Reviewing and approving drafts for A/R
- Printing the A/R Draft Journal report
- Posting drafts for A/R

Reviewing and Approving Drafts for A/R

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Daily Operations

From A/R Draft Daily Operations (G031111), choose Draft Journal Review

After you enter drafts, you review and approve them before posting them to the general ledger. You can do this online using Draft Journal Review. All J.D. Edwards journal review programs work in the same way. Draft Journal Review only displays drafts with a batch type of * (draft receipts).

You do not need to approve drafts if the management approval of input constant is not activated.

Before You Begin

- Set the A/R constant for management approval of input according to your needs

See Also

- Reviewing and Approving Invoices (P00201)
Printing the A/R Draft Journal Report

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G0311), choose Draft Daily Operations

From A/R Draft Daily Operations (G03111), choose Draft Journal Report

As an alternative to reviewing drafts online, you can print the Draft Journal report. This report is the same as the Receipts and Adjustment Journal report. The only difference between them is that one lists cash receipts and the other lists draft receipts.

Generally, it is easier to view drafts online. However, if there is a balancing problem, the printed journal can be a more workable format for detail review.

The processing time for this report is related to the amount of history retained in the A/R Ledger table (F0311).

---

See Also

- Printing Invoice Journal Information (P03305)
Processing Options for Draft Journal Report

DETAIL ACCOUNT FORMAT:
1. Select the account number to print: ____________
   '1' = account number;
   '2' = short account ID;
   '3' = unstructured account;
   '4' = (default) number entered during input.

NOTE: This refers to the G/L Account number in the body of the report, not to the bank account in the header of the report.

HEADING ACCOUNT FORMAT:
2. Select the account number to print: ____________
   '1' = account number;
   '2' = short account ID;
   '3' = unstructured account.

NOTE: This refers to the G/L Bank Account that appears in the heading, not the account that appears in the detail portion of the screen.

Posting Drafts for A/R

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Daily Operations

From A/R Draft Daily Operations (G031111), choose Post Drafts to G/L

Posting drafts to the general ledger creates entries to the draft receivables account and offset entries to the general ledger for the receivable account. The system typically debits an A/R account and credits drafts receivable. The program only posts batches with an A (approved) status.

All J.D. Edwards post programs post to the G/L in the same way. The post program for A/R drafts has the processing option for batch selection set to * (draft receipts). You should not change this.

After you post payments, you can review them again and correct accounting distribution information. You cannot review account ledger information until the post is complete.

See Also

- Posting Invoices (P09800)
Select Drafts for Remittance

Selecting Drafts for Remittance

You can manually create a bank register to use when remitting drafts. You select the drafts to include in the register. The system groups drafts that have the same due date and payment instrument into a single statement in the register.

Selecting drafts for remittance consists of:

- Creating and revising A/R bank registers
- Reviewing A/R bank draft registers

Draft selection is an optional step in the draft process. You can skip this step and create your paper and magnetic remittances.

See Also

- Remitting Paper Drafts (P03570)

Creating or Revising Bank Registers

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Remittance/Collections

From A/R Draft Remittance and Collection (G03112), choose Draft Selection for Payment

You can manually create a bank register to use when remitting drafts. You select the drafts to include in the register. Bank registers must include only drafts that you will remit on magnetic tape or a printed register. It can include either regular drafts or discounted drafts.

You can have only one register per bank account. If a bank register exists, you can add drafts to it or remove drafts from it. You must completely process one register with one type of draft before you create another.
When you create a bank register, the system:

- Changes the pay status of selected drafts from draft to selected for payment.
- Changes the pay status of removed drafts from selected for payment to draft.
- Updates the bank account of selected drafts.
- Groups selected drafts into a single statement on the basis of due date and payment instrument.
- Creates a batch (register) containing the drafts you selected. The register number is the batch number concatenated with a five-digit statement number.

This program updates information in the A/R Ledger (F0311) and A/R Draft Batch Header (F0313) tables.

**Example: Bank Register**

The following example shows how the system groups drafts on the basis of payment instrument and due date.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Draft Due Date</th>
<th>Draft Payment Instrument</th>
<th>Draft Amount</th>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Payment Instrument</th>
<th>Register Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>07/01/98</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>300.00</td>
<td>07/01/98</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/01/98</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>200.00</td>
<td>07/01/98</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>300.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07/01/98</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>300.00</td>
<td>07/01/98</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>300.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08/15/98</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>08/15/98</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>350.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08/15/98</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>250.00</td>
<td>08/15/98</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>350.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Before You Begin**

☐ Verify whether a register already exists for the bank account
To create or revise bank registers

On Draft Selection for Payment

1. Complete the following field and press Enter:
   - Bank Account

   The system changes the action to Add if no register exists or to Change if a register exists.

2. To limit your search, complete the following fields:
   - Dates Thru
   - Company
   - Payment Instrument
   - Dates From
   - Amount Requested
   - Minimum Draft Amount

   If a register exists for the bank account, the system displays all drafts that you previously selected for remittance.

3. Choose the Display All function to display all drafts that meet your search criteria but have not been selected for remittance.

4. To add drafts to the register, choose the Select option for drafts you want to add.
5. To remove drafts from the register, type a space for the drafts you want to remove.

6. Complete the following field (optional):
   - Update Value Date

7. Do one of the following:
   - For WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - For WorldVision, click Add

   If you do not press Enter or click Add, the system does not include your most recent draft selections and does not update the total calculations for the batch.

8. Choose the Create/Update Register function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Bank Account| A field that identifies an account in the general ledger. You can use one of the following formats for account numbers:  
   - Standard account number (business unit.object.subsidiary or flexible format)  
   - Third G/L number (maximum of 25 digits)  
   - 8-digit short account ID number  
   - Speed code  
   The first character of the account indicates the format of the account number. You define the account format in the General Accounting Constants program. |
Select Drafts for Remittance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dates Thru</td>
<td>Date the net payment is due (accounts receivable). In accounts payable, this is the discount due date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you leave this field blank in invoice entry or voucher entry, the system computes the due date using the invoice date and the payment terms code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you leave the payment terms field blank, the system computes payment terms using the payment terms code from the Customer Master Information file (F0301) or Supplier Master Information table (F0401) for that customer or supplier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>..........................................................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>..........................................................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>..........................................................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>..........................................................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>..........................................................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>..........................................................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>..........................................................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>..........................................................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>..........................................................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amount Req</td>
<td>The target amount requested when grouping Draft records for presentation to the bank. Used for the calculation to show the difference (#DIF) between what was wanted (#ARQ) and what has been selected (#ASC).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Draft Amt</td>
<td>A number that identifies the smallest draft amount to display. If you type information in this field, the system only displays drafts with a gross amount equal to or larger than the specified amount. If you leave this field blank, the system displays all draft amounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Value Date</td>
<td>The date that the item was debited or credited to the bank account.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What You Should Know About

Changing bank registers You can also use Draft Selection for Payment to change registers for a specific bank account and date range.
Processing Options for Draft Selection for Payment

CREATE DATE-THRU DATE:
1. Enter the number of offset days desired when creating a new Date-Thru date. If the Date-Thru date is left blank on the screen, then a new Date-Thru date will be created by adding the number of offset days to the current system date.

NOTE: If this field and the Date-Thru date field are left blank, then all dates will be displayed for draft selection.

Reviewing A/R Draft Bank Registers

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Remittance/Collections

From A/R Draft Remittance and Collection (G031112), choose Registers in Process

To review bank registers before you remit them, use Registers in Process.

Registers in Process is a journal review program. There is one important difference between Registers in Process and other journal review programs. This program is not used to approve transactions for posting. It is only used to review registers. Because of this, the Approved and Status fields are not relevant.

You can review transactions at three levels of detail using the following forms:

Registers in Process
You can review register information at the batch level. You can also access Registers for Bank Payment from this form.

Registers for Bank Payment
You can review registers within a batch. You can also access Register Detail Inquiry and Draft Selection for Payment from this form.

Register Detail Inquiry
You can review drafts within a register.

Because you can have only one register per bank account, locating a bank account shows its register. These forms only show information for active
registers. That is, you can review information only for registers you have created but not yet remitted to your bank.

These programs display and update information in the A/R Ledger (F0311) and A/R Draft Batch Header (F0313) tables.

See Also

- Reviewing and Approving Invoices (P00201) for more information about reviewing online journal information

To review A/R draft bank registers

On Registers in Process

1. Display all batches for all users, or complete any of the following fields to limit your search:
   - User ID
   - Batch Number
   - Batch Date From/Thru
   - Batch Status

2. Choose the Detailed Batch Review option next to the appropriate batch to access Registers for Bank Payment.
3. On Registers for Bank Payment, complete the following field:
   - Bank Account

4. Choose the Detail option next to the appropriate register to access Register Detail Inquiry (optional).
Work with Draft Remittance

Working with Draft Remittance

You can remit drafts to your bank on magnetic tape or by printing a register. Generally, you must have complete bank account information for your customer in order to use magnetic tape.

Working with draft remittance consists of:

- Creating magnetic draft tape tables
- Copying magnetic draft tables to tape
- Resetting the magnetic draft tape copy sequence for A/R
- Remitting paper drafts
- Posting draft remittance journal entries

Creating Magnetic Draft Tape Tables

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Remittance/Collections

From A/R Draft Remittance and Collection (G031112), choose Magnetic Draft Remittance

You can run the Create Draft Tables program in either proof or final mode.

Proof mode

In proof mode, this program:

- Selects drafts accepted but not yet submitted to your bank for collection
- Prints register reports
**Final mode**  
In final mode, the program works in the same way as proof mode except that it also:

- Changes the payment status to G (guaranteed)
- Creates journal entries to debit the drafts remitted account and credit the drafts received account
- Creates a tape table that you can copy to tape or diskette and send to your bank

J.D. Edwards recommends that you run this program in proof mode before running it in final mode. This allows you to review and correct errors prior to updating records. If the system finds errors during final mode, it prints an error report and does not create journal entries.

Magnetic Draft Remittance reads information from the A/R Ledger table (F0311) and writes information to the Magnetic Draft Remittance table (F03572). The tape table is a multi-member table. Each version you run in final mode creates another member named Mxxx, where xxx is the version number of the Magnetic Draft Remittance program. The tape table must exist in the same library as the A/R Ledger table.

**Before You Begin**

- Copy any existing bank tape tables to magnetic tape. When you run this program in final mode, the program terminates if a bank tape table has already been created but not yet copied to tape.
What You Should Know About

Italian bank payments  To remit drafts to Italian banking institutions, use Magnetic RiBa Remittance (22/G03111). This program performs the same functions as Magnetic Draft Remittance with the exception of the processing options. Processing options grouped under the heading Italian Tape Processing, control the format required for Italian banking institutions.

See Also

- *Resetting the A/R Draft Tape Copy Sequence (P049261)* for information on re-creating tape tables

Copying Magnetic Draft Tables to Tape

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Remittance/Collections

From A/R Draft Remittance and Collection (G031112), choose Copy Bank Tape File to Tape

After you create the magnetic tape table, copy the table to a tape or diskette that you send to your bank.

Before performing the copy, this system checks the Bank Tape Sequence table (F04926) to determine whether a copy is pending. That is, the system checks to see if the tape table has been created, but does not check to see if it has been copied to tape.

If the table does not exist or is blank, the system displays a message and stops processing.

Before You Begin

- You must load a magnetic tape into a tape drive or a diskette into a disk drive.
To copy magnetic draft tables to tape

On Copy Bank Tape File to Tape

Accept the default information in the following fields, or make any changes necessary:

- Magnetic Draft Version
- Tape Density
- Tape File Name
- Tape Device Name
- New Volume Name
- New Owner ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Magnetic Draft Version</td>
<td>For World, identifies a group of items that the system can process together, such as reports, business units, or subledgers. For OneWorld, the name of the version. It is created when the version is added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tape Density</td>
<td>The density of the tape to be created, for example, 1600, 6250, and so on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Work with Draft Remittance**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tape File Name</td>
<td>The identification, such as program number, table number, and report number, that is assigned to an element of software.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tape Device Name</td>
<td>The device name, for example, QTape5 for tape device, TAP01 for cassette device, and so on. If you entered form type O, this represents your production library for the work file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Volume Name</td>
<td>The new volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Owner Id</td>
<td>The new owner ID.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Processing Options for Copy Tape File to Tape (A/R Drafts)**

**OUTPUT OPTION:**
1. Enter a '1' to copy the file to a diskette. Leave blank to copy to tape.

**Resetting the Magnetic Draft Tape Copy Sequence for A/R**

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Remittance/Collections

From A/R Draft Remittance and Collection (G031112), choose Reset Tape Copy Sequence

You might need to re-copy an existing bank tape table to tape or diskette if, for example, the tape was lost or damaged in transit to the bank. In order to re-copy the tape, you must reset the tape sequence. You might also need to reset the tape sequence if you need to re-create the tape table, for example, to include an additional draft.

When the system creates a bank tape table, it sets the Sequence field to 1, which prevents the system from changing the table. When you copy the bank table to tape, the system changes this field to blank. Reset Tape Copy Sequence resets the sequence control code in the Bank Tape Sequence table (F04926) to blank so the system can re-create the table.
To reset the magnetic draft tape copy sequence for A/R

On Reset Tape Copy Sequence

1. To locate a bank tape table, complete the following fields:
   - Version ID
   - Member ID

2. Remove the value from the following field:
   - Sequence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Version Id</td>
<td>The A/P payment version that corresponds to the DREAM Writer version selected in A/P payment processing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Member ID</td>
<td>The identification, such as program number, table number, and report number, that is assigned to an element of software.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Form-specific information

This is the DREAM Writer version ID you used to create the tape table on Magnetic Tape Remittance.

Form-specific information

This is the program number that created the tape table. For A/R drafts, the member ID is P03572.
### Work with Draft Remittance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sequence</td>
<td>Used to ensure that the proper sequence of events occur in draft processing. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>blank  Table has been copied to tape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 Table has been created but not yet copied to tape</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Processing Options for Reset Tape Copy Sequence

**RIBA PROCESSING FORMAT:**

1. Enter a '1' to display RIBA Processing format.

### Remitting Paper Drafts

**From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods**

**From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Remittance/Collections**

**From A/R Draft Remittance and Collection (G031112), choose Paper Draft Remittance**

Generally, it is not possible to remit drafts to your bank on magnetic tape if you do not have complete bank account information for your customer. Instead, you can print a register to send to your bank.

Remitting paper drafts consists of:

- ☐ Running Paper Draft Remittance
- ☐ Correcting problems with Paper Draft Remittance
Running Paper Draft Remittance

You can run the Paper Draft Remittance program in either proof or final mode.

**Proof mode**

In proof mode, the program:

- Selects drafts accepted but not yet submitted to your bank for collection
- Prints register reports

**Final mode**

In final mode, the program works in the same way as proof mode except that it also:

- Changes the payment status to G (guaranteed)
- Creates journal entries to debit the drafts remitted account and credit the drafts receivable account

If you manually created a draft register, you can run a version of Paper Draft Remittance that prints the register. If you have not created a register, you can run a version of this report that creates the register.

When you run this program, the system edits the G/L date against the company date for the drafts receivable and drafts remitted accounts.

For paper draft remittances, the system only reports drafts with payment instrument 3 (supplier draft without bank account number) or with payment instrument 4 (customer draft without bank account number).

When you enter drafts with full bank account information, the system places a Y in the Print field. The Paper Draft Remittance program selects drafts with Print not equal (NE) to Y. Changing the payment instrument for a draft to 0, 1, or 2 does not change the Print field. Therefore, changing the payment instrument does not cause the system to select a draft that was originally entered with a payment instrument of 0, 1, or 2.

J.D. Edwards recommends that you run this report in proof mode before running it in final mode. This allows you to review and correct errors prior to updating records. If the system finds errors when running the report in final mode, it prints an error message on the report and does not create journal entries.

This program reads information from the A/R Ledger table (F0311).
Correcting Problems with Paper Draft Remittance

If you encounter errors when running the Paper Draft Remittance report:

- Verify that you selected the correct version.
- Verify that the G/L date you entered for processing option is correct.
- Verify that you are not attempting to include an inappropriate draft. For example, verify that you are not attempting to include a draft with a payment instrument 0 (magnetic drafts), 1 (supplier draft with bank account number), or 2 (customer drafts with bank account number).
- If you used Draft Selection for Bank Payment to create a register manually:
  - Verify that the “as of” date you entered in the processing options is the same as or later than the latest draft due date in the register
  - Verify that the register contains only drafts with a payment instrument of 3 or 4
Processing Options for Paper Draft Remittance

PROOF OR FINAL:
1. Enter a ’1’ to process the registers in final mode. Default of blank will print a report only.
   NOTE: Final mode will update status of drafts to “G” (guaranteed) and create Journal Entries.

AS OF DATE:
2. Enter the “As of” date to process. All drafts due on or before this date will be processed. If left blank, the current system date will be used.

G/L ACCOUNT:
3. Specify which G/L Account from AAI’s to use for Drafts Remitted - blank (default) = Cashed (RD2x) ’1’ = Discounted (RD3x)

4. Enter the override Drafts Remitted Account number. The AAI’s will be ignored if an account is entered here.

G/L DATE:
5. Enter the G/L date for the Journal Entries created. If left blank, the system date will be used.

G/L BANK ACCOUNT:
6. Enter the G/L Bank Account that the drafts will be remitted to.
   Note: This must be entered only if the bank register procedure is not being used.

Data Selection for Paper Draft Remittance

You can change the data selection for payment instrument. The DEMO versions of this report are set to select drafts with a payment instrument of 3 or 4 and to exclude drafts with a payment instrument of 0, 1, or 2.

Because payment instrument is a user defined code (system 00, type PY), you can set up codes other than 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4. You must change the selection values for payment instrument if you add additional codes.
**Posting Draft Remittance Journal Entries**

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G0311), choose Draft Remittance/Collections

From A/R Draft Remittance and Collection (G03112), choose an option under the Journal Entry Review and Post heading

After you remit drafts, you must review and post journal entries. Posting debits the drafts remittance account and credits the drafts receivable account.

All J.D. Edwards journal review and post programs work in the same way.

**See Also**

- *Reviewing and Approving Invoices (P00201)*
- *Posting Invoices (P09800)*
Work with A/R Draft Collection

Working with A/R Draft Collection

After your bank has collected draft payments from your customer's bank, you must update the status of draft payments to show them as collected.

Working with A/R draft collection consists of:

- Updating draft payment status
- Notifying customers of non-sufficient funds
- Reviewing and approving journal entries for A/R draft collections
- Posting journal entries for A/R draft collections

Updating Draft Payment Status

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Remittance/Collections

From A/R Draft Remittance and Collection (G031112), choose Status Update without JEs or Status Update with JEs

The Status Update program changes the status of draft payments to paid. Optionally, it creates journal entries that debit your cash account and credit your drafts remitted account.

Some companies prefer to create journal entries on the draft due date while others wait until the payment appears on their bank statement. Depending on your company policy, do one of the following:

- Run Status Update with Journal Entries on the draft due dates and create journal entries at that time.
- Run Status Update without Journal Entries on the draft due dates using a pay status code of something other than P (paid). Then, run the Status
Update with Journal Entries after you verify that payments have been collected.

You can run this program in either proof or final mode.

**Proof mode**
In proof mode, this program prints a report that shows the drafts to be updated. It shows all drafts that have a payment status of G (remitted or guaranteed) with a due date that you specify in processing option.

**Final mode**
In final mode, the program works in the same way as proof mode except that it also:

- Updates the payment status of drafts to P (paid) or to another value you choose
- Creates journal entries (optional)

This program displays and updates information in the A/R Ledger table (F0311).
Processing Options for Status Update

PROOF OR FINAL:
1. Enter '1' to update the status of the drafts and create Journal Entries if selected.

AS OF DATE:
2. Enter the "As of" date to process. All drafts due on or before this date will be processed. If left blank, the current system date will be used.

DEFAULT PROCESSING:
3. Enter the default document type for the journal entries. If left blank or invalid, 'AE' will be used.

JOURNAL ENTRY CREATION:
4. Enter a '1' to create Journal Entries. If left blank, no Journal Entries will be created.

5. Enter the G/L date for the Journal Entries. If left blank, the system date will be used.

6. Enter a '1' to calculate the G/L Date by adding the Float Days for the bank account to the Net Due Date. Leave blank to use the option above to calculate the G/L Date.

PAY STATUS:
7. Enter the Pay Status to update the draft records to. If left blank, the pay status will be updated to 'P' (Paid).

Notifying Customers of Non-Sufficient Funds

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Remittance/Collections

From A/R Draft Remittance and Collection (G03112), choose NSF Notification

Your bank might not be able to collect money from a customer because of non-sufficient funds. When this happens, you can send the customer a notification letter that lists all outstanding drafts that they owe.
The NSF Notification program lists outstanding drafts on the notification letter only if the document type for the payment item is RV (non-sufficient funds). The draft information on the notification letter is from the A/R Ledger table (F0311). The contents are from the Generic Message/Rates (F00191) and the General Message Detail (F00192) tables.

**Before You Begin**

- Create text for your letters using NSF Notification Generic Text

**Example: Non-Sufficient Funds Letter**

The following example shows a letter notifying a customer about non-sufficient funds.

```
Attn:  
Millhollin Autodebit Customer #2  
Denver CO 80237  
04/21/98  

Customer Number:  5522

This is to inform you that the bank drafts corresponding with the invoices listed below have been returned unpaid by our bank.  

We would appreciate a payment against these invoices by either check or wire transfer to our bank:

** BANK NAME **
** BANK ADDRESS LINE 1 **
** BANK ADDRESS LINE 2 **

We hope that this has only been a slight oversight on your part and we look forward to doing business with you in the future.

** YOUR COMPANY NAME **
** Department **

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Invoice</th>
<th>Invoice</th>
<th>DT</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RV</td>
<td>6050</td>
<td>02/01/98</td>
<td>271.10-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>271.10-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
**Processing Options for Draft NSF Notification**

**PRINT DATE:**
1. Enter the date to appear in the letter’s heading. If left blank, then the default is the system date.

**ADDRESS FORMAT:**
2. Enter the address format code to determine the display format for the customer address. If left blank or value is invalid, then the country default will be used.

**SELECTION RANGE BY DATES:**
3. Enter the initial date. All drafts due on or after this date will be selected. If left blank, then the default is the system date.

4. Enter the as of date. All drafts due on or before this date will be selected. If left blank, then the default is the system date.

**NSF LETTER CODE SELECTION:**
5. Enter the user defined code for the desired NSF letter text. These codes and text are contained in the Generic Message/Text Review file; system code ‘03’, type ‘IN’.

**SUMMARIZE BY DOCUMENT NUMBER:**
6. Enter a ‘1’ to summarize all draft detail lines by the document number. If left blank, then each line of will be displayed.
Reviewing and Approving Journal Entries for A/R Draft Collections

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Remittance/Collections

From A/R Draft Remittance and Collection (G031112), choose General Journal Review

If you created journal entries, you must review and approve them after you update the status of drafts to collected. Posting debits a cash account and credits the drafts remitted account.

All J.D. Edwards journal review programs work the same way.

See Also

- Reviewing and Approving Invoices (P00201)

Posting Journal Entries for A/R Draft Collections

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Remittance/Collections

From A/R Draft Remittance and Collection (G031112), choose Post Journal Entries

After you review and approve journal entries, you must post them to the general ledger. Posting them debits a cash account and credits the drafts remitted account.

All J.D. Edwards journal review programs work in the same way.

See Also

- Posting Invoices (P09800)
Automatic Debits

Objectives

- To process automatic debits
- To review and approve automatic debit batches
- To post automatic debits to the general ledger
- To copy the automatic debits files to a bank tape or diskette

About Automatic Debits

You can automatically debit (withdraw funds from) a customer’s bank account by creating a tape or diskette file for Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) by the bank.

Automatic debits work well in situations where you invoice predefined amounts every month. You can also use automatic debits with invoice amounts that vary with each billing period.

When you use automatic debits, the system builds an Automatic Debit worktable (F0357) and a Batch A/R Cash Application worktable (F0312).
Work with Automatic Debits

You can automatically debit (withdraw funds from) a customer's bank account by creating a tape or diskette file for Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) by the bank.

Working with automatic debits consist of:

- Processing automatic debits
- Reviewing and approving automatic debits
- Posting automatic debits
- Copying files to tape or diskette

Before You Begin

- Contact your bank to determine the transfer format
Processing Automatic Debits

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer and Invoice Entry

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Process Automatic Debits

You can select A/R invoices that are subject to direct debiting from a customer’s bank account by processing automatic debits in proof or final mode.

Proof mode
The program:
- Validates the selection of invoices that are debited to your customers
- Does not update the A/R Ledger table
- Enables you to exclude invoices from automatic debiting using Speed Status Change

Final mode
The program:
- Updates invoices as paid and creates matching records when you process batch receipts.
- Creates a batch to post receipts to the Account Ledger table (F0911).
- Creates a tape or diskette file for the bank.
- Prints a customer statement of those invoices that are debited. You control this with a processing option.
- Prints a final report of processed invoices.

After you run the program in final mode
The program:
- Prevents you from rerunning the same version of automatic debiting until you copy the created file to tape. This protects the information from being overwritten by a new version before it is saved.
- Allows you to reverse or delete receipts.

Before You Begin

☐ On Customer Master Information, specify A in the Payment Instrument field and Y in the Auto Cash Algorithm field. See Entering Customers.

☐ On Customer Master Information, verify the customer G/L bank account information. Your customers must have a bank account type D set up for automatic debits. See Setting Up Customer Bank Information.
Work with Automatic Debits

- On A/R Constants, specify Y in the Auto Cash field. See *Setting Up Constants*.
- Load the appropriate tape if you are automatically copying to tape or diskette.

### Processing Options for Processing Automatic Debits

**PROOF OR FINAL MODE PROCESSING:**
1. Enter a ‘1’ to create the file to be sent to the bank and to create the Automatic Debit entries against the selected invoices. If left blank, only a proof report will be produced.

**AS OF DATE:**
2. Enter the ‘As of’ Date to process.
   All invoices will be processed that have a comparison date on or before the As of Date. If left blank, the system date will default.

**DATE COMPARISON:**
3. Enter the type of date to compare to the As of Date.
   - ‘ ’ = Net Due Date (Default)
   - ‘D’ = Discount Due Date
   - ‘I’ = Invoice Date
   - ‘G’ = G/L Date
   - ‘S’ = Statement Date

**MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM OPTIONS:**
4. Enter the MINIMUM amount which is to be selected for payment via Automatic Debits. Amounts under this will not be selected.
5. Enter the MAXIMUM amount which can be selected for payment via Automatic Debits. Amounts over this will not be selected.

Note: The processing options above must be specified in the currency of the Bank Account.

**BANK INFORMATION:**
6. Enter the G/L Bank Account that the invoices are being submitted to. It is MANDATORY to enter a valid account short ID for this option.

**G/L DATE:**
7. Enter a G/L Date. If left blank, the system date will be used.

**DISCOUNT PROCESSING:**
8. Enter a ‘1’ if all discounts are to be processed. If left blank, the cutoff date option will be used.
9. Enter the cutoff date for applying
discounts. Discounts will not be taken if the Discount Due Date is prior to this date.

Note: These Discount Options also exist in Batch Receipts Processing (P03550). These options should have the same values as specified in your Batch Cash version.

COUNTRY SPECIFIC FORMAT SELECTION:
10. Enter the name and DREAM Writer version number of the program to be called to create the formatted file for the bank. (Press F1 for a list of available programs.)

   Program Name . . . .
   Program Version . .

GERMAN FORMAT ONLY:
11. Enter a ‘1’ if the automatic debits are to be created as Abbuchungen. If left blank, Lastschriften records will be created.

STATEMENT PRINT:
12. Enter a ‘1’ if a Customer Statement is to be printed for the Automatic Debits. If left blank, Customer Statements will only be printed where the number of invoice details exceeds the maximum number that can be included onto the format.

COPY TO TAPE/DISKETTE:
13. Enter a ‘1’ if the Copy to Tape or Diskette option should be called automatically following Final Mode processing. If left blank, the copy option may be run at a later stage. (Leave blank if creating paper forms).

14. Enter the version of the Copy to Tape/Diskette program P03579 to be called. If left blank, this defaults to version ZJDE0001. Confirm values in P03579 processing options prior to running.

BATCH PROCESSING:
15. Enter the version number of the Batch Receipts program to be called to create and match the Automatic Debits to the selected invoice details. If left blank, one of the two versions will default.
   ZJDE0002 - For Summary JE’s.
   ZJDE0003 - For Detail JE’s.

Note: verify the processing option values for the Batch Receipts version (P03550).

JOURNAL ENTRY CREATION:
16. Select G/L Entries Method:                      ____________  
    ‘ ’ = Create summary total J.E.’s  
    ‘1’ = Create detail J.E.’s, which 
    will create one J.E. per deposit 
    item.

BATCH CASH RECEIPTS PURGE:                      ____________  
17. Enter a ‘1’ to purge the Batch 
    Receipts Workfile (F0312) upon run 
    completion. If left blank, the file 
    will not be purged.  

18. Enter the version number of the 
    purge program P00PURGE to be called 
    to clear records from the Batch 
    Receipts work file F0312. If left 
    blank, version ZJDE0009 will be 
    called.

---

Data Selection for Processing Automatic Debits

J.D. Edwards recommends that you process automatic debits by company. The 
receipts applied to the selected invoices are generated for the G/L bank account 
of the company.

---

Reviewing and Approving Automatic Debits

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer and Invoice Entry

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Auto Debit 
Journal Review

After you process automatic debits, you can review and approve them before 
posting them to the general ledger.

---

To review and approve automatic debits

On Auto Debit Journal Review
1. Display all batches for all users, or complete any of the following fields to limit the information displayed:
   - User ID
   - Batch Number
   - Batch Date From:
   - Batch Date Thru:
   - Batch Status

2. To approve an automatic debit, complete the following field:
   - Approval

**See Also**

- *Reviewing and Approving Invoices (P03201)*
Posting Automatic Debits

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer and Invoice Entry

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Post Automatic Debits to G/L

After you review and approve batches of automatic debits, you need to post them to the general ledger. When you post automatic debits, you use the standard Post program, which is also used to post invoices, receipts, and drafts.

See Also

- Posting Invoices (P09800)

Copying Files to Tape or Diskette

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer and Invoice Entry

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice and Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Copy File to Tape/Diskette

After you post your automatic debits, you need to send the information to your bank. Use the Copy File to Tape/Diskette program to copy your automatic debits to either a tape or diskette.

If necessary (perhaps for different versions), you can run this program more than once.
Processing Options for Copy Tape File to Tape (Auto Debits)

AUTOMATIC DEBITS VERSION:
1. Enter the version number of the Automatic Debits for which the Copy to Tape/Diskette is to be performed.

COPY TO TAPE OPTIONS:
2. Enter the tape unit to which the Automatic Debits file is to be copied.
   - Tape Unit:
   - Tape Density:
   - Tape Volume ID:
   - Tape Owner ID:
   - Tape File Name:

PC FILE DOWNLOAD:
3. If generating a PC file, enter the file name to be used and the library name where the file will be placed.
   - File Name:
   - Library Name:
   - File Size:
     - Austrian Diskette = 120
     - German Diskette = 128
     - German Tape = 523
     - RACS Tape = 100
     - Swiss Diskette = 128
     - Swiss Tape = 530

COUNTRY SPECIFIC FORMATTING OPTIONS
4. Enter the country-specific program that will perform the copy to tape or the creation of the diskette file.
   - P03579DT – German Tape
     (Variable Length)

What You Should Know About Processing Options

Automatic debits version (1)
Automatic debit information is stored using the P03575 version.

Copy to tape options (2)
Use this option to initialize the tape or diskette. If you leave it blank, the contents of the Auto Debit Build are written to diskette.

Country specific formatting options (4)
Use this option to specify a customized program.
P03579DT produces the variable record length format common to Germany.

If you specify an RPG program, you might need a specific tape. For example, P03579DT creates the tape file DTAUS if it does not already exist. Any tape file name specified in the first option is ignored.
Data Sequence for Copy Files to Tape or Diskette

Set the auto debit sequence to the copy-to-tape or diskette stage (T).
Periodic
Period-End Processing

Objectives

- To create credit note reimbursements
- To use “as of” reports to review transactions as of a specific date
- To use integrity reports to locate potential balancing problems and data inconsistencies

About Period-End Processing

Period-end processing refers to tasks that you complete at the end of an accounts receivable period. You normally complete these tasks on a periodic, quarterly, or yearly basis. You can also complete them while setting up your Accounts Receivable system.

Period-end processing consists of:

- Working with credit note reimbursements
- Processing “as of” reports
- Processing A/R integrity reports
The following describes the features of period-end processing.

**Credit note reimbursements**
Use credit note reimbursements to reclassify a credit memo or unapplied receipt to an open voucher in the Accounts Payable system. For example, you can reimburse customers for overpayments and issue rebates.

**“As of” reports**
Use “as of” reports to view summary or detail A/R ledger information as of a specific date. For example, after the beginning of a fiscal year, you might want to review open A/R information as of the date of your year-end audit.

You can also use these reports as problem-solving tools. For example, use the Open A/R Details “as of” report to compare the A/R period-end balance to the general ledger account balance of your A/R trade (offset account).

**A/R integrity reports**
Print A/R integrity reports to supplement your internal balancing procedures. These reports list potential balancing problems and data inconsistencies.

You should print these integrity reports at least once a week during the process of converting to new software or during a learning period for new users. Otherwise, print them on a periodic basis to resolve and correct errors in a timely manner.

Depending on your organization’s needs, you might have additional period-end tasks to perform, such as:

- Updating and printing finance charges
- Printing and revising payment reminders
- Printing delinquency notices
- Printing statements and invoices

**See Also**

- *Working with Late Payment Charges (P03435)*
- *Printing Statements (P035001)*
- *Working with Past Due Notifications (P035111)*
Work with Credit Note Reimbursements

Working with Credit Note Reimbursements

You can use credit note reimbursements to reclassify a credit memo or unapplied receipt from the Accounts Receivable system to an open voucher in the Accounts Payable system. For example, you can issue rebates and reimburse customers for overpayments. When you create credit note reimbursements, you convert A/R credit amounts into A/P vouchers so that you can pay the customer.

Working with credit note reimbursements consists of:

- Generating credit note reimbursements
- Reviewing and approving credit note reimbursements
- Posting credit note reimbursements
Before You Begin

☐ Set up the AAI item RP for the suspense (clearing) accounts between the Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable systems.

☐ Ensure that the customer number is the same as the supplier number. Transactions are recorded to one address from both systems.

☐ Set up PA as a valid document type in the user defined code lists 00/DV and 00/DT.

What You Should Know About

Next numbers

To assign separate next numbers for the vouchers you create for credit notes, use one of the following:

- Next Numbers. Use this form to assign a line number in the second description of the document type PA, in the user defined code list (00/DV). If you leave the line number blank, the system uses the next number from Line 1, Vouchers.
- Next Numbers by Company/Fiscal Year. Use this form to create a separate line for document type PA.

See Setting Up Next Numbers for more information.

Generating Credit Note Reimbursements

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Periodic Processes

From Periodic Processes (G0321), choose Generate Reimbursements

To reimburse customers, print a list of eligible documents. From this list, you can select specific documents for reimbursement.

When you generate credit note reimbursements, the system selects the credit memos (RM) and unapplied receipts (RU) in the A/R Ledger table (F0311). You can set a processing option to run this program in proof or final mode.

To print a list of eligible documents, run proof mode. To process credit note reimbursements, select documents from this list and run final mode, which:

- Creates a matching document (PA) in the A/R Ledger table to close the open credit invoice.
- Creates a batch of receipts. This batch (type R) debits the original A/R offset account and credits the suspense account.
- Changes the pay status on the invoices to paid.
- Creates a voucher in the A/P Ledger table (F0411) with a PA document type.
- Creates a batch of vouchers. This batch (type V) credits the A/P trade account and debits the suspense account. A zero balance in the suspense account indicates that both batches posted successfully. A non-zero balance indicates that a problem exists in posting one of the two batches.

The system prints the following report in proof mode. You can use this report to review your credit note reimbursements before processing them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alpha Name</th>
<th>Cust . Credit Note . Reimbursement . Voucher . G/L</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Central Express Store</td>
<td>3002 9002 RU 000 1,300.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central Express Store</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centre Gift Store</td>
<td>3004 9003 RU 000 2,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centre Gift Store</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centrum Incorporated</td>
<td>3001 9001 RU 000 35.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centrum Incorporated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edwards &amp; Edwards</td>
<td>1002 4454 RI 000 125.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edwards &amp; Edwards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edwards, J.D. &amp; Company</td>
<td>1001 4453 RM 000 100.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edwards, J.D. &amp; Company</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Model Financial Co (Trng)</td>
<td>3,560.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The system prints the following report in final mode. You can use this report to review the credit note reimbursements that are processed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alpha Name</th>
<th>Cust . Credit Note . Reimbursement . Voucher . G/L</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Central Express Store</td>
<td>3002 9002 RU 000 1,300.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central Express Store</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Model Financial Co (Trng)</td>
<td>1,300.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reimbursement Amount Created 1,300.00
In either proof or final mode, this report might include the following error messages:

**Invalid AAI for suspense account**  
An AAI item for company 00000 does not exist, or the account in AAI item RP is not a valid posting account.

**G/L date is not valid**  
The G/L date retrieved from the processing options is not valid for the company being processed.

**Invalid AAI for bank account**  
The default bank account retrieved from AAI item PB is not valid (when the system creates the voucher).

**G/L document number error**  
The voucher number retrieved from next numbers has already been assigned to a G/L document number and is therefore a duplicate. If this error occurs in final mode, the invoice will have been updated to paid status. You must enter the voucher manually, using the suspense account number for the expense account.

**Address book record not found**  
The supplier number is not in the supplier master. If this error occurs in final mode, you must enter the voucher manually.

**Bank currency does not match company currency**  
(Multi-Currency) The currency for the bank account does not match the company currency for the invoice. Change the AAI for the bank account to an account with the same currency as the invoice.

**Suspense account currency invalid**  
(Multi-Currency) The currency for the suspense account does not match the company currency for the invoice. Add an AAI for this suspense account that specifies an account with the same currency as the invoice.

**What You Should Know About**

**Multi-Currency**  
To create reimbursement vouchers in a foreign currency, set a processing option to create detailed vouchers.
Processing Options for A/R Credit Note Reimbursements

PAY THRU DATE:
1. Enter the Pay Thru date. If left blank, the system date will be used.

PROOF OR FINAL:
2. Enter a ‘1’ to create reimbursement vouchers (final mode). Default of blank will print a report only.

GENERAL LEDGER DATE:
3. Enter the G/L date to record the reimbursement. If left blank, the system date will be used.

GENERAL LEDGER OFFSET:
4. Enter an override G/L offset for the Trade A/P account. If left blank, the G/L Class from the Supplier Master File will be used.

VOUCHER CREATION:
5. Enter a ‘1’ to create one voucher record per customer (summary). Default of a blank will create one voucher per invoice (detail).

VOUCHER CREATION (cont.):
6. Enter a ‘1’ to assign the payable voucher to the customer’s parent address. Default of blank will assign it to the customer.
**Accounts Receivable**

**Reviewing and Approving Credit Note Reimbursements**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Periodic Processes

From Periodic Processes (G0321), choose Receipts Journal Review or Voucher Journal Review

After you process credit note reimbursements in final mode, but before you post them, you can use the review programs to correct and approve them.

All J.D. Edwards journal review programs work the same way.

See Also

- Reviewing and Approving Invoices (P03201)

**Posting Credit Note Reimbursements**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Periodic Processes

From Periodic Processes (G0321), choose Post Receipts to G/L or Post Vouchers to G/L

The final step for generating credit note reimbursements is to post the entries. When you post the receipts and vouchers, the system updates the appropriate tables (F0311, F0411, and F0911) and creates the necessary journal entries.

All J.D. Edwards post procedures work the same way.

See Also

- Posting Invoices (P09800)
Process “As Of” Reports

Processing “As Of” Reports

You can print period-end reports as of a specific date. To do this, you must first build a transaction worktable based on a specific “as of” date.

Processing “as of” reports consists of:

- Generating “as of” date information
- Printing “as of” reports

Generating “As Of” Date Information

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Periodic Processes

From Periodic Processes (G0321), choose Date File Generation

When you generate date information, the program builds a worktable that contains transactions with a G/L date less than or equal to the “as of” date you specify in the processing options. The program builds the “As Of” Accounts Receivable Ledger worktable (F0311A) from the A/R Ledger table (F0311).

The program selects transactions that are written to the worktable and examines every matching document (payments, adjustments, voids, and so on) related to the original document. Any matching document with a G/L date prior to the “as of” date is also written to the worktable. Any matching document dated after the “as of” date is written to the worktable if you set the appropriate processing option.

Before You Begin

- Determine if you will include paid items in the worktable. Including paid items increases the processing time significantly.
- Schedule this procedure after business hours to ensure adequate processing time.
Processing Options for Date File Generation

'AS OF' DATE:
1. Enter the 'As Of' date. If left blank, the current date will be used.

UPDATE OPTION:
2. Include paid items in 'As Of' file. ‘ ’ = open items only
   ‘1’ = open and paid items

Printing “As Of” Reports

“As of” reports are versions of the Open A/R Detail and Open A/R Summary reports. Each report is based on the “As Of” Accounts Receivable Ledger worktable and lists information as of any prior date you specify.

Printing “as of” reports consists of:

- Printing the Open A/R Detail Report
- Printing the Open A/R Summary Report
- Printing the Open A/R by Business Unit and Address Report

Before You Begin

- Run Date File Generation to create the worktable
- Specify F0311A in the Based on File field in Additional Parameters
- Set the appropriate processing option to use “as of” date processing

What You Should Know About

Multi-Currency
If the detail portion of the report includes more than one currency, the amount in the total line is a hash total and is meaningless. To avoid hash totals, you can include currency codes in your totaling levels.
### Printing the Open A/R Detail Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Periodic Processes.

From Periodic Processes (G0321), choose Open A/R Detail Reports.

The Open A/R Detail Report lists information based on any “as of” date you specify in the worktable build. This report has several versions, including:

- A/R Detail with Discount and Remarks
- A/R Detail with Optional Aging
- Customer Receipts History
- Retainage Receivables
- A/R Detail by Account Representative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Customer Name</th>
<th>Phone Number</th>
<th>Co Ty Number</th>
<th>Inv Date</th>
<th>G/L Chk Date</th>
<th>Original Balance</th>
<th>Open Balance</th>
<th>Discount</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4175 Abernathy &amp; Hitch</td>
<td>212 234-1887</td>
<td>00015 RD 663 001 04/01/98 RRTL 05/01/98</td>
<td>3,300.00</td>
<td>1,300.00</td>
<td>4175 Abernathy &amp; Hitch 212 234-1887</td>
<td>3,150.00</td>
<td>1,150.00</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>Regular Rent Retail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5389 Arthur Mitchell, PC</td>
<td>303 320-1040</td>
<td>00015 RD 741 001 05/31/98 RRTL 06/01/98</td>
<td>3,500.00</td>
<td>3,500.00</td>
<td>5389 Arthur Mitchell, PC 303 320-1040</td>
<td>3,500.00</td>
<td>3,500.00</td>
<td></td>
<td>Regular Rent: Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4183 Bali Hi</td>
<td>808 234-2244</td>
<td>00015 RD 722 002 04/30/98 RRTL 05/01/98</td>
<td>1,500.00</td>
<td>1,500.00</td>
<td>4183 Bali Hi 808 234-2244</td>
<td>4,000.00</td>
<td>4,000.00</td>
<td></td>
<td>Regular Rent: Retail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5354 Cady, John</td>
<td>303 321-5646</td>
<td>00015 RD 726 001 04/30/98 RRTL 05/01/98</td>
<td>500.00</td>
<td>500.00</td>
<td>5354 Cady, John 303 321-5646</td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
<td></td>
<td>Regular Rent-Residential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5362 Carbone &amp; Carlino</td>
<td>303 320-1956</td>
<td>00015 RD 739 001 05/31/98 RRTL 06/01/98</td>
<td>2,500.00</td>
<td>2,500.00</td>
<td>5362 Carbone &amp; Carlino 303 320-1956</td>
<td>2,525.00</td>
<td>2,525.00</td>
<td></td>
<td>Regular Rent: Office</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Processing Options for Open A/R Detail Reports

PRINT OPTIONS:
1. Enter one of the following formats:
   ' ' = 132 characters; aging without
   G/L offset. (Default)
   '1' = 198 characters; 6 aging
   categories.
   '2' = 132 characters; discount, G/L
   offset, and remark.
   '3' = 132 characters; aging with
   G/L offset.

AGING SPECIFICATIONS:
2. If an aging report has been selected:
   Enter a '1' to retrieve the aging
   specifications from A/R Constants.
   Default of blank will use the process-
   sing options for aging.
   (NOTE: Report MUST be sequenced and
   set to page break by company if
   company defaults are requested)
   NOTE: If selected, all other aging
   processing options will be ignored.

"AS OF" DATE:
3. Enter the "As Of" date to age open
   balances.  If left blank, the current
   date is used as the default.

ACCOUNT AGING:
4. Specify one of the following dates to
   age accounts from:
   D = Due Date               (Default)
   I = Invoice Date
   G = General Ledger Date
   S = Statement Date

AGING CALCULATIONS:
5. Specify one of the following methods
   for aging calculations:
   1 = Aging Days (Default)
   2 = Fiscal Periods
   3 = Calendar

CATEGORY INFORMATION:
6. Enter the following aging category
   information: (for method "1" only)
   Aging Days:               Beginning
     thru
     thru
     thru
     thru
     thru

CREDIT PROCESSING:
7. Enter a '1' to age credits or a
   blank (default) to apply credits to
   the current column.

"AS OF" DATE PROCESSING:
8. Enter a '1' to use "As Of" date
   process. (Note: DREAM Writer Based-On
   file must be F0311A)
PROMISES, PROMISES INFORMATION:
9. Enter one of the following:                      ____________
   ' ' = No Messages print    (Default)
   '1' = Print message type P
   '2' = Print message type P and F
   '3' = Print all messages

"FROM" TICKLER DATE:
10. Enter "From" Tickler Date to print              ____________
    Promises, Promises information.
    If left blank, the current date will
    be used.

CONTACT NAMES:
11. Enter a '1' to print contact names              ____________
    from the Who's Who file. If left
    blank, contact names will not be
    included on the report

ROUNDING FACTOR:
12. Enter desired rounding factor:                  ____________
    ' ' = No rounding
    '0' = Round decimals only
    '1' = Divide by 10
    '2' = Divide by 100
    '3' = Divide by 1000
    '4' = Divide by 10000
    '5' = Divide by 100000
    '6' = Divide by 1000000
    Any value from 0-6 will round the
decimals to whole numbers. Amounts are
divided using 4/5 rounding. Actual
amounts are used to accumulate total
fields.

DRAFTS:
13. Enter a '1' to print a separate                 ____________
    draft amount on the report. If left
    blank, the draft column will not
    appear on the report. (This applies
to all formats except long aging).

GENERIC TEXT:
14. Enter a '1' to print the generic                ____________
    text for pay items in a 40 character
    width, a '2' to print text in an 80
    character width. If left blank,
generic text will not be printed.
Printing the Open A/R Summary Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Periodic Processes

From Periodic Processes (G0321), choose Open A/R Summary Reports

The Open A/R Summary Report lists open A/R summary totals and associated aging. The transactions are summarized by customer number and company. This report has several versions, including:

- Open A/R Summary by Company
- Open A/R Summary by Parent
- Open A/R Summary by Salesperson
- Open A/R Summary by Category Code

See Also

- Printing the Open A/R Summary Report (P03413)
### Printing the Open A/R by Business Unit and Address Report

From **Accounts Receivable (G03)**, choose **Periodic Processes**

From **Periodic Processes (G0321)**, choose **Open A/R by BU and Address**

The Open A/R by Business Unit and Address Report lists information about open amounts for customers based on business unit and address.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Remark</th>
<th>Co Ty</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Itm</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Open</th>
<th>Current</th>
<th>1 – 30</th>
<th>31 – 60</th>
<th>Over 60</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3002 Central Express Store</td>
<td>1 General Accounts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>22,545.00</td>
<td>22545</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3003 Central Specialty Store</td>
<td>1 General Accounts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/12/98 Southwest Area S</td>
<td>RI 602 000 04/12/98</td>
<td>2,175.00</td>
<td>2175</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/31/98</td>
<td>RI 627 000 05/01/98</td>
<td>5,875.00</td>
<td>5875</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06/12/98</td>
<td>RI 980504 05/13/98</td>
<td>7,200.00</td>
<td>7200</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/31/98</td>
<td>RI 627 000 05/31/98</td>
<td>5,000.00</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3004 Centre Gift Store</td>
<td>1 General Accounts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04/12/98 Northeast Store</td>
<td>RI 603 000 04/12/98</td>
<td>1,890.00</td>
<td>1890</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06/08/98</td>
<td>RI 605 000 05/09/98</td>
<td>2,000.00</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03/01/98</td>
<td>RI 614 000 02/12/98</td>
<td>735.00</td>
<td>735</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/31/98</td>
<td>RI 628 000 05/01/98</td>
<td>3,650.21</td>
<td>3650</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td>RI 2074 001 05/29/98</td>
<td>2,500.95</td>
<td>2501</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3005 Centralized Apparel</td>
<td>1 General Accounts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/12/98 Southwestern Sto</td>
<td>RI 604 000 04/12/98</td>
<td>1,610.00</td>
<td>1610</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03/16/98</td>
<td>RI 615 000 02/14/98</td>
<td>1,500.00</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/15/98 Monthly Recurrin</td>
<td>RR 617 000 04/15/98</td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/31/98</td>
<td>RI 629 000 05/01/98</td>
<td>59.36</td>
<td>59</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3006 Centralized Apparel</td>
<td>1 General Accounts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/12/98 Southwestern Sto</td>
<td>RI 604 000 04/12/98</td>
<td>1,610.00</td>
<td>1610</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06/16/98</td>
<td>RI 606 000 05/17/98</td>
<td>2,200.00</td>
<td>2200</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/15/98 Monthly Recurrin</td>
<td>RR 617 000 04/15/98</td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/31/98</td>
<td>RI 629 000 05/01/98</td>
<td>59.36</td>
<td>59</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

J.D. Edwards & Company
What You Should Know About

Printing additional “as of” reports

You can also run the following reports based on the “As Of” Accounts Receivable Ledger worktable:

- Currency Detail – foreign and domestic
- Summary by Pay Status
- Summary by Parent/Child
- Problem Accounts Receivable

Verify that you set the appropriate processing option for the “as of” date processing.

See Also

- Printing Analytical Reports (P03416)
Process A/R Integrity Reports

Processing A/R Integrity Reports

You can locate potential balancing problems and data inconsistencies by working with accounts receivable integrity reports.

Run integrity reports at least once a week during the conversion process when installing new software or during a learning period for new users. This enables you to resolve and correct errors immediately. After this initial period, run the integrity reports on a periodic basis.

Processing A/R integrity reports consist of:

- Running the A/R to G/L by Batch report
- Running the A/R to G/L by Offset Account report
- Correcting A/R out-of-balance conditions

Two A/R integrity reports are available:

**A/R to G/L by Batch**

Verifies that each batch of gross amounts (posted and unposted) to the A/R Ledger table (F0311) is in balance with the corresponding batch of amounts posted to the Account Ledger table (F0911). The system also checks for a valid pay status on every pay item. Any discrepancies print by batch on the integrity report.

**A/R to G/L by Offset Account**

Compares open amounts to the A/R Ledger table to the balance in the offsetting A/R trade accounts in the Account Balances table (F0902). Any differences print by offset account number on the integrity report for posted records.

The A/R integrity reports reflect the A/R to G/L status to date, that is, actual amounts as of the time of processing, including any future-dated activity. If you need a balancing report that is date sensitive, run an “as of” report.
### Accounts Receivable

#### Before You Begin

- Assign a posting edit code of M to A/R trade accounts to allow only system-generated transactions to post. This prevents manual journal entries from posting erroneously to A/R trade accounts.

- Post all A/R batches to ensure a complete integrity test. *It is absolutely necessary to post all batches for the integrities to be meaningful.*

- Schedule integrity reports to run after business hours, when users are not accessing the system.

#### Running the A/R to G/L by Batch Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Periodic Processes

From Periodic Processes (G0321), choose A/R to G/L by Batch

The A/R to G/L by Batch report performs two integrity tests:

##### A/R to G/L by batch

This integrity test does the following:

- Adds all gross amounts (posted and unposted) to the A/R Ledger table for each batch.
- Accumulates all records that are posted to the Account Ledger table for each batch.
- Accumulates the automatic offset amounts that are posted to the A/R trade account for each batch.
- Compares the A/R amount to the G/L amount. The net difference should be zero.
- Compares the A/R amount to the automatic offset amount. These amounts should be equal.

When the system accumulates gross amounts, it does not add G type (general ledger) receipts or the matching document type RG (gain/loss) to the original gross invoice amounts. It also does not add the discount available from the original invoice gross.

##### Invalid Pay Status

This integrity test checks the pay status on every pay item in a batch:

- If an invoice does not have an open amount, the pay status should be P (paid) or S (summarized). S records are created by the program that updates balance forward amounts.
- If an invoice has an open amount, the pay status should not be P. If there are any discrepancies, the invoice records print on the integrity report.
### A/R to G/L by Batch Integrity

**Invalid Pay Status Integrity**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Batch</th>
<th>Gross</th>
<th>Distribution</th>
<th>Automatic Offset</th>
<th>Document</th>
<th>Pay P</th>
<th>Open</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Amount – F0311</td>
<td>Amount – F0911</td>
<td>Amount – F0911</td>
<td>Type/Number Itm S</td>
<td>Amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1978</td>
<td></td>
<td>4,226.88</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3148</td>
<td></td>
<td>10,905.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>1978</td>
<td>4,226.88 –</td>
<td>7,516.75</td>
<td>7,516.75–</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>9901 000 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>3148</td>
<td>10,905.00 –</td>
<td>11,749.50</td>
<td>11,749.50–</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>2 000 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>3148</td>
<td>10,905.00 –</td>
<td>11,749.50</td>
<td>11,749.50–</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>4 000 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>2071</td>
<td>16.16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>2340</td>
<td>30.33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**What You Should Know About**

**Abbreviated column headings**

- **BT** – Batch Type
- **PS** – Pay Status
Running the A/R to G/L by Offset Account Report

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Periodic Processes

From Periodic Processes (G0321), choose A/R to G/L by Offset Account

The A/R to G/L by Offset Account report performs the following integrity test:

A/R to G/L by offset account

This integrity test does the following:

- Accumulates open amounts (posted and unposted) to the A/R Ledger table for each G/L offset. (The G/L offset points to the AAI item for the A/R trade offset account.)
- Compares the G/L offset amount to the corresponding A/R trade account in the Account Balances table (F0902). Any differences in these amounts print by offset account number on the integrity report.
- If the sum of any G/L offset cannot be associated with an account in the Account Balances table, it prints on a separate line on the report.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account</th>
<th>Detail (F0311) Amount Open</th>
<th>A/R Account Balance (F0902)</th>
<th>Difference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1210.</td>
<td>60,779.77</td>
<td>3,307,442.75</td>
<td>3,246,662.98-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.1210.</td>
<td>1,244.23</td>
<td>28,765.90-</td>
<td>30,010.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.1210.</td>
<td>188,181.50</td>
<td>188,181.50</td>
<td>42,611.00-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78.1210.</td>
<td>12,244.72</td>
<td>54,855.72</td>
<td>42,611.00-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>284,509.27</td>
<td>3,355,591.62</td>
<td>3,071,082.35-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Correcting A/R Out-of-Balance Conditions

The following are typical errors, their causes, and possible recovery.

**The batch was posted out of balance without automatic offset entries**

This can occur when there is a power failure during the posting, or if more than one post program is active at the same time.

To correct this error, determine the missing offset entries, create the balancing journal entry (which is one-sided), and post the batch.

Note the settings required to post the offset out-of-balance:

- On Batch Header Revisions, post out of balance must be set to Y.
- On Account Structure by Business Unit or Account, the posting code for the A/R account must be blank (allows you to enter and post non-system-generated transactions.)
- On General Accounting Constants, intercompany settlements must be set to * (asterisk).

**An invalid journal entry was posted to an A/R account**

Typically, the A/R trade offset account only includes system-generated entries with a document type of AE (automatic entry). A manually entered document type that appears in this account, such as JE, can cause a balancing problem.

To correct this, locate the journal entry, void it, and post it.

**Data records are damaged**

This can be caused by a variety of problems, including hardware failure.

If the damaged records are in the A/R Ledger table, you might have to remove them by running a data file utility.

If the damaged records are in the Account Balances table, you might need to repost the account ledger.

See Reposting Account Ledger in the General Accounting II Guide.
**G/L offset was changed**

This error message appears only on the A/R to G/L by Offset Account report.

If you change the G/L offset that your invoices are attached to, the system does not find a match for the A/R Ledger records that still contain the old G/L offset.

The report prints the old RCyyyy item (where yyyy equals the G/L offset) that is missing from AAI's. This item appears on the report under the Account column, along with the sum of the invoices that include the old code. No G/L account balance is printed because the system cannot find a match.

You can correct this problem by doing one of the following:

- If the A/R invoices are open and can be changed to the new offset value, make a journal entry to move the A/R balance to the new offset account.
- Set up the old offset again in AAI's until all open invoices with the old code have been paid.

**An A/R trade account was changed**

This error message appears only on the A/R to G/L by Offset Account report.

If you change the AAI's for the A/R trade account that the invoice G/L offset is attached to, the system does not find a match in the Account Balances table.

In the Detail column, the report prints an amount from the A/R Ledger table (F0311) that is greater than the balance amount from the Account Balances table (F0902). The difference should equal the old A/R trade account balance amount. The association between the G/L offset and the old account number has been lost.

Locate the old A/R trade offset account total and manually add it to balance this account. Or, if possible, make a journal entry to move the old A/R balance to the new offset account.
Statement and Reminder Processing

Objectives

- To update finance charges
- To print finance charge invoices
- To print statements
- To print A/R invoices
- To print delinquency notices and payment reminders

About Statement and Reminder Processing

Your organization might have different tasks for period-end processing including:

- Recycling invoices
- Posting A/R invoices and receipts
- Reconciling A/R to G/L
- Processing and printing statements
- Processing payment reminders or delinquency notices

The Accounts Receivable system provides a wide range of features you can use to complete your period-end tasks.

Statement and reminder processing consists of:

- Working with late payment charges
- Printing statements
- Printing A/R invoices
- Working with past due notifications
- Working with collection and reminder information
The following graphic illustrates the flow of statement and reminder processing.

1. Apply late payment charges (optional)
2. Customize statement messages (optional)
3. Print statements
4. Print invoices
5. Process past due notifications
6. Run collection and reminder reports

**Applying Late Payment Charges**

In the process of billing your customers and collecting funds, it might be necessary to calculate additional charges on invoices. Two methods are available:

- Calculate finance charges on unpaid invoices
- Calculate interest invoices on payments that are late

**Customizing Statement Messages**

You might want to create a personalized message to appear on the statements you send to your customers. You can create a message for a specific customer or all customers in a company. For example, you can create a message for all of your customers that reads *Thank you for your business*. You can also set up a model message to use for several companies.

**See Also**

- *Setting Up Statement Messages (P03280)* for information about customizing statement messages
**Printing Statements**

You can print customized statements for the specific requirements of your customers, such as statements with:

- Invoice detail
- Current balance due
- Outstanding balance due
- Payments received
- Account summary

You determine the aging that is used and the language that prints on the statement.

**Printing Invoices**

You can print invoices created through invoice entry and receipts entry, including items such as:

- Chargeback invoices
- Credit memos
- Finance charge invoices
- Interest invoices

**Processing Past Due Notifications**

When you have customers who are delinquent in paying, you can generate notices to remind customers that you expect payment. You can use two types of past due notifications:

- Delinquency notices
- Payment reminders

**Delinquency Notices**

You can generate notices to remind customers with delinquent accounts that you expect payment.

Three levels of delinquency notices are available, ranging from a friendly reminder to a more severe request. You can revise the text that appears on each level of the reminder or create alternate versions to send to specific customers. You control which customers receive which version.
You also determine the language in which the text prints on the delinquency notices.

**Payment Reminders**

Your company might choose to send payment reminders instead of delinquency notices. Creating payment reminders is part of the collection management process.

**Processing Collection and Reminder Reports**

When you consign delinquent customers or invoices to a collections agency, you might want to print reports containing delinquency information. You can print the following reports:

- Reminder Report/Update
- A/R Detail with Reminders

**See Also**

- *Printing Standard Reports (P034201)*
Work with Late Payment Charges

Working with Late Payment Charges

Choose one of the following methods to calculate charges on late payments:

- Finance charges, which are calculated on unpaid invoices
- Interest invoices, which are calculated on paid invoices when payment is received after the due date

If you use both methods, a customer might be charged finance and interest charges for the same period. Check your local regulations concerning the legality of assessing compound interest charges.

Working with late payment charges consists of:

- Processing finance charge invoices
- Processing interest invoices

Finance charges and interest invoices share the following requirements and features:

- You set up whether to apply finance charges and the monthly finance charge percent in the customer master record.
- You set up the required AAIs.
- The system creates document type RF.
- The system print invoices automatically.
- You run both finance charges and interest invoices in proof or final mode.
- The system updates the following:
  - Finance charge percent
  - A/R invoice information in the general ledger
  - Percentage processing options
  - Address Book YTD finance charges
Finance charges and interest invoices differ in the following ways:

**Finance charges**
- Calculate on unpaid invoices
- Define grace period in the data dictionary
- Set up interest rate in the customer master record or in the processing options

**Interest invoices**
- Calculate on paid invoices
- Define grace period in the processing options
- Set up interest rate in the customer master record, in the processing options, and in interest rate constants

**Processing Finance Charge Invoices**

You can calculate charges for late payments by adding finance charges to unpaid invoices.

Processing finance charge invoices consists of:

- ✔ Updating finance charges
- ✔ Calculating finance charges
- ✔ Correcting discrepancies

**Updating Finance Charges**

From *Accounts Receivable* (G03), choose *Statement/Reminder Processing*

From *Statement/Reminder Processing* (G0322), choose *Update Finance Charges*

You update finance charges to globally update their percentages in the Customer Master table (F0301). This program either adds a percentage amount to the existing finance charge or replaces the current finance charge.

You can run this program in proof or final mode:

- In proof mode, the system produces a report that shows the changes that will be made when you update finance charges in final mode.
- In final mode, the system produces a report and updates the Customer Master table.

You should run the report in proof mode first and review it to verify that your finance charge calculations are correct.
Before You Begin

☐ Set up customers for finance charges. See Entering Customers.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Number</th>
<th>Alpha</th>
<th>Sch</th>
<th>Old %</th>
<th>New %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1001 Edwards, J.D. &amp; Company</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>.021000</td>
<td>.022000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3002 Central Express Store</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>.021000</td>
<td>.022000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the previous sample report, the finance charge is increased by 1 percent (.001) for all customers.

Processing Options for Global Update - Finance Charge Percentage

UPDATE MODE:
1. Enter a ‘1’ to run the update in final mode. If left blank, the batch will run in proof mode, and no update will occur.

PERCENTAGE:
2. Enter a finance charge to be added to the existing percent OR a finance charge to replace the existing percent in the Address Book.

(When entering a percent, you must use the decimal form. For example, two percent would be entered as “0.02”)

Enter the percent to be added:  ____________
- OR -
Enter the replacement percent:  ____________
Calculating Finance Charges

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Statement/Reminder Processing

From Statement/Reminder Processing (G0322), choose Print Finance Charge Invoices

After you update finance charge percentages, run Print Finance Charge Invoices to compute and apply finance charges. This program selects invoices from the A/R Ledger (F0311) and the Customer Master tables that meet the following criteria:

- Invoices must have an unpaid amount as of either the invoice due date or a date entered in the processing options.
- The length of time that the unpaid amount has been open must exceed the grace period. For example, if July 31, 1998, is the effective date entered in the processing options and the grace period is 30 days, unpaid invoices dated before July 1, 1998 will receive a finance charge.
- The finance charge amount must be above a minimum specified in the processing options.

You can calculate finance charges in proof or final mode. Proof mode produces only a report. Final mode produces a report and a batch of unposted finance charge invoices (document type RF) with batch type I (invoice entry).

Before You Begin

- Verify that the customer is set up for finance charges. See Entering Customers.
- Verify that the invoice is set up to receive an finance charge. You can exclude individual invoices from being assessed finance charges. See Managing Collections Information.
- Review data item FD (Finance Charge Days). This item determines the grace period. To change the predefined grace period, change the default value for this data item in the data dictionary. See the Technical Foundation Guide.
- Set up AAI items RFC (Finance Charge Income Credit) and RFD (Finance Charge Receivable Debit). See Working with Automatic Accounting Instructions.
## Work with Late Payment Charges

### Batch Number

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Account</th>
<th>Open</th>
<th>Percent</th>
<th>Finance Charge</th>
<th>Do</th>
<th>Document Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1001</td>
<td>Edwards, J.D. &amp; Company</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3,000.00</td>
<td>0.021000</td>
<td>63.00 RF</td>
<td>873 001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1002</td>
<td>Edwards &amp; Edwards</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>605.00</td>
<td>0.021000</td>
<td>12.71 RF</td>
<td>874 001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Model Accounting Company</td>
<td>3,605.00</td>
<td>75.71</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grand Total</td>
<td>3,605.00</td>
<td>75.71</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What You Should Know About**

**Multi-Currency**

If you use multiple currencies, the system assesses finance charges in the currency code of the base company.

**Processing Options for Printing Finance Charge Invoices**

**PROCESSING MODE:**
1. Enter a ’1’ to run in Final Mode and create G/L and A/R entries. Leave blank to run in Proof Mode.

**DATE PROCESSING:**
2. Enter the G/L date to be entered to the G/L and A/R records. If left blank, today’s date will be used as the default.

3. Enter a ’1’ to compute finance charges using the Net Due Date. If left blank, the Invoice Date will be used.

**DATE PROCESSING (CONTINUED):**
4. Enter the effective date to be used for comparing against the Invoice/Net Due Date above for the finance charge computation. If left blank, today’s date will be used.

**SUPPRESS WARNINGS:**

---

12-9
5. Enter a ‘1’ to suppress printing warnings on the report for finance charges with no errors. If left blank, all warnings will be printed.

FINANCE CHARGES:
6. Enter a ‘1’ to compute compound finance charges (Finance charge on finance charges).

7. Enter an override percent factor to be used when calculating finance charges. If left blank, the finance percent factor will default from Customer Master Information. (Note: 6.5 percent would be entered as .065)

MINIMUM AMOUNT:
8. Specify a minimum amount for creating finance charges. Finance charges will not be created if the amount is less than this limit. If left blank, finance charges will be created regardless of the amount.

INVOICE PRINT:
9. Enter a ‘1’ to print an invoice for each finance charge created. If a ‘1’ is entered here, a ‘1’ must also be entered to run in Final Mode.

INVOICE PRINT (cont.):
10. Enter the version of the Invoice Print program, P03505, to run when printing invoices. If left blank, version ZJDE0001 will be run as the default.

11. Enter the Payment Terms Code to be entered to the new invoices created.

DW VERSION FOR A/R RECORDS:
12. To override standard Accounts Receivable processing (DREAM Writer XT0311Z1, Version ZJDE0001), enter an override version number. This should only be changed by persons responsible for system-wide setup.

DW VERSION FOR G/L RECORDS:
13. To override standard Journal Entry processing (DREAM Writer XT0911Z1 version ZJDE0001), enter an override version number. This should only be changed by persons responsible for system-wide setup.
Correcting Discrepancies

After you print finance charge invoices in proof mode, the report might include incorrect invoices or invoices might be missing from the report. You should resolve these discrepancies before printing the invoices in final mode.

To correct discrepancies

1. Verify that the customer is set up to receive finance charges.
2. Verify that the finance charge rates are correct in either of the following:
   - Customer Master Information.
     Follow the steps in Entering Customers.
   - Processing options for Print Finance Charge Invoices.
3. Verify that the payment is past due (taking into account the grace period). Follow the steps in Viewing Account Status Information.
4. Review the data dictionary item FD (Finance Charge Days) to verify the correct grace period.

   The default is 30 days.

Processing Interest Invoices

After you check your local regulations concerning the legality of assessing compound interest charges, you can begin processing interest invoices.

Processing interest invoices consists of:

- Creating interest invoices
- Reviewing and approving interest invoices
- Posting interest invoices
Creating Interest Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced and Technical Operations (G0331), choose Interest Invoicing

From Interest Invoicing (G03312), choose an option under the Interest Invoice Processing heading

To calculate and apply interest charges, run interest invoices in proof or final mode. The system selects invoices from the A/R Ledger table (F0311) that meet the following criteria:

- Invoices must be fully paid after the net due date or a date specified in the processing options.
- The customer is set up to receive finance charges.
- The Interest Invoicing field must be blank on Collection Management. You can use this field to exclude individual invoices from the interest charges.
- The interest amount must be above the minimum specified in the processing options. Invoices that do not meet the minimum are marked with P (processed) and appear on the proof report with the message Total Below Minimum.
- The invoice must not be marked as processed.

To calculate interest amounts, the system uses the rate you specify for the monthly finance charge percentage in the customer master record and in the interest rate constants. If you do not specify a percentage in the customer master record, the system adds the rate you entered in the processing option to the interest rate constant. If a rate is not entered, the system uses only the interest rate constant.

The system calculates interest on the open amount for the number of days it was paid late. The final interest charge assessed to the customer is the sum of the monthly finance charge percentage and the interest rate constant.
You can run this program in either proof or final mode:

- In proof mode, the system produces a report.
- In final mode, the system:
  - Produces a report.
  - Marks the invoices as P (processed). The system records the interest invoice date on each processed invoice. You can view this date on Collection Management.
  - Creates a batch of unposted interest invoices (document type RF) with batch type I. The system also marks these invoices as P (processed).

**Before You Begin**

- Set up the customer for finance charges.
- Set up the monthly finance charge percentage.
- Set up AAI items RFC (Finance Charge Income Credit) and RFD (Finance Charge Receivable Debit). See *Working with Automatic Accounting Instructions*.
- Revise interest rate tables. See *Working with Interest Rate Information*.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ty</th>
<th>Invoice No.</th>
<th>Inv Date</th>
<th>Remark</th>
<th>G/L Account</th>
<th>Invoice</th>
<th>G/L Date</th>
<th>Account Description</th>
<th>Discount</th>
<th>Distribution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RF</td>
<td>768-001</td>
<td>07/30/98</td>
<td>Interest Invoice</td>
<td>1001</td>
<td>122.55</td>
<td>07/30/98</td>
<td>Edwards, J.D. &amp; Company</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RF</td>
<td>769-001</td>
<td>07/30/98</td>
<td>Interest Invoice</td>
<td>2230</td>
<td>79.15</td>
<td>07/30/98</td>
<td>Dunlop Construction Co</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RF</td>
<td>770-001</td>
<td>07/30/98</td>
<td>Interest Invoice</td>
<td>3001</td>
<td>73.99</td>
<td>07/30/98</td>
<td>May Company</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RF</td>
<td>771-001</td>
<td>07/30/98</td>
<td>Interest Invoice</td>
<td>4006</td>
<td>29.02</td>
<td>07/30/98</td>
<td>A&amp;B Electric Motor Service</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Batch Total - Gross/Posted: 304.71
- Discount/Unposted: 304.71
```
What You Should Know About

Abbreviated column headings

The following abbreviated column headings appear on the A/R Invoice Journal:

- PC – Posted Code
- LT – Ledger Type

Multi-Currency

If you use multiple currencies, the system assesses interest charges in the currency of the invoice.
Processing Options for Interest Invoice Generation

PROOF/FINAL MODE:
1. Enter a "1" for final mode to print invoices and update files. If left blank, a proof report will be printed and no file updates will occur.

AS OF DATE:
2. Enter the “As Of” date for invoice selection. If left blank, the current date will be used.

G/L DATE:
3. Enter the G/L date to be assigned. If left blank, the current date will be used.

ADDITIONAL INTEREST PERCENT:
4. The base finance charge rate is entered in the Interest Rate Constants (by company). If a rate is entered in the Address Book for the customer, it will be added to the base rate. Enter here the amount to be added to the base rate if the rate in the address book is blank.

NOTE: Enter 2.5% as “2.5”, etc. All rates for Interest Invoices are entered as MONTHLY amounts.

MINIMUM AMOUNTS:
5. Enter the minimum amount of interest required per Original Invoice.
6. Enter the minimum amount of interest required per Interest Invoice.
7. Enter the Currency Code that defines the minimum amounts entered above.

TAX RATE/AREA:
8. Enter the Tax Rate/Area Code to be used for VAT tax calculations. Leave blank for no VAT tax.

PAYMENT TERMS:
9. Enter the Payment Terms code to be applied to the invoice.

EXTRA CREDIT DAYS:
10. Enter the number of days to be given as a grace period.

PRINTING OF INTEREST RATE:
11. Enter rate to be printed in Interest Rate column:
   “1” = Daily rate,
   “2” = Monthly rate,
   “3” = Annual rate.
Reviewing and Approving Interest Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced and Technical Operations (G0331), choose Interest Invoicing

From Interest Invoicing (G03312), choose Invoice Journal Review

After you create interest invoices in final mode, you should review the transactions and correct any individual transactions in the batch.

After you review batches, you must approve and post them. Remember that the system posts only batches that have an approved status.

See Also

- Reviewing and Approving Invoices (P03201)

Posting Interest Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced and Technical Operations (G0331), choose Interest Invoicing

From Interest Invoicing (G03312), choose Post Invoices to G/L

After you review and approve the interest invoices, you must post the batches of invoices to the G/L. When you post the batches, the system updates the appropriate tables and creates the necessary journal entries.

See Also

- Posting Invoices (P09800)
Print Statements

Printing Statements

You send statements to your customers to inform them that they owe your business or company money.

Printing statements consists of:

- Printing A/R statements
- Printing multi-currency statements
- Printing Italian statements

Statements print in the language specified in the Address Book Master table (F0101). Statement text is determined by the vocabulary overrides. For example, version S035001F and S035001G are the French and German versions, respectively.

Printing A/R Statements

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Statement/Reminder Processing
From Statement/Reminder Processing (G0322), choose Print Statements

You can print A/R statements to inform your customers of their account activity. You can customize statements for your organization. They can include:

- Invoice detail
- Current balance due
- Account summary
- Account aging

To see a preview of your statements, first print them in proof mode. Proof mode provides a report that you can use to verify the accuracy of your information and correct any errors. To update any tables, print the statements in final mode.
In addition to creating separate statements for each company, you can consolidate companies into one statement by assigning a remittance company in the processing options.

Printing A/R statements consists of:

- Printing statements in proof or final mode
- Printing statements with or without consolidation of companies

A/R statements contains information from the A/R Cash Management worktable (F0315). The system re-creates this table each time you run Credit Analysis Refresh. You decide what information is in the A/R Cash Management worktable by the frequency with which you create the table.

The system gathers information from the following tables and updates the A/R Cash Management worktable.
Before You Begin

☐ Activate the print statements feature in the A/R constants and in the customer master record

☐ Run Update A/R from Address Book

Printing Statements in Proof or Final Mode

You can print statements in proof or final mode. You should print the statement first in proof mode to verify the information on the proof report and correct any errors. Print the report again in proof mode before printing statements in final mode.

In final mode, the system produces the final statements and updates the appropriate tables.

The following is an example of a report in proof mode. The report in final mode is the same, except “proof” does not appear in the report heading.
### Statement of Account

**Remit To:** A Model Financial/Distribution Company  
8055 East Tufts Avenue Suite 1331  
Denver CO 80237

**Edwards & Edwards**  
Mrs. Mary Andrews  
Attn: Patrick O'Dooley  
1029 LBJ Freeway  
Dallas TX 76706

**Date:** 06/30/98  
**Account:** 1002

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Invoice Number</th>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Open Amount</th>
<th>Discount Taken</th>
<th>Payments Received</th>
<th>Adjustments</th>
<th>Outstanding Balance Due</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
<td>03/17/98</td>
<td>74,092.80</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>1,250.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
<td>04/14/98</td>
<td>92,054.70</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>92,054.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RM</td>
<td>05/31/98</td>
<td>18,494.60</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>18,494.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR</td>
<td>06/14/98</td>
<td>125.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>125.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total Current Balance Due:** 74,935.10

---

**Account Summary**

- Open Amount - as of 06/30/98: 147,777.90
- New Invoices: 0.00
- Discounts Taken: 0.00
- Payments Received - Thank You: 0.00
- Adjustments: 0.00

**Current Balance Due:** 74,935.10

**Payment Terms:** 1/10 Net 30 Days

---

**Account Aging**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Current</th>
<th>1 – 30</th>
<th>31 – 60</th>
<th>61 – 90</th>
<th>91 – 120</th>
<th>Over 120</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>18,369.60</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>92,054.70</td>
<td>1,250.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Summary Page**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Invoice Number</th>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Open Amount</th>
<th>Discount Taken</th>
<th>Payments Received</th>
<th>Adjustments</th>
<th>Outstanding Balance Due</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>147,777.90</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>74,935.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Account Aging**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Current</th>
<th>1 – 30</th>
<th>31 – 60</th>
<th>61 – 90</th>
<th>91 – 120</th>
<th>Over 120</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>18,369.60</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>92,054.70</td>
<td>1,250.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Printing Statements with or without Consolidation of Companies**

You control whether to consolidate companies when you print statements. Do this when you set up your data sequencing.

The following examples show two types of statements in final mode:

- Statement without Consolidation of Companies by Customer Number
- Statement with Consolidation of Companies by Customer Number
### Statement of Account

**Remit To:** A Model Financial/Distribution Company  
8055 East Tufts Avenue Suite 1331  
Denver CO 80237

**Mrs. Mary Andrews**  
Attn: Patrick O’Dooley  
1029 LBJ Freeway  
Dallas TX 75206

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Invoice Number</th>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Discount Taken</th>
<th>Payments Received</th>
<th>Adjustments</th>
<th>Outstanding Balance Due</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
<td>03/17/98</td>
<td>74,092.80</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>1,250.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
<td>04/14/98</td>
<td>92,054.70</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>92,054.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RM</td>
<td>05/31/98</td>
<td>18,494.60</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>18,494.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR</td>
<td>06/14/98</td>
<td>125.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>125.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TOTAL CURRENT BALANCE DUE:** 74,935.10

---

**ACCOUNT SUMMARY**

- Open Amount - as of 06/30/98: 147,777.90
- New Invoices: 0.00
- Discounts Taken: 0.00
- Payments Received - Thank You: 0.00
- Adjustments: 0.00

**Current Balance Due:** 74,935.10

**ACCOUNT AGING**

- Current: 0.00
- 1 – 30: 18,369.60
- 31 – 60: 0.00
- 61 – 90: 92,054.70
- 91 – 120: 1,250.00
- Over 120: 0.00

---

**SUMMARY PAGE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Invoice Number</th>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Discount Taken</th>
<th>Payments Received</th>
<th>Adjustments</th>
<th>Outstanding Balance Due</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>147,777.90</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>74,935.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ACCOUNT AGING**

- Current: 0.00
- 1 – 30: 18,369.60
- 31 – 60: 0.00
- 61 – 90: 92,054.70
- 91 – 120: 1,250.00
- Over 120: 0.00

---

We appreciate your business.
Statement with Consolidation of Companies by Customer Number

---

**STATEMENT OF ACCOUNT**

---

Remit To: A Model Financial/Distribution Company
8055 East Tufts Avenue Suite 1331
Denver CO 80237

Edwards & Edwards
Mrs. Mary Andrews
Attn: Patrick O'Dooley
1029 LBJ Freeway
Dallas TX 75230

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Invoice Number</th>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Remark</th>
<th>Open</th>
<th>Discount</th>
<th>Payments</th>
<th>Adjustments</th>
<th>Outstanding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RI 4454 000 05/15/98</td>
<td>125.00-</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>125.00-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI 659 000 06/11/98</td>
<td>605.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>605.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

USD U.S. Dollar
480.00 | .00 | .00 | .00 | 480.00

---

COMPANY: 00075 Model Multi-National Colombia
RI 1064 000 06/01/98
50,204,053 | 0 | 0 | 50,204,053

---

COP Colombian Peso
50,204,053 | 0 | 0 | 50,204,053

---

COMPANY: 00100 Model Financial/Distrib Co (Mktg)
RI 4239 000 03/17/98
74,092.80 | .00 | .00 | .00 | 74,092.80 |
RI 4436 000 04/14/98
92,054.70 | .00 | .00 | .00 | 92,054.70 |
RM 5150 000 05/31/98
18,494.60- | .00 | .00 | .00 | 18,494.60- |
RA 824 000 06/14/98
125.00 | .00 | .00 | .00 | 125.00 |

---

USD U.S. Dollar
147,777.90 | .00 | .00 | .00 | 74,935.10

We appreciate your business.

---

**SUMMARY PAGE**

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Invoice Number</th>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Remark</th>
<th>Open</th>
<th>Discount</th>
<th>Payments</th>
<th>Adjustments</th>
<th>Outstanding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RI 4454 000 05/15/98</td>
<td>125.00-</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>125.00-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI 659 000 06/11/98</td>
<td>605.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>605.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

USD U.S. Dollar
480.00 | .00 | .00 | .00 | 480.00

---

COMPANY: 00075 Model Multi-National Colombia
RI 1064 000 06/01/98
50,204,053 | 0 | 0 | 50,204,053

---

COP Colombian Peso
50,204,053 | 0 | 0 | 50,204,053

---

COMPANY: 00100 Model Financial/Distrib Co (Mktg)
RI 4239 000 03/17/98
74,092.80 | .00 | .00 | .00 | 74,092.80 |
RI 4436 000 04/14/98
92,054.70 | .00 | .00 | .00 | 92,054.70 |
RM 5150 000 05/31/98
18,494.60- | .00 | .00 | .00 | 18,494.60- |
RA 824 000 06/14/98
125.00 | .00 | .00 | .00 | 125.00 |

---

USD U.S. Dollar
147,777.90 | .00 | .00 | .00 | 74,935.10

---

**ACCOUNT AGING**

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Current</th>
<th>1 - 30</th>
<th>31 - 60</th>
<th>61 - 90</th>
<th>91 - 120</th>
<th>Over 120</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.00</td>
<td>484,275.93</td>
<td>125.00-</td>
<td>92,054.70</td>
<td>1,250.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

We appreciate your business.
What You Should Know About

Determining aging criteria  You can use the processing options to determine the aging criteria and how to format the statements.

Aging  If you are aging statements on due date and attempt to summarize invoices, the summary might be inaccurate. Also, the aging categories might not show the correct balances.

Summarizing invoices with pay items  If you summarize invoices with pay items that have different due dates, you should age and sort by invoice date. To sort by invoice date, select a version of P03500X in the processing options that sequences by invoice date rather than due date.

Reprinting a statement  You cannot reprint statements and produce the exact results that printed previously. After the system marks a payment record with a statement number and date, it does not select the detail record again in the statement process, but includes it in the summary open amount.

Versions  When you print statements, the version list appears with a form ID of P035001. The versions in this list print selected or all invoices for a statement, depending on which version of Form P03500X you enter.

See Also

• Appendix F for more information about version P03500X

Processing Options for Accounts Receivable Statements

PROOF/FINAL MODE:
1. Enter a '1' to run the statements in final mode. If left blank, the statements will be run in proof mode and no updates will occur.

COMPANY CONSOLIDATION:
2. Enter a company to be used for the 'Remit To' company, aging constants and/or special text when performing company consolidation. If left blank, separate statements will be printed per company.

CREDIT/CASH MANAGEMENT FILE BUILD:
3. Enter a '1' to rebuild the temporary A/R Credit/Cash Management work file
Print Statements

(F0315WJA) prior to printing A/R statements. The Based On File must be F0315WJA. If left blank, the existing Credit/Cash Management file (F0315JA) will be used.

4. Enter a ’1’ to include zero open balance records when rebuilding the temporary A/R Credit/Cash Management work file (F0315WJA).

AGING:

5. Enter a ’1’ to retrieve the aging specifications and statement date from A/R Company Constants, ignoring the following options 6 through 9. Leave blank to use the following processing options 6 through 9 to specify the statement date and aging.

6. Enter the statement date. Open balances are aged as of this date and detail records are selected based on this date.

7. Specify the date from which to age open balances:
   D = Due Date (default)
   I = Invoice Date
   G = General Ledger Date
   S = Statement Date

8. Specify the method for defining aging categories:
   1 = Aging Days (default)
   2 = Fiscal Periods
   3 = Calendar

9. If using the Aging Days method, enter the aging day ranges:

10. Enter a ’1’ to apply credits to the current aging balance. Leave blank to age credits.

DATA SELECTION:

11. Enter the version number for the F0311 selection and sorting DREAM Writer (Form ID P03500X). If left blank, version ’ZJDE0003’ will be used. See program helps for more information.

12. Enter a ’1’ to exclude future amounts.

13. Enter a ’1’ to exclude paid invoices. Blank will print paid
invoices with current activity.

14. Enter a ‘1’ to process with multi-currency. Leave blank to process statements in domestic currency only.

15. Specify the date to be used to select detail records. This date will be compared to the Statement Date:
   D = Due Date
   I = Invoice Date
   G = General Ledger Date
   S = Statement Date
   Leave blank to use aging date.

PRINT FORMAT:
16. Enter a ‘1’ to print aging information on the statement.

17. Enter a ‘1’ to suppress printing the account summary information at the end of the statement.

18. Enter a ‘1’ to print the invoice date on the statement. Leave blank to print the due date.

19. Enter a ‘1’ for RIBA draft format. Leave blank for standard format.

20. Enter a ‘1’ to print the following at the top of each statement:
   Statement Number . . . .
   Remit To Address . . . .

21. Specify which address is used as the “Remit To” address:
   blank = Company (default)
   A = 1st Address Number
   B = 2nd Address Number
   C = 3rd Address Number
   D = 4th Address Number
   E = Factor/Special Payee
   F = 5th Address Number
   address = address entered

22. Enter a ‘1’ to summarize each invoice on a single detail line. Leave blank to print each pay item on a separate detail line.

STATEMENT NUMBER UPDATE:
23. Enter one of the following values to update the statement number in the A/R Ledger file:
   ‘ ’ = Always update statement number
   ‘1’ = Never update statement number
   ‘2’ = Update only blank statement numbers

What You Should Know About Processing Options

Aging days method (7)  The following is an example of how to enter the aging day ranges:

- Beginning –30
- thru 0
- thru 30
- thru 60
- thru 90
- thru 120

RIBA draft format (17)  Italian clients use RIBA.

Printing Multi-Currency Statements

If you use multiple currencies, you can print statements in either the domestic currency of the transaction or the original foreign currency amount. The currency code and description appear on the multi-currency statement to indicate the currency that the amounts represent.

Consider setting up separate addresses, each with its own currency, for a customer who uses more than one currency. The system separates statements and correctly represents all currencies entered to the same address. If currencies are mixed, the system does not print a summary page of the statement.

Printing an Italian Statement

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced and Technical Operations (G0331), choose Italian A/R Statements

You might need to print a report of Italian A/R statements by customer. You can print the report on standard paper or on a legal form that is prenumbered and approved by tax authorities in Italy. If you use the prenumbered form, you can use the processing option to suppress the headings and page numbers on the report.

Italian A/R statements contain information from the A/R Ledger table (F0311).
Processing Options for A/R Statements - Italian

G/L DATE:
1. Enter the From and Through G/L Dates:

   From G/L Date
   Through G/L Date

   If you do not enter the From G/L Date
   the system uses zero as the default.
   If you do not enter the Through G/L
   Date, the system uses today’s date.

PRINT OPTIONS:
2. Enter a 1 to suppress report headings            ____________
   and page numbers. Default of blank
   will print headings and page numbers.

3. Enter a ’1’ to have only the first               ____________
   line of address printed. Default of
   blank will print complete address.

4. Enter a ’1’ to create totals on                  ____________
   foreign currency column. Default of
   blank will not print a total.

Data Selection and Sequence for Italian A/R Statement

These data selections cannot be changed:

- Check/item document type *EQ *BLANKS
- Document type *NE RI (receivable drafts)

J.D. Edwards suggests that you use the following data sequence:

1. Alpha name
2. Address number
3. Document company
4. Document type
5. Document number
6. Pay item

Exercises
See the exercises for this chapter.
Test Yourself: Printing a Statement

1. Which table or tables is the Print Statements program based on?
   a. Rebuilt Cash Management (F0315WJA)
   b. A/R Ledger (F0311)
   c. Customer Master (F0301)
   d. Existing Cash Management (F0315JA)
   e. a and d
   f. b and c

2. True or False
   To print statements for a specific customer, the only setup required is the Print Statements field on Customer Master Information.

3. True or False
   A customized message can be included on statements for customers who have done business with you for a long time.

4. If you want to include account summary information on the statements, which of the following controls this option?
   a. The processing options in Print Statements
   b. The text in Statements Print Messages
   c. Data on Customer Master Information
   d. Balance Forward Update
   e. The data selections in Print Statements

The answers are in Appendix B.
Print A/R Invoices

Printing A/R Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Statement/Reminder Processing

From Statement/Reminder Processing (G0322), choose Print A/R Invoices

To print the invoices that you created during invoice entry or receipts entry, run Print A/R Invoices. This program prints items such as:

- Chargeback invoices (document type RB)
- Credit memos (document type RM)
- Finance charge invoices (document type RF)
- Interest invoices (document type RF)

If an invoice has a discount available or an applied tax amount, it prints on the invoice. Additionally, text messages from form S03505 in the vocabulary overrides print on the invoice.

If you specify that the invoices be sent to someone other than the customer, the system prints the selected address on the invoices. Each invoice prints on a separate page.

Before You Begin

- Generate the necessary finance or interest charges.
- Run Update A/R from Address Book program. See *Updating A/R from Address Book*. 
Please be advised that your account has been debited or back charged as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Ty</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Remark</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>635 000</td>
<td>07/01/98</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,850.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Balance Due 1,850.00

What You Should Know About

**Multi-Currency**

If you use multiple currencies, set the processing option to print invoices in either the domestic currency of the transaction or the original foreign currency amount. The currency code and description indicate the currency that the amounts represent. (Use one of the demo versions labeled *Foreign*.)
Processing Options for Simple A/R Invoices Print

INVOICE SELECTION DATE RANGE:
1. Enter the as of date after which all invoices should be printed. The range will include the date entered. This is a mandatory entry.

2. Enter the cut off date before all desired invoices should be printed. The range will include the date entered. This is a mandatory entry.

PRINT OPTIONS:
3. Enter a ’1’ to print the invoice using the foreign amount. A default of a blank will print the domestic amount.

4. Enter a ’1’ to print tax amount on the invoice. A default of a blank will not print tax amounts.
Work with Past Due Notifications

When customers are delinquent in paying, you can send them one of the following:

- Payment reminder
- Delinquency notice

Payment reminders and delinquency notices are similar in that:

- You can create user-defined text.
- You can specify three levels of text – mild to severe.
- You can print them in proof and final mode.
- You set up the A/R constants.
- You designate which notification in the customer master record.

Payment reminders and delinquency notices differ in the following areas:

**Payment reminders**
- Text for the payment reminder can be customized by company or customer.
- Information is based on the A/R Ledger table (F0311).
- The customer master information is set for number of payment reminders.
- Customers are eligible for collections reporting.

**Delinquency notices**
- Text for the delinquency notice is entered in the data dictionary and cannot be customized by company or customer.
- Information is based on the A/R Ledger table or A/R Cash Management worktable (F0315).
- The number of payment reminders is not required in the customer master record.
- There is no associated collection reporting.
Working with past due notifications consists of:

- Printing payment reminders
- Printing delinquency notices

**Printing Payment Reminders**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Statement/Reminder Processing

From Statement/Reminder Processing (G0322), choose Print Statements

If your company sends reminder notices for past due invoices, you need to print payment reminders.

You can set up text for payment reminders by company or by customer. In the customer master record, you indicate how many reminders you want the customer to receive. The system generates payment reminders based on information in the A/R Ledger table.

Printing payment reminders consists of:

- Printing payment reminders in proof mode
- Printing payment reminders in final mode

The following graphic illustrates how customers or invoices are selected for payment reminders.
Work with Past Due Notifications

- Run payment reminders
  - Customer Master
    - Delinquency notice = Y
    - Number of reminders = 1 - 3
    - Collection report = Y / N

**Processing Options**

- Overdue balance as of MM / DD / YY = NO
  - Overdue amount GE XXX = NO
    - Number of days since last payment reminder = NO
      - Proposed list of customer / invoice for payment reminder
  - Customer / invoice NOT considered for payment reminders
Before You Begin

- Verify that A/R constants are set up properly for payment reminders
- Verify that the fields in the customer master record are set up properly for payment reminders
- Review the payment reminder messages
- Create any necessary new reminder messages for a customer or company

Printing Payment Reminders in Proof Mode

To review the list of customers eligible to receive payment reminders, print payment reminders in proof mode. This allows you to make changes before you process reminders in final mode. In proof mode, the system:

- Does not update tables
- Lets you run the report as many times as you want
- Does not print actual payment reminders

Printing Payment Reminders in Final Mode

After you print payment reminders in proof mode and verify the information, print them in final mode. The system prints payment reminders based on the criteria you established in proof mode. In final mode, the system:

- Updates the A/R Ledger table with the following information:
  - The number of reminders sent for each level.
  - The level of the last reminder that was sent for each invoice. For example, customers or invoices currently at level 2 will be at level 3 the next time you run this program in final mode.
  - The date you ran the program.
- Updates the Customer Master table (F0301) with the level of reminder sent for each invoice.

The system determines which text to print on the reminder notices by checking the outstanding invoices. It prints the highest level message. For example, it prints a level 3 message for a customer with three outstanding invoices even if one is at level 1, one at level 2, and one at level 3.
After all three reminder notices have been sent to a customer with a delinquent account, the invoice appears on the Reminder Report/Update unless you do one of the following:

- Set the Collections Report field on Customer Master Information to N. This removes all invoices for a customer from the Reminder Report/Update.
- Set the Collections Report field to N and enter a code in the Reminder Stop Reason field on Collection Management (for a specific invoice). This removes the invoice from the Reminder Report/Update.

The reminder continues to appear on the invoice, but the invoice does not appear on the Reminder Report/Update.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inv Date</th>
<th>Ty</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>G/L Date</th>
<th>Curr</th>
<th>Open</th>
<th>Open</th>
<th>Original</th>
<th>Open</th>
<th>Number Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>02/01/98</td>
<td>RU</td>
<td>9005</td>
<td>02/01/98</td>
<td>02/01/98</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>2,000.00-</td>
<td>2,000.00-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04/20/98</td>
<td>RN</td>
<td>1936</td>
<td>05/05/98</td>
<td>04/30/98</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>200.00</td>
<td>200.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03/31/98</td>
<td>RJ</td>
<td>819</td>
<td>05/05/98</td>
<td>03/31/98</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>341.67</td>
<td>341.67</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05/31/98</td>
<td>RJ</td>
<td>827</td>
<td>05/31/98</td>
<td>05/31/98</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>695.83</td>
<td>695.83</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02/28/98</td>
<td>RJ</td>
<td>811</td>
<td>02/28/98</td>
<td>02/28/98</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>750.00</td>
<td>750.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04/30/98</td>
<td>RJ</td>
<td>823</td>
<td>04/30/98</td>
<td>04/30/98</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>895.83</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04/01/98</td>
<td>RD</td>
<td>663</td>
<td>04/01/98</td>
<td>04/01/98</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>1,650.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04/01/98</td>
<td>RD</td>
<td>663</td>
<td>05/01/98</td>
<td>04/01/98</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>3,300.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Currency Code: 5,833.33 3,833.33

Abernathy & Hitch 5,833.33 3,833.33

What You Should Know About

Multi-Currency If you use multiple currencies and you run payment reminders for all companies, you might get incorrect customer totals. Therefore, you should set up a version of this report for each company.
Processing Options for Payment Reminder - Final

PROOF/FINAL MODE:
1. Enter a ’1’ to print a Final payment reminder. A default value of blank will print a Proof payment reminder.

AS OF DATE:
2. Enter the “As Of” Date to be used for invoice selection. If left blank, the current date will be used. The system selects invoices with overdue amounts and invoice dates greater than or equal to this date for payment reminders.

MINIMUM DAYS:
3. Enter the minimum number of days between payment reminders.

MINIMUM AMOUNTS:
4. Enter the total minimum amount open for a customer that is required to send a reminder.
   ** Note: Please enter Twelve Dollars and Twenty-Five cents as 12.25, One Dollar as 1.00.

5. Enter the currency code that defines the minimum amount open.

TEXT MESSAGE:
6. Enter a ”y” to print a text message on the reminder. (Final mode only)

NUMBER OF REMINDERS:
7. Enter the number of payment reminders to send. If left blank, the default value is ’3’.
   The system will use the number of reminders specified at the invoice level first, then at the customer level and then in this processing option until a non-blank value is found.

Data Selection for Print Payment Reminders

The following data selection is required:

- The open amount cannot equal zero.
- The document type cannot equal RF (to exclude finance charges).
Printing Delinquency Notices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Statement/Reminder Processing

From Statement/Reminder Processing (G0322), choose Print Delinquency Notices

You can use delinquency notices to remind delinquent customers that you expect payment. You can use these notices if you choose not to use payment reminders. Notices are generated at the customer level.

You can define three different levels of text for delinquency notices. You link each notice to an aging category and control the notices you want to print with processing options.

Depending on a processing option, the system generates delinquency notices based on summarized account information in the A/R Cash Management worktable (F0315).

Printing delinquency notices consists of:

- Determining the level of severity
- Printing the notices
- Printing a multi-currency delinquency notice
- Printing delinquency notices in multiple languages

Determining the Level of Severity

You determine the level of severity of delinquency notices, when the customer begins receiving them, and how often. You can base this on the number of aging days, the open amount, and any payment expectations you and your client have agreed upon.

Example: Determining the Level of Severity for a Delinquency Notice

The total open amount for a customer is 1,000 and is aged as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aging Days</th>
<th>0-30</th>
<th>31-60</th>
<th>61-90</th>
<th>91-120</th>
<th>121-150</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open Amount</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aging Category</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Dictionary</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>LETTER1</td>
<td>LETTER2</td>
<td>LETTER3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assume that you have used the processing options to define aging categories and to link the data dictionary items LETTER1, LETTER2, and LETTER3 to specific aging categories.
Specify 25 (for 25 percent) in the processing option (Total Percentage).

As a result of your choices:

- The customer receives a delinquency notice based on LETTER2, because the total amount in aging categories 4 and above is 250, which is 25% of 1,000 (the total open amount).
- The customer does not receive a delinquency notice based on LETTER3, because the total amount in aging categories 5 and above is only 100, which is less than 25% of 1,000.
- The customer does not receive a delinquency notice based on LETTER1, because the conditions have been fulfilled to generate LETTER2, which is a more severe letter.

If you leave the processing option (Total Percentage) blank, the customer receives a delinquency notice based on LETTER3 because they have an open amount in aging category 5.

**Printing the Notices**

To remind delinquent customers that you expect payment, print delinquency notices. You can reprint notices as often as needed.

You can print notices for:

- Selected invoices for the customer
- All invoices for a customer

**Before You Begin**

- Define or revise the text for delinquency notices. See *Revising Text for Delinquency Notices*.
- Verify that A/R constants are correct for delinquency notices.
- Verify that the customer master record is set up properly for delinquency notices.
- Run Update A/R from Address Book to ensure that the A/R Ledger table contains current information. See *Updating A/R from Address Book*. 
Remit To: A Model Financial/Distribution Company
8055 East Tufts Avenue
Suite 1331
Denver CO 80237

Bonjour Baking Company
5951 Jonquiére
Quebec City QU G1M 6K8

The following is a summary of past due amounts on your account. If your check for these amounts is in the mail, please accept our appreciation. If not, we would appreciate your sending payment in full at this time, or letting us know the reason for the delay.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Invoice Number</th>
<th>Invoice Due Date</th>
<th>Remark</th>
<th>Outstanding Balance Due</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RI 2022 000</td>
<td>05/15/98</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,200.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI 2023 000</td>
<td>07/15/98</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,250.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI 2024 000</td>
<td>07/20/98</td>
<td></td>
<td>3,350.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI 2025 000</td>
<td>07/25/98</td>
<td></td>
<td>980.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI 2049 001</td>
<td>07/27/98</td>
<td></td>
<td>6,599.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CAD Canadian Dollar

13,380.00

ACCOUNT AGING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Current</th>
<th>1 – 30</th>
<th>31 – 60</th>
<th>61 – 90</th>
<th>91 – 120</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12,180.00</td>
<td>1,206.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>121 – 150</th>
<th>151 – 180</th>
<th>Over 180</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
<td>.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What You Should Know About

Versions

When you print delinquency notices, the version list appears with a form ID of P035111. The versions in this list print selected or all invoices for a customer, depending on which version of Form P035111X you enter.
Printing a Multi-Currency Delinquency Notice

If you use multiple currencies, you can print delinquency notices in either domestic or foreign currency.

To print delinquency notices with foreign currencies, run the foreign version. You can print delinquency notices in multiple currencies or the domestic currency of the company only.

J.D. Edwards recommends that you use separate address numbers for customers who mix currencies. However, delinquency notices allow for the possibility that you might have mixed currencies. A notice with mixed currencies shows separate totals for each currency. Each total is labeled with a currency code and description. If more than one currency is printed on a delinquency notice, that notice does not show aging information.

Printing Delinquency Notices in Multiple Languages

To print delinquency notices in more than one language, you create data dictionary items in that language. Then, create vocabulary override records for delinquency notices (S035111). When you print delinquency notices in multiple languages, the program checks the language preference for the customer to determine which text to use.

Printing delinquency notices in multiple languages consists of:

- Creating data dictionary items
- Creating vocabulary overrides

Creating Data Dictionary Items

Create versions of LETTER1, LETTER2, and LETTER3 called LETTER1X, LETTER2X, and LETTER3X, where X is the language preference as specified in the Address Book Master table (F0101). For example, create data dictionary items LETTER1F, LETTER2F, and LETTER3F to print notices in French.

See Also

- Working with the Data Dictionary (P9201) in the Technical Foundation Guide for more information about creating data dictionary items

Creating Vocabulary Overrides

Create a version of S035111 called S035111X, where X is the language preference as defined on Customer Master Information. For example, create an override called S035111F to print notices in French.
See Also

- *Locating Vocabulary Overrides (P9220) in the Technical Foundation Guide*

**Processing Options for Printing Delinquency Notices**

**CREDIT/CASH MANAGEMENT BUILD:**
1. Enter a ’1’ to rebuild the temporary A/R Credit/Cash Management workfile (F0315WJA) prior to printing delinquency notices. The Based On File must be F0315WJA. If left blank, the existing Credit/Cash Management file (F0315JA) will be used.

**AGING:**
2. Enter a ’1’ to retrieve the aging specifications from A/R Company Constants. Leave blank to use the following processing options for aging specifications.
   NOTE: If selected, all other aging processing options will be ignored.

3. Enter the Notice Date. Open balances are aged as of this date. Leave blank to use today’s date.

**AGING (CONT’D):**
4. Specify the date from which to age open balances:
   - D = Due Date (Default)
   - I = Invoice Date
   - G = General Ledger Date
   - S = Statement Date

5. Specify the method for defining aging categories:
   - 1 = Aging Days (Default)
   - 2 = Fiscal Periods
   - 3 = Calendar

**AGING (CONT’D):**
6. If using the Aging Days method, enter the aging day ranges:
   - Beginning
   - thru
   - thru
   - thru
   - thru
   - thru
   - thru

**DATA SELECTION:**
7. Enter a ’1’ to exclude future amounts.

**MULTICURRENCY PROCESSING:**
8. Enter a ’1’ to process with multi-currency. Leave blank to process notices in domestic currency only.
FORMAT:
9. Enter a ‘1’ to print the “Remit To” address at the top of each notice.

10. Enter the date to print on the notices. Leave blank to use the “As Of” date.

11. Enter a ‘1’ to print the A/R detail records.

DETAIL SELECTION AND SORTING:
12. Enter the Version number for the F0311 Selection/Sort DREAM Writer. (Form ID P03511X) If left blank, version ‘ZJDE0004’ will be used.

AS OF DATE PROCESS:
13. Enter a ‘1’ to use “As Of” date process. You must use a version of P03511X that is based on the F0311A instead of the F0311.

DELINQUENCY NOTICE TEXT:
14. For each level of notices, specify the aging category and data dictionary item for narrative text. Valid aging categories are “C” (current) or 1 – 7.

    Aging category for mild notice Data Dictionary item for text

    Aging category for second warning Data Dictionary item for text

    Aging category for severe warning Data Dictionary item for text

TOTAL PERCENTAGE:
15. Enter a percentage of the total amount due to be exceeded in order to print the delinquency notice. Enter the percentage as a whole number; 5% should be entered as 5.

TICKLER FILE:
16. Enter a ‘1’ to write a message to the tickler file indicating that a notice has been sent.
   - Enter a version of the E-Mail Message Server (X00PPAT1). If left blank, the default is ZJDE0002.
Work with Collection and Reminder Information

After you send payment reminders, you might have customers that do not respond to your request for payment on overdue invoices. Some businesses or companies consign customers with delinquent invoices to a collection agency.

Working with collection and reminder information consists of:

- Choosing a customer for collections
- Choosing an invoice for collections
- Printing the reminder report/update
- Printing the A/R detail report with reminders

Choosing a Customer for Collections

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer and Invoice Entry

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Customer Master Information

When you determine that a customer should appear on a collection report that you send to an outside collections agency, you must identify the customer as eligible for collections.
To choose a customer for collections

On Customer Master Information

Complete the following field:

- Collection Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Collection Rpt</td>
<td>A code that indicates whether invoices for a particular customer appear for collection. If this field is Y (the default), invoices appear on the collection report after the maximum number of reminders have been sent to the customer and the final collection report is generated. If you enter N in this field, the customer’s invoices are not eligible to appear on the collection report.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Choosing an Invoice for Collections

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer and Invoice Entry

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Customer Ledger Inquiry

When you determine that an invoice should appear on a collection report to be sent to an outside collections agency, you must identify the invoice.

To choose an invoice for collections

On Customer Ledger Inquiry

1. Locate the invoice.
2. Choose the Collection Management option next to the appropriate invoice.
3. On Collection Management, complete the following fields:
   - Collection Report
   - Collection Reason Code

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Collection Reason Code</td>
<td>A user defined code (system 03/type CI) that indicates either the reason that the invoice was sent to collections or the particular collection agency responsible for the collection. A code is entered in this field when an invoice is sent to collections.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Printing the Reminder Report/Update**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Statement and Reminder Processing

From Statement and Reminder Processing (G0322), choose Reminder Report/Update

Run Reminder Report/Update to print a report that lists all invoices or customers that you want to consign to a collection agency.

You can run this report in proof or final mode:

- In proof mode, the system prints all invoices that are overdue with a reminder level of 4. No table updates occur at this time.
- In final mode, the system updates the following:
• The date sent to collection records in the A/R Ledger table (F0311).
• The number of reminders sent to collections in the Customer Master Information table (F0301).

Before You Begin

☐ Set the Collection Report field for the customer on Customer Master Information. See Choosing a Customer for Collections.

☐ Set the Collection Report field for the overdue invoice on Collection Management. See Choosing an Invoice for Collections.

What You Should Know About

Multi-Currency  This report shows both domestic and foreign gross and open amounts.

Processing Options for Reminder Report-Proof & Final

PROOF/FINAL MODE:
1. Enter a '1' to run the Final Reminder Report. Default of blank will run a Proof Reminder Report.

MINIMUM DAYS:
2. Enter the minimum number of days between the last Payment Reminder sent and when the customer should appear on the Reminder Report.
Printing the A/R Detail Report with Reminders

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Statement and Reminder Processing

From Statement and Reminder Processing (G0322), choose A/R Detail with Reminders

A/R Detail with Reminders is a detailed list of open invoices along with payment reminder and collection information.

This report reflects information at the customer level, which is stored in the Customer Master table, and at the invoice level, which is stored in the A/R Ledger table.
### Work with Collection and Reminder Information

**Processing Options for Accounts Receivable Detail - Reminder Info**

**AS OF DATE:**

1. Enter the “As Of” date to process invoice balances. Invoices selected will have a due date less than the As Of date entered. If left blank, the current date is used as the default.

#### Customer Number/Name

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Document Reference</th>
<th>Balance</th>
<th>Reminders</th>
<th>Collection</th>
<th>Customer Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3001 Centrum Incorporated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30013 CustomerTchr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30001 Customer01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30002 Customer02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Processing Options for Accounts Receivable Detail – Reminder Info

1. Enter the “As Of” date to process invoice balances. Invoices selected will have a due date less than the As Of date entered. If left blank, the current date is used as the default.
Test Yourself: Working with Collection and Reminder Information

1. Select one or more criteria used to determine when a payment reminder is sent to a customer.
   
   a. The Delinquency Notice field Customer Master Information = Y.

   b. The sum of the customer's open invoices is greater than the minimum amount specified in the payment reminder processing options.

   c. The customer's invoice is past due based on the due date specified in the payment reminder processing options.

   d. The Number of Reminders field on Customer Master Information = 1, 2, or 3.

   e. All of the above.

2. True or False

   The Print A/R Invoices program is generally used for chargeback invoices and credit memos.

3. True or False

   You can reprint A/R statements several times, producing the same results each time.

The answers are in Appendix B.
Currency Gains and Losses

Objectives

- To calculate and report realized and unrealized gains and losses (for multi-currency invoices)

About Currency Gains and Losses

When you enter a foreign invoice, the system converts it to the domestic currency of the company. When the invoice is paid, the exchange rate might have changed. To track these changes, you need to re-value your open foreign invoices and record your realized gains and losses when you receive a receipt.

Currency gains and losses consists of:

- Understanding AAIs for gains and losses
- Calculating unrealized gains and losses
Revalue Open Items

- Unrealized currency gains/losses for trade accounts
- Monetary account valuation

Invoice Entry  
Realized gains/losses  
Invoice Entry

Alternate Currency  
6.20  6.30

Invoice Entry  
Realized gains/losses  
Invoice Entry

Alternate Currency  
6.25  6.30

Month End

Receipt

Revalue open items prior to running Financial Reports

AS IF Report (optional) eliminates exchange rate fluctuations over time

See Also

- About Detailed Currency Restatement in the General Accounting I Guide
**What Are the Types of Gains and Losses?**

Gains and losses on foreign currency transactions can be realized or unrealized:

- Realized gains or losses are tracked on an ongoing basis and are recorded at the time of an A/R receipt.
- Unrealized gains or losses apply to unpaid invoices or the open portion of partially paid invoices. They are calculated at the end of the period, at which time the system creates reversing journal entries.
Example: Gain/Loss for a Foreign Invoice

The following is an example of a foreign invoice (USD) entered for a Belgian company (BEF). This illustrates how a foreign invoice can create gain or loss amounts for the domestic ledger (AA).

Invoice and Receipt

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Account</th>
<th>AA Ledger Amounts</th>
<th>CA Ledger Amounts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Invoice Entry</td>
<td>Revenue Account</td>
<td>$3,350 BEF</td>
<td>$100.00 USD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounts Receivable</td>
<td>3,350 BEF</td>
<td>100.00 USD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receipts</td>
<td>Accounts Receivable</td>
<td>$-1,675 BEF</td>
<td>$-50.00 USD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Realized Gain</td>
<td>$-25 BEF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cash</td>
<td>1,700 BEF</td>
<td>50.00 USD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revalue Open Items</td>
<td>Unrealized Gain</td>
<td>$-75 BEF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A/R – Other</td>
<td>75 BEF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Example: Gain/Loss for a Domestic Invoice**

The following is an example of a domestic invoice entered for a Colombian company (COP) that uses Detailed Currency Restatement processing. The alternate currency is USD. This illustrates how a domestic invoice can create gain or loss amounts for the alternate ledger (XA).

**Invoice and Receipt**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>--AA Ledger--</th>
<th>--XA Ledger--</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Domestic Transaction Amount</td>
<td>Cur Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoice Entry</td>
<td>85,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receipt (customer paid 50% of invoice amount)</td>
<td>85,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Journal Entries**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Account</th>
<th>AA Ledger Amounts</th>
<th>XA Ledger Amounts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Invoice Entry</td>
<td>Revenue Account</td>
<td>−85,000 (COP)</td>
<td>−100.00 (USD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounts Receivable</td>
<td>85,000 (COP)</td>
<td>100.00 (USD)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receipts</td>
<td>Accounts Receivable</td>
<td>−85,000 (COP)</td>
<td>−100.00 (USD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Realized Loss</td>
<td>85,000 (COP)</td>
<td>1.15 (USD)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cash</td>
<td>85,000 (COP)</td>
<td>98.85 (USD)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Which Ledgers Are Used to Calculate Gains and Losses?

The following is an example of a foreign transaction (Chilean Peso - CLP) entered for a Colombian company (COP) that uses an alternate currency (USD). This example illustrates how the system creates gain and loss records between the foreign, domestic, and alternate ledgers.

- **AA Ledger**
  - COP
  - 1.25 gain
  - 6.25 loss

- **CA Ledger**
  - CLP
  - 5.00 loss

- **XA Ledger**
  - USD

**AA to XA**
The system calculates the gain/loss amount between COP and USD during the original posting of the batch.

**CA to AA**
The system calculates the gain/loss amount between foreign (CLP) and domestic (COP) amounts and writes it to the AA ledger. The Detailed Currency Restatement program restates this amount to the XA ledger.

**Abbreviations**

- **AA** = Actual Amount
- **CA** = Currency Amount
- **XA** = Alternative Amount
- **COP** = Columbia Peso
- **CLP** = Chilean Peso
- **USD** = U. S. Dollars
CA to XA

The system performs no calculation between the CA and XA ledger. The net amount of the two steps above equals the gain/loss between the CA ledger and the XA ledger (transaction amount to restated amount.)

**How Are Gains and Losses Calculated?**

The system calculates gains and losses by measuring the changes in exchange rates when a transaction is processed.

Detailed Currency Restatement performs two steps when calculating the gain or loss amount for a foreign transaction.

The examples in the steps use the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Document</th>
<th>CA Ledger (CLP)</th>
<th>* Exchange Rate</th>
<th>AA Ledger (COP) / Exchange Rate</th>
<th>XA Ledger (USD)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td>Invoice</td>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>.75</td>
<td>75,000 / 750</td>
<td>100.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Receipt</td>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>.76</td>
<td>76,000 / 800</td>
<td>95.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gain(-) Loss(+)</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,000 / 5.00</td>
<td>5.00 Net</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The gain/loss record in the AA ledger (calculated between the CA and AA ledgers) is converted to the XA ledger using the exchange rate on the payment G/L date.

\[
\frac{1,000 \text{ COP}}{800} = -1.25 \text{ gain}
\]

- Realized gain in AA ledger
- Current exchange rate (COP to USD)
- CA to AA
2. A gain/loss amount is also derived from the AA and XA ledgers. The system calculates this amount using the invoice amount and the exchange rate difference between the invoice and receipt dates.

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{75,000}{750} &= 100.00 \\
\frac{75,000}{800} &= 93.75 \\
\text{6.25 loss (AA to XA)}
\end{align*}
\]

Invoice amount (COP) | Exchange rates (COP to USD) on 6/01/98 and 6/30/98, respectively

---
Understand AAIs for Gains and Losses

About AAIs for Gains and Losses

When the system calculates currency gains and losses, it uses AAIs to distribute the gain or loss to the correct G/L account. These AAIs are used to calculate the following:

- Realized gains and losses
- Unrealized gains and losses

See Also

- Setting Up AAIs for Realized Gains and Losses (P00121)

Which AAIs Are Used to Calculate Realized Gains and Losses?

The Accounts Receivable system uses the following AAIs to calculate realized gains and losses:

- Realized Gain: Item RGxxx
- Realized Loss: Item RLxxx

To determine the gain or loss amount, the system multiplies the invoice amount by the difference in the exchange rate between the original invoice and the receipt.

The following applies to realized gains or losses on foreign currency receipts:

- The system uses the account number to track foreign currency gains or losses.
- The system creates a gain/loss entry at the time of receipt.
- You can set up these items by company and currency code (xxx). The system uses the currency code to track gains and losses by currency.
Which AAIs Are Used to Calculate Unrealized Gains and Losses?

To calculate unrealized gains and loses, you can:

- Enter them manually
- Run the Unrealized Gains and Losses report to have the system create them automatically

If you want the Accounts Receivable system to automatically calculate unrealized gains and losses, you must set up the following AAIs:

- Unrealized Gain: Item RVxxx
- Unrealized Loss: Item RWxxx
- Offsets: RRyyyy

The following applies to AAI items RVxxx and RWxxx:

- The xxx represents the currency code, which the system uses to track gains and losses.
- The yyyy represents the G/L class code, which creates the offset.
- The system creates reversing entries for unrealized gains or losses on open items if the exchange rate changes after the time of the original entry.
- The system creates unrealized gains, based on one of the following (in hierarchical order):
  - RVxxx, for a specific company (where xxx = currency code)
  - RVxxx, for company 00000 (where xxx = currency code)
  - RV, for a specific company
  - RV, for company 00000
- The system uses item RR to create the offsetting account.
- The system creates an offsetting entry, based on one of the following (in hierarchical order):
  - RRyyyy, for a specific company (where yyyy = G/L offset)
  - RRxxx, for a specific company (where xxx = currency code)
  - RRyyyy, for company 00000 (where yyyy = G/L offset)
  - RRxxx, for company 00000 (where xxx = currency code)
  - RR, for a specific company
  - RR, for company 00000
Calculate Unrealized Gains and Losses

Calculating Unrealized Gains and Losses

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Periodic Processes

From Periodic Processes (G0321), choose Unrealized Gains and Losses

If you work with multiple currencies, you need to calculate unrealized gains and losses for your foreign invoices. To do this, print the Unrealized Gains and Losses report. This report:

- Re-values your open foreign invoices
- Analyzes your realized gains and losses in detail

You should run the Unrealized Gains and Losses report first in proof mode. You can then review the report to verify the journal entries. If necessary, correct the exchange rates and run the report again in proof mode.

After you have corrected all exchange rates, run the Unrealized Gains and Losses report in final mode.

Use a processing option to create the reversing journal entry necessary to record the unrealized gain or loss. The system assigns journal entries a document type of JX. This is the only document type that can be used to adjust the domestic side of a monetary (currency-specific) account. The system creates only one reversing journal entry per company.

To avoid redundant journal entries, do not run this report more than one time per period with the processing option set to create journal entries for the unrealized gains and losses.

The Unrealized Gains and Losses report includes:

- The base company currency and the transaction currency for each invoice
- The invoice number and due date
- The original domestic amount calculated for each invoice
- The current domestic amount calculated for each invoice
- The foreign amount of each invoice
- The realized gain or loss if the invoice has had a receipt
- The unrealized gain or loss for any open invoice

**Before You Begin**

☐ Enter new exchange rates on Set Daily Transaction Rates

**What You Should Know About**

**Mixing currencies**

If you mix currencies when you record your unrealized gains and losses, the foreign grand total and any other subtotals appear as **NA** (not applicable), because totals for mixed currencies are meaningless.

To prevent this, set up a different version for each company that has a different base currency.

**Reducing report size**

To reduce the size of the Unrealized Gains and Losses report, set up a version for a specific company.

**Calculating alternate currency amount**

The Detailed Restatement field for company constants determines if a multiplier or divisor is used in calculating the alternate currency amount. This typically is the opposite setting from the General Accounting constants used for foreign transactions.

For example, if the general accounting constant for foreign transactions is a multiplier, the Detailed Restatement field for company constants is a divisor.

For more information, see *Setting Up Detailed Currency Restatement in the General Accounting I Guide.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inv Date</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Curr Ty</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Co</th>
<th>Net Due</th>
<th>Original</th>
<th>Open</th>
<th>Discount</th>
<th>Received</th>
<th>Unrealized</th>
<th>Realized</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>06/01/98</td>
<td>00070</td>
<td>FRF</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>333113</td>
<td>001</td>
<td>00070</td>
<td>07/01/98</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>3,500.00</td>
<td>3,500.00</td>
<td>213.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Parker Supplies

|          | F | 3,500.00 | 3,500.00 | 213.25 | 21,111.90 |
|          | D | 213.25   | 213.25   | 21,325.15 |
|          | C | 21,325.15 | 21,325.15 | 21,111.90 |
Processing Options for A/R Currency Gains & Losses

AS OF DATE PROCESSING:
1. Enter the “As Of” date for processing the current exchange rate. Default of blank will process rate using today’s date.

JOURNAL ENTRIES:
2. Enter a ‘1’ to create journal entries for Unrealized Currency Gains/Losses. Default of blank will not create journal entries.

3. Enter the G/L Date. Default of blank will use last day of current period.

JOURNAL ENTRIES CONT:
4. Enter a ‘1’ to create the journal entry batches in an Approved status regardless of the value in the Management Approval of Input general constant. Default of blank will not override the settings.

DW VERSION FOR JOURNAL ENTRY PROCESSING
5. To override standard journal entry processing (DREAM Writer XT0911Z1, version ZJDE0001), enter an override version number. This should only changed by persons responsible for system wide setup.
Setup
System Setup

Objectives

- To understand how to set up the accounts receivable controls that let you process receivables information

About System Setup

Before you use the Accounts Receivable system, you need to define certain information that the system will use during processing. This information is used to customize the system for your business needs. For example, you might want to enter the totals for a batch of invoices first and have the system verify the totals after you enter the batch.

System setup consists of:

- Setting up A/R constants
- Working with payment terms
- About AAIs
- About AAIs for A/R
- Working with AAIs
- About user defined codes
- About user defined codes for A/R
- Working with user defined codes
- Setting up next numbers
- Setting up customer bank information
- Setting up A/R draft processing
What Do the A/R Setup Features Do?

**Constants**

Establish system basics, such as:
- Whether the system verifies that the amount and number of documents in a batch of invoices balance to the totals that you enter separately
- Whether you require management approval of batches of documents before posting
- How you want the system to create automatic offsets
- The number of days and the time intervals on your aging reports

**Payment terms**

Identify the various types of payment terms for your customer's invoices, such as net due dates, net with discount, and due upon receipt

**AAIs**

Define accounting information, such as offset accounts and default bank accounts

**User defined codes**

Define customized codes, such as document types and payment statuses, that are appropriate for your business needs

**Next numbers**

Establish an automatic numbering system for documents

**Customer bank information**

Define the various types of bank account information required for lock box processing (automatic receipts)
Set Up A/R Constants

Setting Up A/R Constants

Constants provide a basic framework for how your Accounts Receivable system works, based on your needs.

Setting up A/R constants consists of:

- Setting up the default company
- Setting up A/R notification controls
- Setting up automatic receipts processing
- Setting up A/R aging information
- Setting up batch control for A/R
- Setting up A/R batch approval
- Setting up the automatic offset method for A/R
- Setting up the G/L interface control for A/R

Information about constants is stored in the General Constants table (F0009).

Before You Begin

- Ensure that only authorized personnel can access your A/R constants
Setting Up the Default Company

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Accounts Receivable Constants

You must set up company 00000 as a default company to control:

- The company name that appears on the top of all reports
- Default values in the AAI
- Default reporting periods for information viewed online

Company 00000 does not contain actual accounting activity.

You might need to set up companies that require A/R constants different from the default values you specify for company 00000. You can override the default values when you enter a customer master record.

To set up the default company

On Accounts Receivable Constants

Change the following field, if necessary:

- Company
Setting Up A/R Notification Controls

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Accounts Receivable Constants

Specify whether a customer is to receive delinquency notices on overdue account balances and whether the system prints invoices or statements. The system uses this information as the default values for the company. You can override it for a customer in the customer master record.

To set up A/R notification controls

On Accounts Receivable Constants

Change the following fields, if necessary:

- Delinquency Notice
- Print Statements

Setting Up Automatic Receipts Processing

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Accounts Receivable Constants

Specify whether you will receive customer payments on a company basis through automatic receipts processing and how the receipts will be applied. The system uses this information as the default value for the company. You can override it for a customer in the customer master record.

To set up automatic receipts processing

On Accounts Receivable Constants

Change the following fields, if necessary:

- Auto Receipt
- Auto Receipt Algorithm
Setting Up A/R Aging Information

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Accounts Receivable Constants

You can specify how to age your customer’s invoice information. For example, you can set up the “as of” date, the aging method, and the number of days in each time interval to calculate aging information for reports.

To set up A/R aging information

On Accounts Receivable Constants

Change the following fields, if necessary:

- Age as of Date
- Aging Method
- Date Aging Based On
- Aging Days – Beginning
- Aging Days – Thru

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age as of Date</td>
<td>The ‘As Of’ date or cutoff date used for aging Accounts Receivable invoices. The system compares the ‘As Of’ date to one of several dates associated with an invoice to determine which aging category the invoice open amount is to be applied to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Blank=Todays Date)</td>
<td>This date is maintained in the Company Constants table (F0010) and can be set up globally (company 00000) or for a specific company. Processing options are often available to override this date within a specific program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>---------------------\ Form-specific information ---------------------\</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you leave this field blank, the system uses the current date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aging Method (1,2,3)</td>
<td>A code that designates the way aging will be calculated. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 Aging days                                                                                     2 Fiscal periods                                                                                     3 Calendar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Set Up A/R Constants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date Aging Based On</td>
<td>A code that indicates the date used for aging calculations. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I  Invoice date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D  Due date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G  G/L date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S  Statement date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aging Days(999 = Infinity)</td>
<td>Categories that control how delinquent accounts print. Aging categories print</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beginning</td>
<td>on delinquency notices and statements if you set this option. The system uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>these categories only when you specify Aging Method 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aging Days(999 = Infinity)</td>
<td>The specified number of days for the Accounts Receivable aging report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thru</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Setting Up Batch Control for A/R

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Accounts Receivable Constants

You might want to enter the total number of documents (invoices and receipts) within a batch and the total amount of the batch before you actually enter the transactions. You use batch control to verify these totals after you enter the batch.

#### To set up batch control for A/R

On Accounts Receivable Constants

Change the following field, if necessary:

- Batch Control Required
### Setting Up A/R Batch Approval

**From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29**

**From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Accounts Receivable Constants**

You can specify whether management approves each batch of transactions before they are posted.

#### To set up A/R batch approval

On Accounts Receivable Constants

Change the following field, if necessary:

- Manager Approval of Input

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Batch Control Required</td>
<td>A code that generates automatic verification of the totals entered for each batch. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Y/N) – A/R</td>
<td>Batch control on. A batch header control form appears when you select invoice entry, receipts entry, or adjustments. You enter the total number of documents and the total amount you expect the batch to contain. When you finish entering each batch, the system displays the difference, if any, between the totals you expected to enter and the totals you actually entered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Batch control off.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manager Approval of Input</td>
<td>A code that controls approval of batches for posting. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Y/N)</td>
<td>Management approval is required. The system assigns a status code of pending to each batch. You must manually change the status to approved before the system will post the batch to the general ledger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Management approval is not required. The system automatically sets the batches in an approved status for posting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting Up the Automatic Offset Method for A/R

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Accounts Receivable Constants

You need to designate the type of offsetting entries that are made to the A/R offset and discount accounts when you post invoices to the general ledger.

To set up the automatic offset method for A/R

On Accounts Receivable Constants

Change the following field, if necessary:

- Offset Method

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offset Method (D, S, Y, or B)</td>
<td>The method for automatically generating an offset entry when it is posted to the general ledger. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D Create an offset entry for each detail record (gross amount, discount amount, and tax accruals are separate offset entries)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S Create a summarized offset for each detail record (gross amount, discount amount and tax accruals are combined into one offset entry)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Y Create one offset per document (multiple items)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B Create one offset for each batch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The system creates offsets against actual amount and multi-currency ledger types only.
### Example: Journal Entry Created by Automatic Offset

The following report shows a journal entry that the system created as an automatic offset using the batch method (B). The system uses the batch number for the document number of the automatic offset.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do Document</th>
<th>G/L Date</th>
<th>Account Description</th>
<th>G/L Account</th>
<th>Subaddr-Ty/Asset Number</th>
<th>Debit</th>
<th>Credit</th>
<th>LT Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
<td>06/15/98</td>
<td>00100 Contract Sales</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>210.5030</td>
<td>7,012.12</td>
<td>AA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Edwards, J.D. &amp; Company</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
<td>06/15/98</td>
<td>00100 Contract Sales</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>210.5030</td>
<td>9,319.65</td>
<td>AA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Edwards, J.D. &amp; Company</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE</td>
<td>06/30/98</td>
<td>00100 Trade Accounts Receiv</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>100.1210</td>
<td>17,524.00</td>
<td>AA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Post Offset by Batc I 00107945</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE</td>
<td>06/30/98</td>
<td>00100 Sales &amp; Use Tax Payab</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>100.4433</td>
<td>1,192.23</td>
<td>AA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Post Offset by Batc I 00107945</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>17,524.00</td>
<td>17,524.00</td>
<td>AA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Setting Up the G/L Interface Control for A/R

From ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE (G03), enter 29

From ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE SETUP (G0341), choose ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE CONSTANTS

If your A/R system does not interface with the J.D. Edwards General Accounting system, you can choose to bypass the verification of the general ledger accounts.

#### To set up the G/L interface control for A/R

On ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE CONSTANTS

Change the following field, if necessary:

- G/L Interface
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G/L Interface (Y/N)</td>
<td>This flag is set to N if you do not have the J.D. Edwards' General Ledger system product. Accounts Receivable programs will bypass G/L account verifications and general ledger account updates under the presumption that the G/L system is not active.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercises**

See the exercises for this chapter.
Work with Payment Terms

Working with Payment Terms

You use payment terms to ensure that both the seller and the buyer agree on when a payment is due for goods or services rendered. Payment terms can range from simple to complex, depending on the policy of your organization. For example, you might set up a simple payment term, such as 1/10, net 30, to encourage early payment. You might also set up a more complex payment term to allow an invoice or a voucher to be split into multiple payments with a different discount percentage for each payment.

Working with payment terms consists of the following tasks:

- Setting up due date rules
- Setting up work day calendars (optional)
- Setting up payment term codes
- Setting up installment payments (optional)
- Working with payment terms for multi-tiered discounts (optional)

Payment terms provide you with the flexibility to define how the system calculates due dates and discount percentages for your invoices and vouchers. A due date can either be a net due date or a discount due date. Because of the complex and diverse ways of calculating due dates, you can set up due date rules using various components to calculate a due date. For example, you can specify that the system add 10 days to the based on date, which might be the G/L date, when calculating the discount due date of an invoice.

After you set up due date rules for both the net due date and the discount due date, you set up the payment term code. You can specify a due date rule as either a discount due date or a net due date. This enables you to link the rules together with a discount percent to define the:

- Default payment term code for a customer or supplier
- Payment term code of a specific invoice or voucher
The system stores payment term information in the following tables:

- Advanced Payment Terms (F00141)
- Due Date Rules (F00142)
- Due Date Rules Day Range (F00143)
- Installment Payment Terms (F00144)

### Setting Up Due Date Rules

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Payment Terms Revisions

From Payment Terms Revisions (G00141), choose Due Date Rule Revisions

Before you set up specific payment terms, you must define the rules that the system uses to calculate due dates for invoices and vouchers. You can set up as many due date rules as necessary.

A due date rule can consist of any of the following components:

- **Based on Date**
  This can be an invoice date, G/L date, a service tax date, and so on.

- **Days to Add**
  This is the number of days that the system adds to the based on date.

- **Months to Add**
  This is the number of months that the system adds to the based on date.

- **Fixed Days**
  This is the same day every month, such as the 10th or 15th of each month.

- **Date Range**
  This is a range of days that the system uses in conjunction with other components.

- **Work Day Calendar**
  This is a calendar that you can use to ensure that the due date is on a work day.
Work with Payment Terms

Work Day Rule

This is a rule that you can use to ensure that if a due date is on a non-work day, the system moves it forward or backward to an actual working day. It also determines whether to count non-work days when calculating the due date.

By using a combination of these components, you can set up a variety of payment terms. For example, you might set up date rules as follows:

- Use the invoice date as the based on date and add one month. For example, if the date of the invoice is June 25th, the due date is July 25th.
- Use the G/L date as the based on date, and add one month and five days. For example, if the G/L date is June 12th, the due date is July 17th.
- Use the G/L date as the based on date, set up a day range, specify a number of days to add to the day range and a month to add. For example, if the G/L date is June 2nd, the month to add is 1, and the date ranges are:
  - The 1st through the 10th, add 5 days
  - The 11th through the 31st, use the 31st as the fixed day

Since the based on date is within the first date range, the system adds five days and one month to the last day in the date range. Therefore, the due date for the payment is July 15th. This is commonly known as a “swing payment term,” and is most often used in Germany.
To set up due date rules

On Due Date Rule Revisions

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Date Rule
   - Description

2. To define how the system calculates the due date, complete any of the following fields:
   - Based on Date
   - Months to Add
   - Days to Add
   - Fix Days to Use

3. To specify information about a work day calendar, complete the following fields:
   - Calendar
   - Work Day Rule
4. To set up a date range as part of your due date rule, choose the Date Range option next to the rule.

5. On Date Range Setup, complete the following fields:
   - From Day Range
   - To Day Range

6. Complete the following optional fields and press Enter:
   - Add Months
   - Add Days
   - Fixed Days

7. Choose the Update function to update and redisplay the due date rule.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date Rule</td>
<td>The due date rule that the system uses to determine the installment due date of an invoice. You define due date rules on the Due Date Rule Revisions form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A user defined name or remark. Use this field to describe the customer or class of customers who will use the execution list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Based on Date</td>
<td>The initial date from which the net due date and discount due date is calculated. NOTE: The based on date attached to the net due date rule and the discount due date rule is applicable for the first installment only for installment payment terms. Each subsequent installment will use the previously calculated net due date as the basis for calculating the next due date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Months to Add</td>
<td>This field indicates the number of months to add to the net due date or the discount due date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Days to Add</td>
<td>This field indicates the number of days to add to the discount due date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed Days</td>
<td>This indicates the fixed day which will be used during the date calculation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendar</td>
<td>The calendar name to be used in work day calculations. It will be validated against the Work Day table (F0007).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Work Day Rule    | A code that controls how the system determines the due date when the due date falls on a non-working day. The work day rule operates in conjunction with the fixed days, add days, and date range. Valid values:  
|                  | blank When calculating the due date, use actual days. Ignore day classifications, such as working day, weekend, and holiday.  
|                  | 1 When calculating the due date, omit non-working days. If the due date falls on a non-working day, move the due date forward to the next working day.  
|                  | 2 When calculating the due date, use actual days. If the due date falls on a non-working day, move the due date forward to the next working day.  
|                  | 3 When calculating the due date, do not omit non-working days. If the due date falls on a non-working day, move the due date back to the last working day.  
| From Day         | This field indicates the lower value of a day range. The allowable values are 1 to 31. This must be lower than the To Day value. |
| To Day           | This field indicates the upper value of a day range. The allowable values are 1 to 31. This must be greater than the From Day value. |
What You Should Know About

Date ranges

If you specify a date range in your due date rule, the system uses the last day in the range in conjunction with the months to add, days to add, or a fixed day. If you do not specify a month to add, days to add, or a fixed day, the system assigns the due date as the last day of the range.

For example, if you set up a date range from the 10th to the 25th of June and you do not specify a fixed day or months/days to add, the due date of the payment is June 25th.

The ranges must not overlap, and they must include a full month (days 1 through the 31st).

Additionally, when you set up a date range, you cannot specify both the number of days to add and a fixed days number. However, you can specify the number of months to add along with the number of days to add or the fixed days.

The system adds the days to add, months to add, and fixed days to the last day in the range on the Due Date Rule Revision form. To determine the date range, the system adds the days to add, months to add, and fixed days to the based on date.

See Also

- Setting Up Work Day Calendars (P00071)
- Setting Up Work Day Calendars
Setting Up Work Day Calendars

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29
From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Payment Terms Revisions
From Payment Terms Revisions (G00141), choose Work Day Calendar

When setting up due date rules for your payment terms, you can set up work day calendars. These calendars enable you to specify the actual work days, weekends, holidays, and so on, of your organization. You can set up multiple calendars and reference the name of one in the due date rule.

After you set up a work day calendar, you specify which action to take if the system calculates the due date on a non-work day. You do this on the Due Date Rule Revisions form. For example, you can instruct the system to:

- Ignore non-work days when counting the days to calculate the due date and not allow the due date to occur on a non-work day.
- Use the work day after the calculated due date as the due date. For example, if the calculated due date occurs on the weekend, the system moves it to the following Monday.
- Use the work day before the calculated due date as the due date. For example, if the calculated due date occurs on the weekend, the system moves it to the previous Friday.

If you specify a work day rule, you can adjust the payment’s due date to correspond with your working days. For example, you can prevent unintended “grace periods” that might occur if the due date falls on a Saturday and your business is closed. In addition, you can specify that the payment is due in 30 working days instead of 30 calendar days.
To set up work day calendars

On Work Day Calendar

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Branch
   - Calendar Year
   - Calendar Month

   The calendar for the month and year displays twice. The left portion of the form shows the numerical days, and the right portion of the form shows the work days and non-work days.

2. In the right portion of the form, change the default values as necessary for each day of the week.

What You Should Know About

Specifying the type of day

Some examples of the type of day you can specify on the calendar are as follows:

- W (work day)
- E (weekend)
- H (holiday)
- S (shut-down)
The Work Day Calendar program (P00071)  

The Work Day Calendar program is a Manufacturing program. On the Work Day Calendar form, the Branch field does not refer to a Branch/Plan (business unit). Instead, it refers to the name that you assign to the work day calendar for your due date rules.

Therefore, when you set up a work day calendar, the system accesses it from the Work Day Calendar table (F0007), not the Business Unit table (F0006).

See Also

- Setting Up Due Date Rules for information about specifying work day rules

Setting Up Payment Term Codes

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Payment Terms Revisions

From Payment Terms Revisions (G00141), choose Advanced Payment Terms

You can set up codes for various payment terms, which determines the net due dates, discounts, and discount due dates for your invoices and vouchers. This makes entering invoices and vouchers more efficient.

When you enter a customer or supplier record, you specify the payment term code that the customer or supplier uses most frequently. Then, when you enter the invoice or voucher, you can either:

- Accept the default payment term code
- Designate a different payment term code

About Payment Term Codes

When you set up a payment term code, you can use a one-, two- or three-character combination of the following:

- Alphabetic (A – Z)
- Numeric (1 – 999)
- Special characters (including blank)
Work with Payment Terms

You should set up a blank code for the most commonly used payment terms. If you do this, you must also set up a non-blank code for the same payment terms in case you need to change a supplier's payment terms later.

For example, you have a supplier with a payment terms code of D (due upon receipt). The supplier changes the terms to net 30 days, which is set up as a blank code. Because you cannot replace the existing code of D with a blank, you must use a non-blank code, such as N for net 30 days.

### Before You Begin

- Set up the necessary due date rules that the system uses to calculate net due dates and discount due dates. This enables the system to link the rule to a specific payment term. See Setting Up Due Date Rules.

### To set up payment term codes

On Advanced Payment Terms

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Payment Term
   - Description (optional)

2. To attach a due date rule to the payment term, complete the following fields:
   - Net Due Date Rule
   - Discount Due Date Rule
3. To specify a discount percentage for the invoice, complete the following field:
   - Discount Percentage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Payment Terms</td>
<td>A code that specifies the terms of payment, including the percentage of discount available if the invoice is paid within a certain amount of time. A blank code usually indicates the most frequently used payment term. You define the specifications for each type of payment term on the Payment Terms Revisions form. For example: blank Net 15, 1 1/10 net 30, 2 2/10 net 30, N Net 30, P Fixed day of 25th, Z Net 90. This code prints on customer invoices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description – Payment Terms</td>
<td>The text that describes the payment terms code. You can print this text on the invoice, for example, 2/10, net 30, fixed day 25.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Net Due Date Rule</td>
<td>The due date rule that the system uses to calculate the net due date of an invoice installment. You define net due date rules on the Due Date Rules Revisions form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discount Due Date Rule</td>
<td>The due date rule that the system uses to calculate the discount due date of an invoice. This is similar to a discount due date payment term. You define the discount due date rule on the Due Date Rules Revisions form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disc Perc</td>
<td>The percent of the total invoice that will be discounted if the invoice is paid within the discount period. This is entered as a decimal, for example, a 2% discount is .02.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting Up Installment Payments

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Payment Terms Revisions

From Payment Terms Revisions (G00141), choose Installment Payment Revisions

Instead of a customer or you paying all of an invoice or voucher at one time, you can might arrange installment payments. You can set up installment payment terms to pay an invoice or voucher with multiple payments over a specified period of time.

When you set up installment payment terms, you can set up equal payments or unequal payments with different percentages. You can also specify a different discount percent for each installment. The system calculates the due date of each installment based on the due date rule you assign to it.

The following describes two examples of installment payment terms:

**Equal payments with a discount due date**

You might set up five equal payments. Each payment includes a 10 percent discount if paid within the discount period that you defined in the discount due date rule.

The actual due date of the payment depends on the net due date rule that you set up.

**Unequal payments with a discount due date**

You might set up 6 payments. Five of the payments might be 15 percent of the invoice amount, and the sixth payment is 25 percent. Each payment might also include a 5 percent discount if paid within the discount period that you defined in the discount due date rule.

The actual due date of the payment depends on the net due date rule that you set up.
To set up installment payments

On Installment Payment Revisions

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Payment Terms
   - Description (optional)

2. To set up equal installment payments with the same due date rules, complete the following fields in the header area:
   - Number of Equal Payments
   - Discount Percent
   - Discount Due Date Rule
   - Net Due Date Rule

3. To set up unequal installment payments or to apply different due date rules, complete the following fields for each installment in the detail area:
   - Sequence Number
   - Percent of Installment
   - Discount Percent
   - Discount Due Date Rule
   - Net Due Date Rule
A table showing field explanations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of Equal Payments</td>
<td>This field indicates the number of equal installments to be initially generated by the system. Using default values, the system uses this fast path method to create equal installments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discount Percent</td>
<td>The default value for the percent of the total invoice that will be discounted if the invoice is paid within the discount period. This is entered as a decimal, for example, a 2% discount is .02. Note, this field is only available the first time that installments are entered for a payment term. It is the value which will initially be replicated for the generated installments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disc. Due Date Rule</td>
<td>The default value of the discount due date rule that the system uses when generating equal installments. Note: This field is only available for use when first generating new equal installments for a payment term.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Net Due Date Rule</td>
<td>The default value for the Net Due Date rule when generating equal installments. Note, this field is only available for use when first generating new equal installments for a payment term.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence Number</td>
<td>A number used to organize the table into a logical group for online viewing and reporting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percent of Installment</td>
<td>The percentage of the invoice that is going to be split to generate one installment. The total of all installments must add up to 100.00% of the invoice total amount. This is different than the split payment concept where the split is a fixed percent. Here you create installments using variable percentages. If the percent of the installment is 20%, you enter it as 20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discount Percent</td>
<td>The percent of the total invoice that will be discounted if the invoice is paid within the discount period. This is entered as a decimal, for example, a 2% discount is .02.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What You Should Know About**

**Verifying installment payments** To verify that installment payments are attached to the appropriate payment term, locate the payment term on Advanced Payment Term Revisions and choose the Update function.
Accounts Receivable
Understand AAIs

About AAIs

Automatic accounting instructions (AAIs) define the relationships between your day-to-day accounting functions and your chart of accounts. The system uses AAIs to direct the journal entries for each of your accounting transactions to the appropriate account in the general ledger.

Each J.D. Edwards system that interfaces with the General Accounting system has AAIs. Each AAI is associated with a specific general ledger account that consists of:

- A business unit
- An object
- A subsidiary (optional)

Groups of AAI items with a common purpose have a similar prefix.

To allow for more flexibility, some AAI items have one of the following user defined suffixes:

- X suffix. The x suffix indicates a currency code. Some AAIs have a suffix of xxx to accommodate three-character currency codes. Use these AAIs to set up multiple AAI types for each company. If an AAI item has an x suffix (one or more lowercase x letters), the system replaces the x letters with characters.

- Y suffix. This suffix indicates a G/L offset code. Some AAIs have a suffix of yyyy to accommodate one- to four-character offset codes. For example, the object account for notes payable (offset code NOTE) can be different from the one for trade accounts payable (offset code TRAD).
Elements of an AAI Form

The Automatic Accounting Instructions form shows an index, or list, of the AAIs used in the J.D. Edwards systems.

There is no entry under Company/Business Unit because default AAIs are set up for company 00000. The GLGx items are used for system-wide setup.

The sequence number does not serve a programming function. It is only used to determine where an AAI appears in the list.

Programs are set up to look for a specific AAI item. The item is the hard-coded name of the AAI and cannot be changed.

Default AAIs

The system uses a combination of company and AAI item to determine which account to use in a particular situation. You can create AAIs for each unique combination of company and G/L offset code that you anticipate using. You can create various combinations to direct entries to different offset accounts.
Your system includes AAIIs that are already assigned to company 00000. You can customize these AAIIs to fit your company, business unit, or object account setup. You must assign a valid account to the default AAI for company 00000. If the system cannot find an AAI for a specific company, it uses the AAI for company 00000. You do not need to set up an AAI for any company that uses the default AAI.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CO</th>
<th>Business Unit</th>
<th>Obj</th>
<th>Item</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Company 00000</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1110.BEAR</td>
<td>Receivables Bank Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company 15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1110.BEAR</td>
<td>Receivables Bank Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company 50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>1110.BEAR</td>
<td>Receivables Bank Account</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Default information is used when no company-specified AAI can be found.

If receiving payment for company 300, offset would be made to default account 100.1110.BEAR.

If entering invoices for company 15, the receivables bank account would be 15.1110.FIB.
Understand AAIs for A/R

About AAIs for A/R

Each time you enter a transaction for which the system must create journal entries, the system must locate the appropriate account numbers. It does this by reviewing the AAI tables that correspond to the transaction. For example, AAIs tell the system which A/R asset account to debit when you post invoices or which bank account to debit when you post receipts.

The name of an AAI item, such as RC, is hard coded. AAI items for A/R always start with the letter R. For example, RC is the AAI item for the receivables class account and RB is the receivables bank account. Each AAI item has account codes consisting of a business unit, object, and subsidiary which are mapped to your chart of accounts.

The following diagram illustrates how the Accounts Receivable system uses AAIs for instructions during invoice and receipt processing.
How Does the System Search for AAIs?

Each time you enter a transaction, the system locates the following information:

- Company Number
- Document Type
- G/L Category

The system reviews the appropriate AAI table to locate an account number that has been set up for the combination of company and AAI item. If an account number exists for the combination, the system uses that account. If no account number exists, the system uses the default account set up for company 00000.
**Example: Search for AAIs**

The following example uses company 00100 and A/R class code TRAD to show the sequence that the system uses to search for AAIs.

1. Search for company 00100, item RCTRAD.
2. If not found, search for company 00000, item RCTRAD.
3. If not found, search for company 00100, item RC____.
4. If not found, search for company 00000, item RC____.

If not found, there is an error in the AAI setup.

**Example: Search for AAIs in a Multi-Currency Environment**

The following example shows how the system searches for different types of AAIs in company 00070, a company that also uses multiple currencies.

1. Search for company 00070, item RCUSD, where USD is the currency code.
2. If not found, search for company 00000, item RCUSD.
3. If not found, search for company 00070, item RCTRAD, where TRAD is the default G/L class from the customer record.
4. If not found, search for company 00000, item RCTRAD.
5. If not found, search for company 00070, item RC____.
6. If not found, search for company 00000, item RC____.

If not found, there is an error in the AAI setup.

**What AAIs Are Available for A/R?**

The following lists the AAIs available in the Accounts Receivable system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AAI Item Code</th>
<th>Description and Setup Considerations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RBxxx</td>
<td>Default bank account (setup required)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCyy or RCxxx</td>
<td>A/R offset (setup required)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RP</td>
<td>Credit note reimbursements (setup required if creating credit note reimbursements)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**Accounts Receivable**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RCUC</td>
<td>Unapplied receipts (setup required if using unapplied receipts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAxx</td>
<td>Adjustments (setup required for each adjustment reason code)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RKD</td>
<td>Discounts taken (setup required if allowing discounts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC</td>
<td>Finance charge income (setup required if assessing finance or interest charges)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFD</td>
<td>Finance charge receivable (setup required if assessing finance or interest charges)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTyyyy</td>
<td>Receivables tax (setup required if using taxes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Netting suspense account (setup required if using receivables and payables netting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGxxx</td>
<td>Gain on foreign currency (setup required if using multiple currencies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RLxxx</td>
<td>Loss on foreign currency (setup required if using multiple currencies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RWxxx</td>
<td>Unrealized loss on foreign currency (setup required if using multiple currencies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RRyy or RRxx</td>
<td>Unrealized gain/loss offset on foreign currency receipts (required if using multiple currencies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RBxx</td>
<td>Unrealized gain on foreign currency (required if using multiple currencies)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Receivables Class (RC) Accounts**

The receivables class accounts act as holding or clearing accounts until invoices are paid. The AAI item RC specifies the offset account that the system uses during the post process.

The RC class can be specific to each customer. When you enter an invoice, the system retrieves the class code from the customer record.
Set up the following RC items:

1. Default AAI item for company 00000
2. Company-specific AAI items
3. Class codes RCyy (RCNOTE) for company 00000
4. Company-specific class codes
5. Company-specific currency codes RCxxx (RCUSD)
6. Default AAI item for other receivables

The following illustrates how to set up RC items.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Co</th>
<th>BU</th>
<th>Obj</th>
<th>Sub</th>
<th>Seq No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RC (RC__)</td>
<td>Default Receivables Class</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1210</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC (RC__)</td>
<td>Company 200-specific Receivables Class</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>1210</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCNOTE (RCyyyy)</td>
<td>Default Notes Receivables Class Code</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
<td>1210</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCNOTE (RCyyyy)</td>
<td>Company 200-specific Receivables Class</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>1210</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCUSD (RCxxx)</td>
<td>Company-specific Currency Class</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>1210</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.110</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Receivables Bank (RB) Accounts**

The AAI item RB (receivables bank) for the default bank account is required. This item specifies the default bank account that the system assigns if you do not enter a bank account when entering receipts.

**Unapplied Receipts (RCUC)**

The AAI item RCUC defines the default asset account used for automatic offsets created when you post an unapplied receipt to a specific customer’s account and not to an invoice.

Set up the default AAI item for company 00000 for all companies using the same A/R asset account or specific AAIs for a company with a different A/R asset account.

**Adjustments (RAxx)**

The AAI item RAxx defines the expense accounts used for adjustments. The xx characters represent the user defined code for adjustment reasons, such as BD for bad debt.
Set up the default AAI item for company 00000 for all companies using the same expense account or specific AAIs for a company with a different expense account.

What You Should Know About

Defining the business unit

If you do not define a business unit in the AAI item RAxx, the system assigns the security business unit from the invoice. This comes from the customer’s record rather than from the business unit associated with the G/L distribution. When you define the business unit, you can track each type of adjustment for one business unit.

Discounts Taken (RKD)

The AAI item RKD defines the expense accounts for discounts taken. The system uses this AAI for automatic offsets created when you post discounts taken and recorded for receipts. Discounts are recognized when you post receipts to the general ledger.

Set up the default AAI item for company 00000 for all companies using the same discount taken account or specific AAIs for a company with a different discount taken account.

Credit Note Reimbursements (RP)

The AAI item RP defines the suspense account used for credit note reimbursements. The system creates a credit note reimbursement when you reclassify a credit amount in the Accounts Receivable system, such as a credit memo or unapplied receipts to an open voucher in the Accounts Payable system.

Set up the default AAI item for company 00000 for all companies using the same suspense account or specific AAIs for a company with a different suspense account.

Finance Charges (RFC and RFD)

Finance charges and interest invoices use two AAIs to recognize the revenue and receivables:

- RFC – Defines the revenue accounts to credit when you assess finance charges or interest charges.
- RFD – Defines the receivables accounts to debit when you assess finance or interest charges.
The system debits and credits these accounts when you post the invoice.

Set up default AAI items RFC and RFD for company 00000. You must set up specific AAI items RFC and RFD for each company assessing different finance or interest charges.

**Netting Suspense Account (NC)**

An AAI item for netting suspense account (NC) is required if you use receivables and payables netting. Netting is a feature of the Accounts Payable and Accounts Receivable systems that allows you to calculate the net amount due from or due to another organization that is both your customer and your supplier. This item specifies the account that the system uses for netted transactions when it closes the original transaction and creates a netting transaction. Normally, this is a suspense account.

The following shows the information that is needed when setting up an NC item:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Co</th>
<th>BU</th>
<th>Obj</th>
<th>Sub</th>
<th>Seq No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Netting Suspense Account</td>
<td></td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>3.511</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Realized Gains and Losses (RG and RL)**

You must set up two AAIIs so that the system can handle your realized gains and losses:

- **RGxx** (realized gain)
- **RLxx** (realized loss)

The following applies to AAI item RG and RL for receipts with multiple currencies:

- Define the account the system uses to track foreign currency gains
- Create the gain when you enter the receipt
- Are available by company and currency
- Represents the currency code using xxx (optional)

Set up default AAI item RG and RL for company 00000 and specific AAI items RG and RL for the company.
Unrealized Gains and Losses (RV, RW, and RR)

You must set up the following AAIs so that the system can handle the automatic entries for unrealized gains and losses:

- RVxxx (unrealized gains)
- RWxxx (unrealized loss)
- RRyyy (offsets)

The following applies to AAI items RVxxx and RWxxx for accounts receivable:

- Create reversing entries for unrealized gains or losses on open items due to changes in the exchange rates since the original entry was made
- Determine the offset account to use when creating unrealized gains by the following hierarchy:
  - RVxxx (for a specific company where xxx is the currency code)
  - RVxxx (for company 00000)
  - RV (for a specific company)
  - RV (for company 00000)

To create a reversing (offsetting) journal entry, AAI item RR is used.

Set up default AAI items for company 00000 or specific AAIs for a company.
Work with AAI

Working with AAI

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Automatic Accounting Instructions

Because the system already has AAI in place, you must verify that these AAI are appropriate for your business needs. You can revise existing AAI and set up additional AAI as needed.

Working with AAI consists of:

- Reviewing AAI
- Revising AAI
- Setting up AAI

Before You Begin

- Set up your chart of accounts. See Creating Your Chart of Accounts (P0901) in the General Accounting I Guide.
- Set up security, if applicable. See the Common Foundation Guide.
What You Should Know About

Working efficiently with AAI

The following is an efficient way to use an existing AAI to set up a new AAI:

- Locate an AAI item that is similar to the one you want to add
- Type the new values over the old values in the appropriate fields, including the description
- Use the Add action

The system keeps the existing AAI and adds the new one.

If you use the Change action, the system changes the existing AAI to use the new values you entered.

The Multiple AAI Revisions form is useful for adding and changing AAI because you can review more than one AAI item at a time.

To review AAI

Before you add or revise AAI, review the existing information. For each AAI item, verify that a default AAI exists for company 00000. For each company requiring specific instructions, verify that a company, business unit, and object account exists.

On Automatic Accounting Instructions
1. Complete the following optional field:
   - Skip to Sequence Number
2. Locate the appropriate AAI item.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Skip to Sequence Number</td>
<td>A field that controls the sequencing of information on the form. You can begin the display of AAI with a specific sequence number. AAI for the A/R system have sequence numbers that start with 3. You can use this field to advance to account ranges associated with this sequence number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What You Should Know About**

**Sequence numbers**

The Skip to Sequence Number field lets you begin the display of AAI with a specific sequence number. AAI for the Accounts Payable system have sequence numbers that start with 4. You can use this field to advance to account ranges associated with this sequence number.

**To revise AAI**

Depending on your needs, you can revise AAI on either of the following forms:

- Single AAI Revision, if you want to revise one AAI
- Multiple AAI Revision, if you want to revise more than one AAI
On Automatic Accounting Instructions

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose the AAI Revision option to access Single AAI Revisions
   - Choose Multiple AAI Revisions

2. Change any of the following fields:
   - System
   - Sequence Number
3. Do not change the following fields:

- Item Number
- Option

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Code</td>
<td>A user defined code (98/SY) that identifies a J.D. Edwards system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence Number</td>
<td>A number used to organize the table into a logical group for online viewing and reporting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Unit</td>
<td>An alphanumeric field that identifies a separate entity within a business for which you want to track costs. For example, a business unit might be a warehouse location, job, project, work center, or branch/ plant. You can assign a business unit to a voucher, invoice, fixed asset, and so on, for purposes of responsibility reporting. For example, the system provides reports of open accounts payable and accounts receivable by business units to track equipment by responsible department. Security for this field can prevent you from locating business units for which you have no authority. Note: The system uses this value for Journal Entries if a value is not entered in the AAI table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obj Acct</td>
<td>Defining a subsidiary code might be optional, depending on the type of AAI.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Accounts Receivable

### Field | Explanation
--- | ---
Sub Account | A subdivision of an object account. Subsidiary accounts include more detailed records of the accounting activity for an object account.

.................. *Form-specific information* ..................

This number identifies the general ledger subsidiary account for the AAI when one is required.

Defining a subsidiary account can be optional, depending on the type of AAI. Use 99999999 to express the end of a range of subsidiary accounts.

Item Number | A hard-coded field that defines an account or range of accounts used for a particular function. For example, item GLG4 defines the retained earnings account, which is used for annual close purposes. During processing, programs use the item number and company number to find the correct account to debit or credit. Along with company, the item (or range) is the key to the AAI table.

Option | A code that specifies whether the business unit, object account, or subsidiary account is required for this AAI. Codes are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.................. *Form-specific information* ..................

Do not change this field.

### To set up AAIs

After you review and revise the existing AAIs for your business needs, you might need to set up additional AAI items.

On Single AAI Revisions or Multiple AAI Revisions

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Item Number
   - Company
   - Business Unit
   - Object Account
   - Subsidiary (optional for some AAI items)
   - Description (optional for some AAI items)
2. Use the Add action.
What You Should Know About

**Item numbers**

You must use a valid item number when you set up AAIs.

**Optional fields**

The subsidiary and description fields are optional for all A/P AAIs.

Business Unit is optional for discounts available (PKD) and discounts lost (PKL).

Object Account is optional for voucher logging expense (PP).

Processing Options for Automatic Accounting Instructions

Enter the starting sequence number. ____________
Understand User Defined Codes

About User Defined Codes

Many fields throughout the J.D. Edwards systems accept only user defined codes. When you enter an invoice, for example, you must enter a user defined code to specify its current payment status. The system does not accept user defined codes that are not defined in a user defined list.

Each user defined code is either soft-coded or hard-coded. You can customize any soft-coded user defined code to accommodate your specific business needs. You can set up additional codes that are soft-coded as well. You cannot customize a user defined code that is hard-coded.

User defined code types are identified by the system code and the user defined code list. For example, 00/DT represents system 00 and user defined code list DT (document types).

Information about user defined codes is stored in the User Defined Codes table (F0005).
Elements of a User Defined Code Form

The Character Code field accepts 1, 2, 3, or 10 characters, depending on the user defined code you are setting up.

The name of the user defined code appears in the upper portion of the form.

The second description field is not available for some user defined codes.
Understand User Defined Codes for A/R

About User Defined Codes for A/R

You need to set up user defined codes, which can be customized for your business needs. Many fields in the Accounts Receivable system accept only user defined codes. For example, when you enter an invoice, you can enter a user defined code to specify the payment instrument. The system does not accept a payment instrument that is not in the user defined list of valid payment instruments.

Each user defined code is either soft-coded or hard-coded. You can customize any user defined code that is soft-coded to accommodate your specific business needs, and you can set up additional ones. You cannot customize a user defined code that is hard-coded.

User defined code types are identified by the system code and the user defined code list. For example, 00/DV represents system 00 and user defined code list DV.

Which User Defined Codes Are Available for A/R?

The following user defined codes are available:

- Document type codes
- Payment status codes
- Payment instrument codes
- Tax calculation codes
- Aging vocabulary codes
- Adjustment reason codes
- Valid credit message codes
- Collection reason codes
- Credit reporting payment terms codes
- Receipt type input codes
- Dun & Bradstreet rating codes
- TRW rating codes
• Autocash algorithm codes
• Language preference codes

Document Type Codes

When you enter a transaction, you must specify the document type, such as an invoice or a draft.

The document type code, document number and company, and G/L date are the link between the Accounts Receivable system and the General Accounting system.

The system maintains two groups of document type codes:

• Invoice document types
• All document types

Invoice Document Type Codes (00/DI)

Invoice document types are also known as original documents. Original documents can exist by themselves. You must attach a matching document to an original document. All original documents:

• Represent the initial transaction
• Stand alone in the system
• Are soft-coded

You must set up a code for each type of original document that you use when you enter invoices. When a user defined code is hard-coded, you cannot change it.

RI (invoice) The system creates this document when you enter an invoice.

RR (recurring invoice) The system creates this hard-coded document when you enter an invoice to be generated for a specified amount, time period, and number of payments.

RM (credit memo) The system creates this document when you issue a credit to a customer.
**RB (chargeback)**  
The system creates this hard-coded document when you enter an invoice for a discrepancy or a disputed amount on an original invoice.

For example, a customer pays 60 of an original 100 invoice amount. You might apply the full 100 to close the invoice and create a chargeback (a new invoice) for the difference of 40.

**RF (finance charge)**  
The system creates this hard-coded document when you enter an invoice to assess interest or finance charges for delinquent invoices and late payments.

**RU (unapplied receipt)**  
The system creates this hard-coded document when you place money in a clearing account until you determine how to apply the payment (that is, which customer accounts to apply it to, and so on).

**R1 (draft)**  
The system creates this hard-coded document when you use draft processing.

---

**All Document Type Codes (00/DT)**

These document types are also known as matching document types. They cannot exist by themselves. You must attach (or match) each to a corresponding original document. For example, a receipt is a matching document that must always have a corresponding invoice as the original document. A matching document is hard-coded and has its own type and number.

The system provides the following codes for the matching documents that you use when you enter invoices:

**RE (change to invoice amount)**  
The system creates an audit trail when you change the amount of a posted invoice or when you void an invoice.

**RC (receipt)**  
The system creates this document for a payment when you enter a receipt.

**RW (balance forward)**  
The system creates this document when you summarize detailed documents (original or matching).

**RO (void entry)**  
The system creates this document when you void a posted payment.
Accounts Receivable

RA (adjustment)  The system creates this document to correct bad debts, minor write-offs, or adjustments.

RQ (chargeback offset)  The system creates this document in conjunction with the RB document when you enter a chargeback invoice.

RS (spread)  The system creates this document when you distribute unapplied receipts (an RU document) or a credit memo (an RM document) to an open invoice amount.

RV (non-sufficient funds)  The system creates this document when a bank cannot cover a customer's payment. This reopens the original invoice and voids the corresponding RC document.

R1 (draft)  The system creates this document when you enter a draft.

Payment Status Codes (00/ PS)

Payment status codes indicate if an invoice is approved, pending, paid, and so on. You assign a payment status code if you need to change the status that the system has assigned. The following payment status codes are hard-coded:

A  Approved for payment

D  Draft accepted

E  Draft expired

G  Draft remitted

P  Paid in full

R  Retainage

S  Balance forward, summarized
Payment Instrument Codes (00/PY)

Payment instrument codes indicate various methods of payment. You assign a payment instrument code to each invoice. Examples are:

- **C** Check (soft-coded)
- **D** Draft (soft-coded)
- **N** Note (soft-coded)

Tax Calculation Codes (00/EX)

You can assign codes for various methods of calculating taxes. You then use AAI's to direct each code to a different account. Set up a code for each tax rate/area. You should set up the following codes:

- **B** VAT + use tax
- **C** VAT + sales tax
- **S** Sales tax
- **U** Use (self-assessed) tax
- **V** VAT
Aging Vocabulary Codes (03/AG)

You can assign codes to specify the terminology on your A/R aging reports. Examples are:

1 Over
2 Previous
3 Future
4 Current

Adjustment Reason Codes (03/AR)

You can assign codes to specify the reason you adjusted an invoice amount and point each code to a separate expense account using AAIs. Examples are:

BD Bad debt
DA Disputed amount
DC Damage credit
MW Minor write-off

Valid Credit Message Codes (00/CM)

You can assign codes to notify you of a customer’s credit status. These credit messages are used throughout all J.D. Edwards systems. Examples are:

* Bypass temporary credit hold (hard-coded)
B Bad credit risk
C Cash basis only or C.O.D. (collect on delivery)
1 Over credit limit
Collection Reason Codes (03/CL)

You can assign codes to explain why an invoice is delinquent. Examples are:

- **BK**  
  Customer in bankruptcy

- **DP**  
  Disputed by customer

- **NP**  
  Non-payment/delinquent

Credit Reporting Payment Terms Codes (03/PT)

You can assign codes to indicate the payment terms for discounts, discount percentages, and the net amount.

- **Blank (default)**  
  Net amount due in 30 days

- **1**  
  1/10, net 30

- **2**  
  1/20, net 30

See Also

- *Setting Up Payment Terms (P0014)*

Receipt Type Input Codes (03/TI)

Type input codes indicate how receipts are applied to invoices. The following examples are hard-coded:

- **Blank**  
  No action

- **A**  
  Adjustment to receivables

- **B**  
  Balance forward

- **C**  
  Chargeback

- **W**  
  Write-offs
Dun & Bradstreet Rating Codes (01/DB)

You can assign codes to identify the Dun & Bradstreet credit rating for a customer. Examples are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BA1</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA2</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA3</td>
<td>Fair</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TRW Rating Codes (01/TR)

You can assign codes to specify the TRW credit ratings. Examples are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAA</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BBB</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Autocash Algorithm Codes (01/AA)

Autocash algorithm codes define the methods for applying receipts. The batch receipts process uses these codes. The following examples are hard-coded:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Balance forward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Invoice match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Statement match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Chargeback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>Unapplied receipt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Language Preference Codes (01/LP)

You can assign codes to identify the language for your invoices, statements, and so on. Examples are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Blank (default)</th>
<th>Domestic language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Work with User Defined Codes

Working with User Defined Codes

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose an option under User Defined Codes

Because your system already has some user defined codes in place, you should verify that they are appropriate for your business needs and set up additional user defined codes, as needed.

Working with user defined codes consists of:

- Setting up user defined codes
- Translating user defined codes

To set up a user defined code

On the appropriate user defined codes form
1. Complete the following fields:
   - Character Code
   - Description
   - Description-2 (optional)

2. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

To set up a user defined code from any user defined codes form, you must complete the System Code and User Defined Codes fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Character Code</td>
<td>This column contains a list of valid codes for a specific user defined code list. The number of characters that a code can contain appears in the column title.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A user defined name or remark. Use this field to describe the customer or class of customers who will use the execution list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description-2</td>
<td>Additional text that further describes or clarifies a field in J.D. Edwards systems.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What You Should Know About**

**Deleting a user defined code**
To delete a user defined code, clear the Character Code and Description fields. To delete the entire list, use action code D.

**Printing a list of user defined codes**
Choose User Defined Codes List from the General Accounting System Setup menu and run the appropriate DREAM Writer version.

**Setting up blank codes**
A code of blank in a user defined code list indicates that a blank is a valid entry for the code. This means that the user defined code does not require a specific value to be assigned to the field on a form.

Leave the character code blank and type a period in the last position of the description to set up a valid code equal to blank.
To translate a user defined code

Multi-national businesses can translate the descriptions of their user defined codes. The descriptions work in conjunction with the language specified for each person who uses the J.D. Edwards system. For example, if a French-speaking user accesses a user defined code that has a French translation, the description appears in French.

On the appropriate user defined codes form

1. Choose a code to translate.

3. On Translate User Defined Codes, complete the following fields:
   - Language
   - Description
   - Description 02 (optional)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td>A user defined code (system 01/type LP) that specifies a language to use in forms and printed reports. If you leave the Language field blank, the system uses the language that you specify in your user preferences. If you do not specify a language in your user preferences, the system uses the default language for the system. Before any translations can become effective, a language code must exist at either the system level or in your user preferences.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Processing Options for User Defined Codes

DEFAULT CODE/TYPING:
1. Enter the desired Install System Code.
   _________
2. Enter the desired Record Type.
Set Up Next Numbers

Setting Up Next Numbers

From Master Directory (G), enter 29

From General Systems (G00), choose Next Numbers

When you enter a document, such as an invoice or journal entry, you can assign a document number or let the next numbers program assign one. Next Numbers assigns numbers to documents using either or both of the following:

- Standard next numbers. The system finds the next available number in the Next Numbers table (F0002) and assigns the number to the document.

- Next numbers by company and fiscal year. The system assigns a unique set of next numbers for each company, fiscal year, or combination of company and fiscal year in the Next Numbers by Company/Fiscal Year table (F00021).

Setting up next numbers consists of:

- Reviewing standard next numbers
- Assigning next numbers by company and fiscal year
- Activating check digits for standard next numbers
What You Should Know About

**Changing next numbers**  Do not change any next numbers after you start using the J.D. Edwards systems. Changing the numbers can result in duplicates as well as the inability to locate previously added numbers.

**Changing the sequence of next numbers**  Do not change the sequence of the next numbers in the table. Each next number must remain on its current line because programs reference a specific line in the table.

For example, in the General Accounting system the next number for journal entries must be on the second line.

▶ **To review standard next numbers**

You can review the next numbers that the system assigns to journal entries and other documents.

On Next Numbers

1. Complete the following field:
   - System Code
2. Verify information in the following field:
   - Next Number
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Code</td>
<td>A user defined code (98/SY) that identifies a J.D. Edwards system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next Number</td>
<td>The number that the system will use next when assigning numbers. Next numbers can be used for many types of entries, including voucher numbers, invoice numbers, journal entry numbers, employee numbers, address numbers, contract numbers, and so on. You must use the next numbers already established, unless custom programming has been provided.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

▶ **To activate check digits for standard next numbers**

You can have the system assign check digits for any set of standard next numbers. Check digits prevent errors caused by transposition during data entry. For example, activating check digits in the address book for suppliers prevents a voucher from being assigned to the wrong supplier if digits are transposed during voucher entry.

J.D. Edwards recommends that you use check digits for next numbers only if a transposition during data entry is likely to create errors.

**On Next Numbers**

1. Complete the following field:
   - System Code

2. For each set of next numbers, complete the following field:
   - Check Digit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Check Digit | A code that specifies whether the system adds a number to the end of each next number assigned. For example, if you are using check digits and the next number is 2, the system will add a check digit such as 7, making the last two numbers 27. Check digits provide a method of randomly incrementing numbers to prevent the assignment of transposed numbers. In the example above, the system would never assign next number 72 while check digits are activated. Valid codes are:  
  Y Yes, add a check digit to this next number  
  N No, do not add a check digit  |
To assign next numbers by company and fiscal year

The system can assign a unique set of next numbers to journal entries and other documents for a specific company and fiscal year. This is helpful if your organization needs to have a consecutive document number for each company or for each company by fiscal year.

On Next Numbers

1. Access Next Numbers by Company/Fiscal.

2. On Next Numbers by Company/Fiscal, complete the following field:
   - Next Number Constant

3. Depending on the value you entered for the next number constant, do one of the following:
   - If you entered 1, complete the following fields:
     - Document Company
     - Document Type
     - Next Number

   Complete the following optional fields:
   - Skip to Company/Sequence
   - Skip to Fiscal Year
   - Display Sequence
- Same As
- Fiscal Year
- Imbed Digits
- Check Digit
- Auto Reset

- If you entered 2, the system uses the setup for standard next numbers for any document types that do not appear on the Next Numbers by Company/Fiscal form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Next Number Constant</td>
<td>A code that specifies which processing option to implement for next numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 Do not implement next numbers by Company/Fiscal Year. Continue using the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>standard next numbers setup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 Implement next numbers by Company/Fiscal Year. If a company record is not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>set up for a document type, a next number record is created and the next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>number default is 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 Implement next numbers by Company/Fiscal Year. If a company record is not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>set up for a document type, the standard next numbers setup is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you leave this field blank, the system uses 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This constant value resides in the General Constants table (F0009) and can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>be updated on Next Numbers by Company/Fiscal Year (P00021).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doc Co</td>
<td>A number that, along with document number, document type and G/L date,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uniquely identifies an original document, such as invoice, voucher, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>journal entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For World, if you are using the Next Numbers by Company/Fiscal Year feature,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the Automatic Next Numbers program (X0010) uses the document company to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>retrieve the correct next number for that company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If two or more original documents have the same document number and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>document type, you can use the document company to locate the desired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disply Seq</td>
<td>A number that the system uses to sequence information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sm As</td>
<td>If you set up next numbers by company or by company and fiscal year, a document type can share the same next number sequence as another document type. Same As Document Type refers to the document type that controls the next number the system uses. For example, you are creating a document with a document type of RR. The document you are creating should use the same next number sequence as regular invoices or RI document types. In this case, define the RR document type setup record with a Same As Document Type of RI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skip to Fiscal Year</td>
<td>The four-digit fiscal year designation. You must always use the year in which the first period ends. For example, a fiscal year beginning October 1, 1998 and ending September 30, 1999 is fiscal year 1998.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Imbed Digits | The number of digits that the system imbeds in a document number to represent the fiscal year. The imbed digits are only used when assigning next numbers by fiscal year. Valid values are:  
  1 Imbed one digit. The last digit of the fiscal year will be imbedded in the first position of the resulting document number. For example, 80012345, represents the 8 from 1998 and 0012345 is the next number.  
  2 Imbed two digits. The last two digits of the fiscal year will be imbedded in the first two positions of the resulting document number. For example, 98012345, represents the 98 from 1998 and 012345 is the next number. |
| Chk Dgt     | A code that specifies whether the system adds a number to the end of each next number assigned. For example, if you are using check digits and the next number is 2, the system will add a check digit such as 7, making the last two numbers 27. Check digits provide a method of randomly incrementing numbers to prevent the assignment of transposed numbers. In the example above, the system would never assign next number 72 while check digits are activated. Valid codes are:  
  Y Yes, add a check digit to this next number  
  N No, do not add a check digit |
| Auto Reset  | The number that you want the system to use when resetting next numbers for a new fiscal year. Auto Reset applies only to next numbers by fiscal year. Document number will reset or start with the number specified for each new fiscal year. |
What You Should Know About

**Existing next numbers** If next numbers by company/document already exist for the other next number method, you must delete that next number before you can add the new constant/fiscal year.
Set Up Customer Bank Information

Setting Up Customer Bank Information

Set up bank account information for each customer who sends you payment electronically on a bank tape (lock box).

Setting up customer bank information consists of:

- Setting up bank account cross-references for A/R
- Setting up bank account addresses
- Setting up bank account information for A/R

Setting Up Bank Account Cross-References for A/R

You must set up bank account cross-references for your customers who use bank tapes (lock boxes) for electronic remittance.

Setting up bank account cross-references consists of:

- Adding A/R cross-references
- Verifying A/R cross-references

Bank account cross-references link customer addresses in the Address Book Master table (F0101) to their bank account information in the Bank Transit Number Master table (F0030).

Adding A/R Cross-References

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Bank Account Cross Reference

To establish a relationship between your customer and their bank account, add a bank account cross-reference. This lets you process their receipts quickly with limited information, such as the bank transit number and bank account number.
To add A/R cross-references

On Bank Account Cross-Reference

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Address Number
   - Routing/Transit
   - Account Number
   - Control Digit (optional)
   - Description (optional)
   - Type

2. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Routing/Transit</td>
<td>The routing and transit number for a particular bank account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The combination of account number and transit number must be unique.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Set Up Customer Bank Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bank Account – Control Digit</td>
<td>This is an optional field that allows you to enter a check digit for a bank account number. The check digit is not part of the key to the Bank Account table (F0030).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Record Type – Bank Transit | A code used to distinguish external bank accounts from internal bank accounts. Valid values are:  
- C Customer Bank Accounts  
- G Internal G/L Bank Accounts  
- V Supplier Bank Account for payment via bank tape  
- D Default Bank Account for A/R Drafts and Auto Debits  
- B Valid Bank Transit Numbers  
- M G/L Bank Account/Business Unit used to define print information in A/P payments  
Note: When using bank type B, no other bank types are allowed. When using bank type V, no other V bank types are allowed. When using bank type D, no other D bank types are allowed. |

### What You Should Know About

**Deleting bank account cross-references**

When a customer has more than one bank account cross-reference, you can delete one by clearing the information in the bank account information fields. The Delete action deletes the entire list of cross-references.

### Verifying Cross-References for A/R

After you set up bank account cross-references, run two exception reports to verify the information before you produce your first batch of automatic receipts.

Verifying cross-references consists of:

- Reviewing the Bank Account Exception Report
- Reviewing the Address Book Exception Report

These reports compare information in the Address Book Master (F0101) and the Bank Transit Number Master (F0030) tables.
Reviewing the Bank Account Exception Report

The Bank Account Exception report edits all the addresses for each bank account cross-reference. This report lists any record that does not exist in the Address Book Master table, and bypasses bank account records that have a blank address number.

This report does not update any information. You must either enter missing address records or remove them from Bank Account Cross Reference.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Number</th>
<th>Bank Transit</th>
<th>Cust Bank</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>Ref/Roll</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1891896</td>
<td>123456789</td>
<td>5896752</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reviewing the Address Book Exception Report

The Address Book Exceptions Report lists any customers in the Address Book Master table that do not have a corresponding bank account record on Bank Account Cross Reference. The system only edits customers with a method of payment that requires a bank account record. For example, A/R bank tape processing requires bank account records.

This report does not update any information. You must either enter missing bank account records or change the payment instrument code for the customer in the customer master record.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4010</td>
<td>Gourmet &amp; More</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting Up Bank Account Addresses

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Bank Account Addresses

To assign address book information to a customer’s bank account, set up a bank account address. This lets you update a customer’s bank transit code, as well as locate other customer address numbers with an associated bank transit type of B (valid bank transit number).

To set up bank account addresses

On Bank Account Addresses

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Bank Transit
   - Address Number (optional)

2. Do one of the following to access Address Book Addition:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add
3. On Address Book Addition, complete the necessary address information.

**What You Should Know About**

**Changing bank account addresses** You can only change the address book information for a customer's bank account address. You cannot change the bank transit number.

**Setting Up Bank Account Information for A/R**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Bank Account Information

To create an electronic funds transfer (EFT) for the automatic debiting of a customer's account, you must set up bank account information.

This information is stored in the Bank Transit Number Master table (F0030).

**Before You Begin**

- Set up the G/L distribution information for each bank account
To set up A/R bank account information

On Bank Account Information

1. Complete the following required fields:
   - G/L Bank Account Number
   - Description
2. Complete the following optional fields:
   - Address Number
   - Control Digit
   - Bank Transit
   - Pre-Note Option Code
   - Bank Account Number
   - Float Days – Receivables
   - Checking or Savings Account
   - SWIFT Code
   - Bank User Number
   - Reference/Roll Number
   - Bank Reference Name
3. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pre–Note Option Code</td>
<td>The code used to override the Pre-Note processing for electronic funds transfers. Valid values are: blank Use the Pre-Note code assigned to the supplier. 1 Override the Pre-Note code assigned to the supplier and produce a bank tape with no check output even if the Pre-Note code is set to P.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Float Days–Receivables</td>
<td>The number of days the check floated. This is defined by subtracting the check date from the bank deposit date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking or Savings</td>
<td>A flag that indicates whether the account is a checking or savings account. This indicator is only meaningful on the G type bank account records and is used during bank tape processing for automatic payments. Valid values: blank checking account 0 checking account 1 savings account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWIFT Code</td>
<td>The Society for Worldwide Interbank Financial Telecommunications (SWIFT) code is an international banking identification code used to identify the origin and destination of electronic (or wire) financial transfers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bank User Number</td>
<td>The number assigned by the sponsor in the particular bank system (for example, the UK BACS system). This number will be included on all files submitted by the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference/Roll Number</td>
<td>The recipient's reference number. For French Electronic Funds Transfer, the six positions of this field are used to indicate the Banque de France sender's number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bank Reference Name</td>
<td>The name of the account associated with the user number (within the particular bank system).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Processing Options for Bank Account Information**

**ELECTRONIC INFORMATION:**
1. Enter a '1' to display Electronic Information.

**BANK SYSTEM INFORMATION:**
2. Enter a '1' to display Bank System Information.
Set Up A/R Draft Processing

Setting Up A/R Draft Processing

Before using A/R draft processing, you must complete the following tasks:

- Set up AAIs for A/R drafts
- Set up user defined codes for A/R drafts
- Set up drafts as the default payment instrument
- Set up statements for A/R drafts
- Set up bank account information for A/R drafts
- Set up letters for non-sufficient funds

Setting Up AAIs for A/R Drafts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose AAIs for A/R Drafts

AAIs define rules for programs that automatically generate journal entries. You should set up draft AAIs for each company for which you use a different account number. That is, you do not need to set up an AAI for each company that uses the same account. If the system cannot find an AAI for a specific company, it uses the AAI from company 00000.
**Accounts Receivable**

**AAIs for Drafts Receivable (RD1x)**

When you accept a draft, you debit a drafts receivable account and credit the original accounts receivable account. RD1x defines the drafts receivable account to automatically debit when you enter draft receipts. When drafts are remitted, this account is credited. You can override this account when you enter drafts.

**AAIs for Drafts Remitted for Cash (RD2x)**

When you remit drafts to your bank on the draft due date, you debit a drafts remitted account and credit the drafts receivable account (which RD1x defines). RD2x defines the drafts remitted account to debit when you remit drafts. When cash is recognized, this account is credited. You can override this account using processing options during draft remittance.

**AAIs for Drafts Remitted for Discount (RD3x)**

When you request payment on your draft before the due date, you debit a drafts remitted for discount account and credit the drafts receivable account (which RD1x defines). RD3x defines the drafts remitted for discount account to automatically debit when you remit drafts. When cash is recognized, this account is credited. You can override this account using processing options during draft remittance.

After the bank collects the draft, the system debits a cash account and credits either the RD2x or RD3x account, depending on which you used.

**To set up AAIs for A/R drafts**

On Single AAI Revisions or Multiple AAI Revision

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Item Number
   - Company
   - Business Unit
   - Object Account
   - Subsidiary (optional)

2. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add
See Also

- *Setting Up AAIs for A/R (P00121)*

## Setting Up User Defined Codes for A/R Drafts

Your company may add codes for payment instruments. These codes are user defined so that you can customize them to suit your business needs.

### Payment Instrument Codes

Payment instrument codes (00/PY) specify how your customers make payments. Examples are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D (draft by invoice)</td>
<td>When you create an invoice and expect your customer to pay by draft, you use this code to indicate that your customer will pay the invoice by draft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F (draft by statement)</td>
<td>When you create an invoice and expect your customer to pay by draft, you use this code to indicate that your customer will pay invoices grouped on a statement by draft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 (magnetic draft)</td>
<td>When you enter a pre-authorized draft, the system assigns this code. This is used during RiBa draft remittance only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 (supplier draft with account number)</td>
<td>When you originate a draft and your customer accepts the draft and returns it to you, you enter that information on Enter Our Drafts. The system assigns this code if you have customer bank account information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 (customer draft with account number)</td>
<td>When you send your customer an invoice and they return it as a draft, you accept the draft on Enter Their Drafts. The system assigns this code if you have customer bank account information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 (supplier draft without account number)</td>
<td>When you originate a draft and your customer accepts the draft and returns it to you, you enter that information on Enter Our Drafts. The system assigns this code if you do not have customer bank account information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 (customer draft without account number)</td>
<td>When you send your customer an invoice and they return it as a draft, you accept the draft on Enter Their Drafts. The system assigns this code if you do not have customer bank account information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pay Status Codes

The system enters one of the following payment status codes (00/PS) on an invoice, statement, or draft, based on where it is in the draft process:

- **A (approved for payment)** When you create an invoice and expect your customer to pay by draft, the system designates this pay status on the invoice.

- **P (invoice paid in full)** When your customer returns the invoice with a draft attachment and you enter that information, the system designates this pay status on the invoice.

- **D (draft accepted)** When your customer returns the invoice with a draft attachment and you enter that information, the system designates this pay status on the draft.

- **G (draft guaranteed)** When you submit the draft to the bank and you update the draft with the remitted information, the system designates this pay status on the draft.

▶ To set up user defined codes for A/R drafts

On the appropriate user defined codes form

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Character Code
   - Description
   - Description-2 (optional)

2. Do one of the following:
   - For WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - For WorldVision, click Add

See Also

- *Setting Up User Defined Codes for A/R (P00051)*
Setting Up Drafts as the Default Payment Instrument

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry, choose Customer Master Information

You can set a default payment instrument to use for each customer. The system displays the default payment instrument when you enter invoices for that customer. This saves data entry time when entering invoices.

For drafts, this payment instrument indicates whether you plan to send drafts attached to the customer’s invoices or statements. The draft payment instrument can be any of the following:

- D (draft by invoice)
- F (draft by statement)
- 0 (magnetic draft)

Occasionally, the customer might use another form of payment. You can use Speed Status Change to change the payment instrument on an invoice-by-invoice basis. You can also use this program to update the discount available, remark, pay status, and/or due date.

To set up drafts as the default payment instrument

On Customer Master Information
Complete the following field:

- Payment Instrument

See Also

- Entering Customers (P01053)

Setting Up Statements for A/R Drafts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer & Invoice Entry

From Customer & Invoice Entry, choose Customer Master Information

For each customer, you can choose to print statements with one or more invoices combined into one draft.

To set up statements for A/R drafts

On Customer Master Information

Complete the following field:

- Print Statement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Print Stmt(Y/N)</td>
<td>A code that indicates whether the system prints invoices and statements for the customer. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also

- Printing Invoices and Statements with Drafts (P03506)
Setting Up Bank Account Information for A/R Drafts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 29

From Accounts Receivable Setup (G0341), choose Bank Account Cross Reference

In order for your bank to collect the customer drafts you remit, you must have the following information about your customers’ bank accounts:

- Bank name
- Bank routing and transit information
- Customer’s bank account number

If you do not provide this information, banks typically do not allow you to remit drafts on magnetic tape. They also typically assess additional charges to collect drafts without full bank account information.

This task includes:

- Setting up cross-references for A/R drafts bank accounts
- Printing the Bank Account Exceptions Report for A/R drafts

Setting Up Cross-References for A/R Drafts Bank Accounts

You must specify a customer's bank account information to collect the customer drafts you remit to the bank.

Bank Account Cross Reference updates the Bank Transit Number Master table (F0030).

To set up cross-references for A/R drafts bank accounts

On Bank Account Cross-Reference
1. Complete the following fields:
   - Address Number
   - Routing/Transit Number
   - Account Number
   - Control Digit (optional)
   - Description (optional)
   - Record Type

2. Access the detail area.
3. Complete the following fields:
   - SWIFT Code (optional)
   - Checking or Savings Account
   - Reference/Roll Number

4. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

**What You Should Know About**

**Processing drafts using bank tapes** To set up customers for draft processing using bank tapes, you must set up a bank account with a record type of D.

**See Also**

- *Setting Up A/R Bank Account Cross-References (P0030)*
Printing the Bank Account Exception Report for A/R Drafts

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice & Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Daily Operations

From A/R Drafts Daily Operations (G031111), choose Bank Account Exception Report

The Bank Account Exception Report lists all bank account records that have either an illegal French RIB key or a transit number that does not have an associated type B record.

Two versions of this report are available:

**Italian**

When you run this version, the system searches for a bank account type B to verify the bank transit account number of your customer's bank type D accounts.

**French**

When you run this version, the system searches for an illegal French RIB number in the bank transit number.

Regardless of which version you run, the system bypasses bank account numbers that do not have address numbers.

To correct bank account information that appears on this report, use Bank Account Cross-Reference or Address Book Revisions.
### French Bank Account Exception Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address Number</th>
<th>Bank Transit</th>
<th>Cust Bank Acct #</th>
<th>CDR</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1001</td>
<td>97456832</td>
<td>110745256</td>
<td>C</td>
<td><strong>Illegal RIB Key</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3001</td>
<td>89230567</td>
<td>9997501</td>
<td>C</td>
<td><strong>Illegal RIB Key</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3003</td>
<td>984376125</td>
<td>811045</td>
<td>C</td>
<td><strong>Illegal RIB Key</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3030</td>
<td>590435902</td>
<td>810395</td>
<td>C</td>
<td><strong>Illegal RIB Key</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3333</td>
<td>71352693</td>
<td>9128745</td>
<td>C</td>
<td><strong>Illegal RIB Key</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4010</td>
<td>107004381</td>
<td>3669538743</td>
<td>V</td>
<td><strong>Illegal RIB Key</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4343</td>
<td>123.456.789</td>
<td>9865615-789</td>
<td>V</td>
<td><strong>Illegal RIB Key</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7001</td>
<td>4089763</td>
<td>2354901-999</td>
<td>D</td>
<td><strong>Illegal RIB Key</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7001</td>
<td>4089763</td>
<td>2364901-506</td>
<td>V</td>
<td><strong>Illegal RIB Key</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7005</td>
<td>1009622002021</td>
<td>310-0277612</td>
<td>43</td>
<td><strong>Illegal RIB Key</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7006</td>
<td>107298104259</td>
<td>310-0368111</td>
<td>55</td>
<td><strong>Illegal RIB Key</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7007</td>
<td>10024212627415</td>
<td>30-352702</td>
<td>33</td>
<td><strong>Illegal RIB Key</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1875870</td>
<td>89230567</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td><strong>Illegal RIB Key</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### See Also
- Verifying A/R Cross-References (P00314)

### Processing Options for Bank Account Exception Report

**FRENCH RIB KEY VALIDATION:**
1. Enter a ‘1’ to suppress RIB Key validation on the bank account.

**BANK TRANSIT VALIDATION:**
2. Enter a ‘1’ to suppress validation for a matching ‘B’ type account.
Setting Up Letters for Non-Sufficient Funds

From Customer & Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Other Invoice Entry Methods

From Other Invoice & Receipts Entry Methods (G03111), choose Draft Remittances/Collections

From A/R Drafts Daily Operations (G031112), choose NSF Notification Generic Text

When a customer has an outstanding draft because of insufficient funds, you can send a notification letter. The text that prints on the letter must first be defined using NSF Notification Generic Text.

You create codes that indicate the severity of your warning (for example, LEVEL 1 for a first letter, LEVEL 2 for a second letter, and so on), then define the text for each code. When you run NSF Notification to create your notification letters, you enter a code in the processing options. The system prints a letter using the text associated with that code.

To set up letters for non-sufficient funds

On NSF Notification Generic Text

1. To add a code, complete the following fields:
   - Code
   - Description
2. To define text for a code, choose the General Message option next to that code.

3. On General Message, do one of the following:
   - Type new text for a code and use the Add action
   - Type over the existing text and use the Change action

**Processing Options for NSF Notification Generic Text**

**USER DEFINED CODES:**
1. Enter the desired System Code.
2. Enter the desired Record Type.

**DISPLAY INFORMATION**
3. Enter an '1' to display Rate Text or Enter an '2' to display Message Text
4. If displaying Message Text, Enter an '1' for 60 column display or Enter an '2' for 80 column display
Statement and Reminder Setup

Objectives

- To set up the text that you want to print on your A/R statements, delinquency notices, and payment reminders
- To define interest rate information

About Statement and Reminder Setup

Before you print statements and other A/R notifications, or bill a customer for an overdue invoice, you need to define and customize certain information for your business needs. For example, you might want to set up different messages to appear on your A/R statements and payment reminders.

Statement and reminder setup consists of:

- Setting up statement messages
- Setting up text for payment reminders
- Revising text for delinquency notices
- Working with interest rate information
Set Up Statement Messages

Setting Up Statement Messages

To print a personalized message on your A/R statements, you must first set up the text.

Setting up statement messages consists of:

- Entering messages for A/R statements
- Setting up model messages for A/R statements

When you add or revise a statement message, the system creates a key for generic statement message text. This key is stored in the Generic Text Index Key table (F00163) and the actual message in the Generic Text Entry table (F0016).

Entering Messages for A/R Statements

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Statement and Reminder Processing

From Statement and Reminder Processing (G0322), choose Revise A/R Print Messages

You can enter messages for a specific customer or for all customers within a company.

For example, you might enter the message *We appreciate your business* for all customers within company 00100. But you might also enter *Thank you for doing business with us for 10 years* for customer 1001 and *Your business is appreciated* for customer 3001. Therefore, when you print all statements for company 00100, *We appreciate your business* will appear on the statements except those for customers 1001 and 3001.
To enter messages for A/R statements

On Revise A/R Print Messages

1. Complete one of the following fields on the first available blank line:
   - Address (customer number)
   - Company
2. Complete the following optional field:
   - Language Preference
3. Do one of the following:
   - For WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - For WorldVision, click Add
4. Locate the customer or company you just added.
5. Choose the Narrative Text option next to the customer or company.
6. On A/R Statements Print Message Text, complete the message to appear on the statements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td>A user defined code (system 01/type LP) that specifies a language to use in forms and printed reports. If you leave the Language field blank, the system uses the language that you specify in your user preferences. If you do not specify a language in your user preferences, the system uses the default language for the system. Before any translations can become effective, a language code must exist at either the system level or in your user preferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Form-specific information</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A user defined code (system 01, type LP) that specifies a language to use when you display information or print reports. If you leave this field blank, the system uses the language set up in your user profile. If there is no language specified in your user profile, the system uses the default, or base language. If any translations can appear, a language code must exist at either the system level or in your user profile. The language code at the system level or in your user profile must correspond to a language code assigned to the translated menu, form, report, description, title, or processing option.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What You Should Know About

Displaying a specific customer or company
To limit the list of customers and companies, specify the number of the customer or company at the top of Revise A/R Print Messages.

Deleting an individual customer or company
To remove an individual customer or company from the list of print messages, choose Delete next to the appropriate customer or company.

The Delete action deletes the entire list of customers and companies.

Setting Up Model Messages for Statements

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Statement and Reminder Processing

From Statement and Reminder Processing (G0322), choose Revise A/R Print Messages

To print the same statement message for several customers or companies, set up a model message.

To set up model messages for statements

On Revise A/R Print Messages

1. Choose the Narrative text option next to an existing message to access A/R Statements Print Messages Text.

2. On A/R Statement Print Messages Text, choose the Models function to access Text Model Selection.
3. On Text Model Selection, choose a blank line to add a model.

4. On A/R Statements Print Message Text, complete the following field:
   - Model

5. Enter the model message text.

   When you exit, the new model appears on Text Model Selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Model Name</td>
<td>A name for a model entry. The model can later be accessed by this name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What You Should Know

Assigning a model message

To assign a model message for a specific customer or company, choose the appropriate model on Text Model Selection.

Processing Options for A/R Special Print Messages

MESSAGE TEXT APPLICATION:

1. Enter the code which corresponds to the application for which you will be maintaining special print message text.

   ‘’ = Statements (Default)
   ‘1’ = Payment Reminders
   ‘2’ = Interest Invoices

Do not change this processing option once you enter data.
Set Up Text for Payment Reminders

Setting Up Text for Payment Reminders

To print a personalized message on your A/R payment reminders, you must first set up the text.

Setting up text for payment reminders consists of:

- Entering reminder messages
- Setting up model reminder messages

When you add or revise a payment reminder message, the system creates a key for generic message text. This key is stored in the Generic Text Index Key table (F00163) and the actual message in the Generic Text Entry table (F0016).

Before You Begin

- Ensure that your business or company is not using delinquency notices. You cannot implement both payment reminders and delinquency notices.

Entering Reminder Messages

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Statement and Reminder Processing

From Statement and Reminder Processing (G0322), choose Revise Payment Reminders Text

You can add a reminder message for a specific customer or for all customers within a company.

Generally, as a customer’s account becomes more overdue, the message on the reminder becomes more severe. You can add messages with up to three levels of severity. They are:
First level

This is a mild reminder that you might send a customer when an invoice is five days overdue. For example, it might read Have we missed your payment? Our records indicate that the invoices listed above are past due. If your payment has been sent, please disregard this reminder. If not, please send us your payment as soon as possible.

Second level

This is a more firm reminder that you might send a customer when an invoice is 30 days overdue. For example, it might read The invoices listed above are delinquent. Please remit payment immediately. If your payment has been sent, please disregard this reminder.

Third level

This is a firm reminder that you might send a customer when an invoice is 45 days overdue. For example, it might read The invoices listed above are delinquent. Prior attempts to collect payment have rendered no response. If your payment is not received within five days, your account will be turned over to our collection agency.

Set up payment reminders text for company 00000 to use as the default text for all companies. The system overrides payment reminders text as follows:

- Company-specific text overrides the default text
- Customer-specific text overrides the company text
To enter reminder messages

On Revise Payment Reminders Text

1. Complete one of the following fields on the first available blank line:
   - Address Number
   - Company
2. Complete the following fields:
   - Language Preference (optional)
   - Severity
3. Do one of the following:
   - For WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - For WorldVision, click Add
4. Locate the customer or company you just added.
5. Choose the Narrative Text option next to the customer or company to access A/R Payment Reminders Print Messages.
6. On A/R Payment Reminders Print Messages, complete the message to appear on the payment reminders.

What You Should Know About

**Displaying a specific customer or company**
To limit the list of customers and companies, specify the number at the top of Revise Payment Reminders Text.

**Deleting an individual customer or company**
To remove an individual customer or company from the list of payment reminders text, choose Delete next to the appropriate customer or company.

The Delete action deletes the entire list of customers and companies.
Setting Up Model Reminder Messages

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Statement and Reminder Processing

From Statement and Reminder Processing (G0322), choose Revise Payment Reminders Text

To print the same payment reminders text for several customers or companies, set up a model reminder message.

To set up model reminder messages

On Revise Payment Reminders Text

1. Choose the Narrative Text option next to an existing message to access A/R Payment Reminders Print Messages.

2. On A/R Payment Reminders Print Messages, choose the Models function to access Text Model Selection.

3. On Text Model Selection, choose a blank line to enter a model.
4. On A/R Payment Reminders Print Messages, complete the following field:
   - Model

5. Enter the text for the model message.

What You Should Know About

Assigning a model message  Choose the appropriate model on Text Model Selection for the specific customer or company.

Processing Options for A/R Special Print Messages

MESSAGE TEXT APPLICATION:
1. Enter the code which corresponds to the application for which you will be maintaining special print message text.

   ‘ ’ = Statements (Default)
   ‘1’ = Payment Reminders
   ‘2’ = Interest Invoices

Do not change this processing option once you enter data.
Revise Text For Delinquency Notices

Revising Text For Delinquency Notices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter G90

From Run Time Setup (G90), choose Data Dictionary

Alternately, you can enter DD (data dictionary) on the command line of any menu.

To customize the information that appears on your A/R delinquency notices, revise the text. To do so, revise the data item in the data dictionary. These data items represent the text for the letters you issue to a customer whose open balances fall within the specified aging category.

You can revise three levels of text for delinquency notices. They are:

**LETTER1**  
This is a mild notice that includes a summarized list of the customer’s past due amounts.

**LETTER2**  
This is a more firm notice that includes a summarized list of the customer’s past due amounts.

**LETTER3**  
This is a firm notice that includes a summarized list of the customer’s past due amounts and a specific date in which the customer must send payment.

Before You Begin

- Ensure that your company/business is not using payment reminders. You cannot implement both delinquency notices and payment reminders.

See Also

- *Working with the Data Dictionary (P9201)* in the *Technical Foundation Guide* for more information about data dictionary items
To revise delinquency notices text

On Data Dictionary

1. Locate the appropriate item by completing the following field:
   - Data Item

2. Choose the Glossary function to access Data Item Glossary Revisions.

3. On Data Item Glossary Revisions, change the text as necessary.
What You Should Know About

Creating alternate versions of delinquency notices text

You can send different delinquency notices to different groups of customers. To do so, create alternate versions of LETTER1, LETTER2, and LETTER3. For example, you might name the alternate versions LETTER1X, LETTER2X, and LETTER3X, where X is any alphanumeric character not previously specified by a foreign language version of the data item.

You can create as many alternate versions as you need.
Work with Interest Rate Information

Working with Interest Rate Information

If you send interest invoices to assess charges on past due amounts, you must define the interest rates and the text to appear on the invoices.

Working with interest rate information consists of:

☐ Defining interest rates
☐ Entering text for interest rates

Defining Interest Rates

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced and Technical Operations (G0331), choose Interest Invoicing

From Interest Invoicing (G03312), choose Revise Interest Rates

In order for the system to calculate interest charges on overdue invoices, you need to specify the interest rate. You can specify a monthly finance charge percentage in the customer master record, or you can define the interest rates and effective dates that the system uses to process interest invoices.

Define interest rates for company 00000 to use as the default rates for all companies. You can also define interest rates for a specific company

Interest rates are stored in the Interest Rate Constants table (F00017).

To define interest rates

On Revise Interest Rates
1. Complete the following fields:
   - Interest Computation Code
   - Company
   - Description (optional)
   - Effective Date
   - Effective Interest Rate

2. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interest Comp. Code</td>
<td>When used for interest invoicing in the Accounts Receivable system, this code is “INV”. A rate should be entered for each company used in A/R or for company 00000. The rate entered for company 00000 is the default when no record exists for the particular company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effective Date</td>
<td>The date on which this transaction takes effect. The effective date is used generically. It can be the date of the next raise, a lease effective date, a price or cost effective date, a currency effective date, a tax rate effective date, change in well status, or whatever is appropriate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Field | Explanation
--- | ---
Effect Int Rate | The effective interest rate associated with this particular payment terms code. This must be entered manually as several payment terms codes have an indeterminate interest rate (for example, 30/60/90 terms or prox 25th). Leaving the effective interest rate blank will void the comparison of this rate with the current borrowing rate (CBR) in order to determine whether a discount is to be taken. Input interest rate as a full number between 0 and 99 rather than a decimal fraction.

**What You Should Know About**

**Deleting an interest rate** | To delete an interest rate and its effective date, clear the appropriate fields.

The Delete action deletes the entire list of interest rates.

**Entering Text For Interest Invoices**

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced and Technical Operations (G0331), choose Interest Invoicing

From Interest Invoicing (G03312), choose Revise Interest Invoice Text

To create a personalized message to print on your interest invoices, you must enter the text. You can enter messages for a specific customer or all customer within a company.

When you enter or revise the text for interest invoices, the system creates the key for generic message text. The system stores this key in the Generic Text Index Key table (F00163) and the actual message in the Generic Text Entry table (F0016).
To enter text for interest invoices

On Revise Interest Invoice Text

1. Complete one of the following fields on the first available blank line:
   - Address
   - Company
2. Complete the following optional field:
   - Language
3. Do one of the following:
   - For WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - For WorldVision, click Add
4. Locate the customer or company you just added.
5. Choose the Narrative Text option next to the customer or company.
6. On Interest Invoices Print Message Text, enter the message to appear on the interest invoices.

What You Should Know About

Displaying a specific customer or company
To limit the list of customers and companies, specify the appropriate address number or company number at the top of Revise Interest Invoice Text.

Deleting a customer or company
To remove a company or customer from the list of interest invoices text, choose Delete next to the appropriate customer or company.

The Delete action deletes the entire list of customers and companies.

Creating a model message
To use the same text for several companies, you can create a model message.

See Setting Up Statement Messages.
A/R Tax Setup

Objectives

- To understand the types of taxes you work with in A/R
- To set up tax authorities (agencies and governments)
- To set up tax rates and areas (jurisdictions and rates for the tax authorities)
- To control how taxes are assessed using tax explanation codes
- To understand which AAI’s to set up for taxes
- To set up tax rules for companies in your business or company

About A/R Tax Setup

Various tax authorities assess and collect taxes. In order to comply with governmental tax regulations, you must set up tax information in your Accounts Receivable system. After you set up this information, you can:

- Track taxes according to different tax rates and areas
- Assign a default tax rate to a customer
- Apply a tax rate to an entire invoice or an individual pay item
- Enter a tax amount or have the system calculate the amount
- Track tax history in a separate table

A/R tax setup consists of:

- Setting up tax authorities for A/R
- Setting up tax rates and areas for A/R
- About tax explanation codes for A/R
- About AAI’s for A/R taxes
- Setting up tax rules by company for A/R
Alternatively, you can set up your taxes with Vertex(tm).

Vertex tax set up consists of:

☐ Working with Vertex

What Are the Different Types of Taxes?

You might be required to collect one of the following types of taxes:

Sales tax
This tax is calculated on the gross amount of the sale of goods. Customers who buy goods for their own use pay sales tax at the time of purchase. Customers who buy goods for resale do not pay sales tax.

Value Added Tax (VAT)
This tax is collected at each stage in the production and distribution of goods and services as value is added. As a business adds value to a product, the business pays VAT on the added value.

Canadian Goods and Services Tax (GST) and Provincial Sales Tax (PST)
In Canada, the federal government assesses a GST. The provincial government assess a PST. The tax rates vary from province to province and are calculated using either the value of goods or the value plus GST.

Tax types are not exclusive to a single country. For example, VAT is used worldwide and encompasses a variety of value added taxes, such as:

- IVA in Italy
- TVA in Belgium
- GST in Singapore

See Also

- Tax Reference Guide for more detailed information about taxes and related tax reports
Set Up Tax Authorities for A/R

Setting Up Tax Authorities for A/R

From Master Directory (G), enter 29

From General Systems Menu (G00), choose Tax Processing Reporting

From Tax Processing & Reporting (G0021), choose Tax Authorities

Alternatively, you can access the Address Book menu (G01) and set up tax authorities on Address Book Revisions.

Tax authorities are government agencies that assess and collect taxes. For tracking and reporting purposes, your organization must set up an address book record for each tax authority which it reports to.

Before You Begin

- Set up a user defined code (01/ST) for search type T (tax).
To set up tax authorities for A/R

On Tax Authorities

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Alpha Name
   - Mailing Name
   - Search Type
   - Payables
   - Receivable

2. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

See Also

- *Entering Address Book Records (P01051) in the Address Book Guide.*
Set Up Tax Rates and Areas

Setting Up Tax Rates and Areas for A/R

From Master Directory (G), enter 29

From General Systems Menu (G00), choose Tax Processing & Reporting

From Tax Processing & Reporting (G0021), choose Tax Rates & Areas

To calculate and track the different taxes you are required to collect from your customers, you must set up:

- Tax areas
- Tax rates

Each tax area is a physical, geographical area, such as a state, province, or county. Different tax authorities assess a variety of taxes for each geographical area. Additionally, each authority within a tax area can have a different tax rate.
To set up tax rates and areas for A/R

On Tax Rates & Areas

1. Complete the following required fields:
   - Tax Rate/Area
   - Description
   - Item Number

2. Complete the following optional fields:
   - Address
   - Tax Rate
   - G/L Offset

3. Verify the information in the following fields:
   - Calculation Method
   - VAT Expense
   - Total Area Tax Rate

4. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add
## Set Up Tax Rates and Areas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Rate/Area</td>
<td>A code that identifies a tax or geographic area that has common tax rates and tax distribution. The tax rate/area must be defined to include the tax authorities (for example, state, county, city, rapid transit district, or province), and their rates. To be valid, a code must be set up in the Tax Rate/Area table (F4008). Typically, U.S. sales and use taxes require multiple tax authorities per tax rate/area, whereas VAT requires only one simple rate. The system uses this code to properly calculate the tax amount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Authority</td>
<td>The address book number of a tax authority that has jurisdiction in the tax area. This is an authority to whom you pay and report sales, use, or VAT taxes. Examples include states, counties, cities, transportation districts, provinces, and so on. You can have up to five tax authorities for a single tax area. <strong>Form-specific information</strong> For Canada, the GST tax authority must be on the first line. PST tax authorities can be on lines 2 through 5. If a GST input credit is applicable, the authorities on lines 3 through 5 can identify the GST percentage not eligible for input credits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Rate</td>
<td>A number that identifies the tax rate for a tax authority that has jurisdiction in the tax area. Tax rates must be expressed as a percentage and not as the decimal equivalent. For example, type 7% as 7. The system displays 7.000.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item Number</td>
<td>A number that the system assigns to an item. It can be in short, long, or 3rd item number format. <strong>Form-specific information</strong> Identifies either a group of items or a single item. Items that are assessed VAT generally use the group code number. Items that are assessed a luxury tax generally use a specific item number. NOTE: Only sales order and purchase order processing use this field. You can suppress this field with processing options.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Accounts Receivable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Tax Calculation Method | A code that indicates whether the tax rate for the tax authority is calculated pre-GST (taxable amount plus any GST for a previous tax authority) or calculated as a tax on a tax. Valid values are:  

Y Tax on a tax. Indicates that the tax is calculated after GST has been added to the product value. The taxable amount plus any GST calculated for a previous tax authority is added to calculate the basis for this authority.  

N Not tax on a tax. Indicates that the tax is calculated against the value of the product. The taxable amount is the basis for this authority.  

NOTE: This field is used in Canada. It is valid only with tax explanation codes that begin with the letters B and C.  

Form-specific information  

This code is available only for the second tax authority (line 2 in the list on this form) and must identify a non-GST tax authority. |
| VAT Exp            | A code that identifies the percentage of the VAT (GST) amount that is not eligible for input credits. Valid values are:  

R Not recoverable. The tax is an expense and is not a receivable.  

Blank Recoverable. The tax is a receivable. This is the default.  

NOTE: This field is used in Canada. It is valid only with tax explanation codes that begin with the letters V, B, and C.  

Form-specific information  

This code is available only for the third, fourth, fifth tax authorities (lines 3 through 5) on the form. |
| Total Area Tax Rate | A number that identifies the sum of the tax rates for all tax authorities in the tax rate/area.  

Form-specific information  

A system-displayed number that indicates the sum of the tax rates for all tax authorities. If you type Y in the Calculation Method field, the total reflects compound taxes (tax on a tax). If you type R in the VAT Expense field, the total does not include the input credit amount. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Rate/Area</td>
<td>A code that identifies a tax or geographic area that has common tax rates and tax distribution. The tax rate/area must be defined to include the tax authorities (for example, state, county, city, rapid transit district, or province), and their rates. To be valid, a code must be set up in the Tax Rate/Area table (F4008). Typically, U.S. sales and use taxes require multiple tax authorities per tax rate/area, whereas VAT requires only one simple rate. The system uses this code to properly calculate the tax amount.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

- *Tax Reference Guide* for more information about the different types of taxes and what you should consider when setting up tax rates and areas.
Understand Tax Explanation Codes for A/R

About Tax Explanation Codes for A/R

You might be required to calculate, collect, and track taxes on some invoices you send to your customers. When this is necessary, you must enter a tax explanation code for the customer or invoice. These codes control how you:

- Collect taxes
- Distribute taxes to specific G/L revenue and expense accounts

Tax explanation codes are user defined codes (system 00/type EX).

What Are the Types of A/R Tax Explanation Codes?

J.D. Edwards provides the following tax explanation codes for A/R invoice processing:

- B – GST + PST, where PST is self-assessed (Canadian)
- BT – Same as B, but taxes only
- C – GST + PST, where PST is seller-assessed (Canadian)
- CT – Same as C, but taxes only
- E – Exempt
- S – Sales tax. Seller-assessed (PST in Canada and sales in U.S.)
- ST – Same as S, but taxes only
- U – Use tax. Seller-assessed (PST in Canada)
- UT – Same as U, but taxes only
- V – VAT (VAT in Europe and GST in Canada)
- VT – Same as V, but taxes only
- V+ – Same as V, but calculated as a tax on tax.
How Does the System Calculate A/R Taxes?

The system can calculate some of the following commonly used taxes:

- Sales Tax (S)
- VAT (V)
- VAT + Sales Tax
- VAT + Use Tax (B)

Example: Sales Tax (S)

The system calculates the tax amount but does not make a separate entry to the general ledger for the tax amount. The tax amount (which is 73 in the following example) appears on the invoice. The system updates the Sales/Use/VAT Tax table (F0018) for tax reporting purposes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tax rate</th>
<th>7.3 percent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Taxable amount</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales tax calculation</td>
<td>Taxable amount x sales tax rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1,000 x .073 = 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amount: 1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Taxable: 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gross amount: 1,073</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Journal entries</td>
<td>Revenue: 1,073–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic offsets</td>
<td>A/R trade: 1,073</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example: VAT (V)

The system calculates the tax amount and makes a separate entry to the general ledger for the tax amount.

**Tax rate** 7.3 percent

**Taxable amount** 1,000

**Sales tax calculation** Taxable amount x VAT tax rate
- $1,000 \times 0.073 = 73$

**Invoice**
- Amount: 1,000
- Tax amount: 73
- Gross amount: 1,073

**Journal entries** Revenue: 1,000–

**Automatic offsets**
- A/R trade: 1,073
- VAT payable: 73–
Example: VAT + Sales Tax

The system calculates taxes on a tax amount. The following example shows both VAT plus sales tax and GST plus PST.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tax rate/area calculation method</th>
<th>Y (tax on tax)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax rate</td>
<td>7 percent GST, 8 percent PST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taxable amount</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GST calculation**

- Taxable amount x GST rate
- 1,000 x .07 = 70

**PST calculation**

- Taxable amount + GST x PST rate
- 1,000 + 70 x .08 = 85.60

**Tax amount**

- GST + PST
- 70 + 85.60 = 155.60

**Invoice**

- Amount: 1,000
- Tax amount: 155.60
- Gross amount: 1,155.60

**Journal entries**

- Revenue: 1,085.60–

**Automatic offsets**

- A/R trade: 1,155.60
- VAT payable: 70–
**Example: VAT + Use Tax (B)**

The system calculates use tax on amounts that include GST (Canadian VAT).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tax rate/area calculation method</th>
<th>Y (tax on tax)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax rate</td>
<td>10 percent VAT (GST), 5 percent Use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taxable amount</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAT calculation</td>
<td>Taxable amount x VAT (GST) rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 1,000 x .10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use tax calculation</td>
<td>Taxable amount + VAT x Use rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 1,000 + 100 x .05 = 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax amount</td>
<td>VAT (or GST) + Use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 100 + 55 = 155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoice</td>
<td>Amount: 1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Tax amount: 155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Gross amount: 1,100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Journal entries</td>
<td>Revenue: 1,055–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic offsets</td>
<td>• VAT payable: 100–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A/R trade: 1,100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Taxes recoverable: 55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

- *About User Defined Codes for A/R (P00051)*
Understand AAIs for A/R Taxes

About AAIs for A/R Taxes

If you are required to collect taxes on customer invoices, you must distribute the tax amounts to the correct G/L accounts. When you set up AAIs for a specific type of tax, such as VAT or use tax, you designate what accounts you want to debit and credit for an invoice tax amount.

Which AAIs Do You Need to Set Up for Taxes?

An AAI item for receivables taxes (RC) is required. Tax explanation codes use item RTyyyy to point to various types of taxes, including VAT. RTyyyy is similar to GCyyyy, but the offset, which you can change, is defined in the Tax Rate/Area table.

The character code yyyy represents a G/L offset account for the tax explanation code, such as RTSALE or RTVAT. The character code _ _ _ _ means that there is no G/L offset account. This code points to the AAI item, which, in turn, points to the appropriate tax accounts. For example, for the code RTVATB, RT is the AAI item for a receivables tax account and VATB is the character code that identifies the G/L offset account.

Each tax explanation code has corresponding AAI items that identify the debit and credit tax accounts. The types of tax explanation codes are:

- Value-added tax codes
- Sales tax codes
- VAT plus sales tax codes
- Tax-exempt tax code

See Also

- Working with AAIs for A/R (P00121)
**Value-added Tax Codes**

The tax explanation codes for value-added taxes and their AAI items are as follows:

**Value-added tax codes V**  
When you enter an invoice, you credit the G/L distribution accounts for the goods. The system debits an A/R account and credits a VAT payable account.

RTyyyy identifies the VAT payable account and RCyyyy identifies the A/R trade account. For example:

- Dr 1100  RCyyyy Gross (A/R for goods of 1000 + VAT of 100)
- Dr 1100
- Cr 1000  G/L distribution (goods of 1000)
- Cr 100  RTyyyy (VAT recoverable account for the tax rate/area)

**Value-added tax code V+ (calculated as a tax on a tax)**  
The accounts are the same as those for V.

**Value-added tax code VT (taxes only)**  
The accounts are the same as those for V. For example:

- Dr 100  RCyyyy Gross (A/R for VAT of 100)
- Cr 0  G/L distribution (goods of 0)
- Cr 100  RTyyyy (VAT payable account for the tax rate/area)

**What You Should Know About**

**VAT taxes**  
The amount distributed to the general ledger includes the goods and the sales tax because this is the true cost of purchased goods. VAT is not included in the G/L distribution amount because a company is usually reimbursed for any VAT that is paid when the company sells those goods.
Sales Tax Codes

The tax explanation codes for sales taxes and their AAI items are as follows:

**Sales tax code S (PST in Canada/seller-assessed)** When you enter an invoice, you credit G/L distribution accounts (for the goods plus the sales tax). The system debits an A/R account. RCyyy identifies the A/R account. For example:

- Dr 1050  RCyyy Gross (A/R for goods of 1000 + sales tax of 50)
- Cr 1050  G/L distribution (goods of 1000 + sales tax of 50)

**Sales tax code ST (PST in Canada/seller-assessed)** The accounts are the same as those for S. For example:

- Dr 50  RCyyy Gross (A/R for sales tax of 50)
- Cr 50  G/L distribution (sales tax of 50)

VATplus Sales Tax Codes

The tax explanation codes for VAT plus sales taxes and their AAI items are as follows:

**VAT plus sales tax code C (GST + seller-assessed PST/Canada only)** When you enter an invoice, you credit G/L distribution accounts (for the goods + PST). The system debits an A/R account and credits a GST payable account. RTyyy identifies the A/R account. For example:

- Dr 1155  RCyyy Gross (A/R for goods of 1000 + GST of 100 + PST of 55)
- Cr 100  RTyyy (GST payable account for the tax rate/area)
- Cr 1055  G/L distribution (goods of 1000 + PST of 55)

**VAT plus sales tax code CT (GST + seller-assessed PST/Canada only)** Taxes only. Accounts are the same as those for C. For example:

- Dr 155  RCyyy Gross (A/R for GST of 100 + PST of 55)
- Cr 55  G/L distribution (PST of 55)
- Cr 100  RTyyy (GST payable account for the tax rate/area)
**Tax Exempt Tax Code**

The tax explanation code for exempt and its AAI item are as follows:

**Tax Exempt Tax Code E** When you enter an invoice, the system performs no tax calculations. You credit G/L distribution accounts and the system debits an A/R account. For example:

- Dr 1000  RCyyyy Gross (A/R for goods of 1000)
- Cr 1000  G/L distribution (goods of 1000)
Set Up Tax Rules by Company for A/R

Setting Up Tax Rules by Company for A/R

From Master Directory (G), enter 29

From General Systems Menu (G00), choose Tax Processing & Reporting

From Tax Processing & Reporting (G0021), choose Tax Rules by Company

Alternatively, you can access Tax Rules by Company by choosing A/R Tax Setup on menu G0341.

Set up your tax rules so that the Accounts Receivable system can calculate any applicable taxes when you enter an invoice. You need to set up tax rules for each company. The system uses these rules to:

- Display a warning message (or reject a transaction) whenever someone enters a tax amount that differs from the system-calculated tax
- Calculate discounts on a gross amount that already includes tax
- Calculate tax on a gross amount that includes the discount amount

When setting up tax rules by company, you can:

- Set up tolerance information for A/R
- Set up calculation rules for A/R

What You Should Know About

Updating tax amounts You must set the three processing options in the post program for invoice entry so that tax amounts are updated in the Sales/Use/VAT Tax table (F0018). If they are not set correctly, the system does not update information for this worktable.
To set up tolerance information for A/R

When you enter a tax amount that differs from the tax amount that the system calculates, you might receive a warning message. By setting up tolerance information, you control the type of message that the system issues for different tolerance ranges. Tolerance ranges apply only to VAT and GST and can be a percentage or monetary amount.

On Tax Rules by Company

1. Complete one of the following groups of fields:
   - Tolerance percentages ranges
     - Tolerance Percentage for Warning
     - Tolerance Percentage for Error
   - Tolerance amount ranges
     - Tolerance Amount for Warning
     - Tolerance Amount for Error

2. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

After you complete these steps, follow the steps to set up the calculation rules.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Tolerance Percentage for Warning | Percentage used only for A/R, A/P, and G/L processing (sales order and purchase order processing do not use it). When you enter a VAT or GST amount that differs from the system-calculated tax, the system uses this percentage to determine whether to display a warning message. Enter the percentage as a whole number. For example, enter 10% as 10. If you enter 10 in this field and there is a difference between the tax amount you entered and the system-calculated tax amount, the system handles it as follows:  
Accept  
  difference is 9.99% or less  
Warning  
  difference is 10% or more  
The default (blank) causes a warning message to display if you enter a tax that does not exactly match the system-calculated amount tax.  
NOTE: This field applies only to VAT and GST.                                                                                     |
| Tolerance Percentage for Error    | Percentage used only for A/R, A/P, and G/L processing (sales order and purchase order processing do not use it). When you enter a VAT or GST amount that differs from the system-calculated tax, the system uses the percentage to determine whether to reject the tax entry. This percentage is used in conjunction with the Tolerance Percentage for Warning field. For example, a 10% tolerance percentage for warning and a 15% tolerance percentage for error works as follows:  
Accept  
  difference is 9.99% or less  
Warning  
  difference is between 10% and 14.99%  
Reject  
  difference is 15% or more  
The default (blank) indicates that no entry is to be rejected.  
NOTE: This field applies only to VAT or GST.                                                                                                |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Tolerance Amount for Warning | Amount used only for A/R, A/P, and G/L processing (sales order and purchase order processing do not use it). When you enter a VAT or GST amount that differs from the system-calculated tax, the system uses this amount to determine whether to display a warning message. For example, if you enter .50 and there is a difference between the tax amount you entered and the system-calculated tax amount, the system handles it as follows:  
  Accept – difference is .49 or less  
  Warning – difference is .50 or more  
  The default (zero) causes a warning message to display if you enter a tax that does not exactly match the system-calculated tax.  
  NOTE: This field applies only to VAT and GST. You cannot enter both tolerance percentages and tolerance amounts. |
| Tolerance Amount for Error | Amount used only for A/R, A/P, and G/L processing (sales order and purchase order processing do not use it). When you enter a VAT or GST amount that differs from the system-calculated tax, the system uses this amount to determine whether to reject the tax entry.  
  This amount is used in conjunction with the Tolerance Amount for Warning field. For example, a .50 tolerance amount for warning and a 1.00 tolerance amount for error works as follows:  
  Accept – difference is .49 or less  
  Warning – difference is between .50 and .99  
  Reject – difference is 1.00 or more  
  The default (zero) indicates that no entry is to be rejected.  
  NOTE: This field applies only to VAT and GST. You cannot enter both tolerance amounts and tolerance percentages. |
To set up calculation rates for A/R

You can set up calculation rules to identify which method to use for calculating tax and discount amounts, when both are specified, for invoices. The rules control how the system validates the correct tax amount, based on the total amount of the invoice.

On Tax Rules by Company

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Calculate Tax on Gross (Including Discount)
   - Calculate Discount on Gross (Including Tax)

2. Do one of the following:
   - In WorldSoftware, press Enter
   - In WorldVision, click Add

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calculate Tax on Gross</td>
<td>A code that indicates whether to calculate the tax on a gross amount that includes the discount amount. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Including Disc)</td>
<td>Y  Calculate the tax amount on the gross.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N  Calculate the tax amount on the gross less the discount amount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blank  Defaults to Y.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Self-assessed taxes are not included in discount calculations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOTE:  This field does not apply to G/L processing. A/R, A/P, sales orders, and purchase orders use it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calculate Disc on Gross</td>
<td>A code that indicates whether to calculate the discount on a gross amount that already includes the tax amount. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Including Tax)</td>
<td>Y  Calculate the discount amount on the gross with tax.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N  Calculate the discount amount on the gross less the tax amount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blank  Defaults to N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Self-assessed taxes are not included in discount calculations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOTE:  This field does not apply to G/L processing. A/R, A/P, sales orders, and purchase order processing use it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Accounts Receivable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Tax on Gross Including/Excluding Discount | A code that indicates whether to calculate the tax on a gross amount that includes the discount amount. Valid codes are:  
Y  Calculate the tax amount on the gross.  
N  Calculate the tax amount on the gross less the discount amount.  
Blank  Defaults to Y.  
Self-assessed taxes are not included in discount calculations.  
NOTE: This field does not apply to G/L processing. A/R, A/P, sales orders, and purchase orders use it. |
| Discount on Gross Including Tax | A code that indicates whether to calculate the discount on a gross amount that already includes the tax amount. Valid codes are:  
Y  Calculate the discount amount on the gross with tax.  
N  Calculate the discount amount on the gross less the tax amount.  
Blank  Defaults to N.  
Self-assessed taxes are not included in discount calculations.  
NOTE: This field does not apply to G/L processing. A/R, A/P, sales orders, and purchase order processing use it.  
Form-specific information  
If you click this option, tax will be included in the gross that the system uses to calculate the discount. |

Examples: Calculation Rules

The system calculates gross and discount amounts using the tax rules that you set up. Each of the following examples uses a different combination of rules to calculate the following:

- Tax on gross with or without discounts
- Discount on gross with or without tax

The following examples use these amounts:

- Taxable: 1,000
- Tax percent: 10 percent
- Tax amount: 100
- Discount: 1 percent
Example: Calculate Tax on Gross with Discount

| Calculate Tax on Gross (Including Discounts) | Yes |
| Calculate Discount on Gross (Including Tax) | Yes |

**Discount Formula**  
(Taxable Amount + Tax Amount) x (Discount Rate Percent) = Discount Available
- (1,000 x 100) x .01 = 11.00

**Gross Formula**  
Taxable Amount + Tax = 1,000 + 100 = 1,100

Example: Calculate Tax on Gross without Discount

| Calculate Tax on Gross (Including Discount) | Yes |
| Calculate Discount on Gross (Including Tax) | No |

**Discount Formula**  
Taxable Amount x Discount Rate Percent = Discount Available
- 1,000 x .01 = 10.00

**Gross Formula**  
Taxable Amount + Tax = 1,000 + 100 = 1,100
Example: Calculate Discount on Gross with Tax

Calculate Tax on Gross (Including Discount)  No

Calculate Discount on Gross (Including Tax)  Yes

Discount Formula  
\[ \frac{[(\text{Taxable Amount} + \text{Tax Amount}) \times (\text{Discount Rate Percent})]}{(1 - \text{Discount Rate Percent})} \]
\[ = \frac{[(1,000 + 100) \times .01]}{(1 - .01)} = 11.11 \]

Gross Formula  Taxable Amount + Tax + Discount  
\[ = 1,000 + 100 + 11.11 = 1,111.11 \]

Example: Calculate Discount on Gross without Tax

Calculate Tax on Gross (Including Discount)  No

Calculate Discount on Gross (Including Tax)  No

Discount Formula  
\[ \frac{\text{Taxable Amount} \times \text{Discount Rate Percent}}{(\text{Discount Rate Percent} \times \text{Tax Rate})} \]
\[ = \frac{1,000 \times .01}{(.01 \times .10)} = 10.10 \]

Gross Formula  Taxable Amount + Tax + Discount  
\[ = 1,000 + 100 + 10.10 = 1,110.10 \]
Advanced & Technical
Accounts Receivable
Batch Invoice Processing

Objectives

- To understand batch invoice processing and its requirements
- To revise batch invoices before processing
- To process batch invoices
- To purge processed batch invoices

About Batch Invoice Processing

When you create invoices through an external source, such as a personal computer (PC) or Electronic Data Interchange (EDI), you can transfer them to the J.D. Edwards Accounts Receivable system for processing.

Batch invoice processing consists of:

- Reviewing batch invoices
- Revising batch invoices
- Processing batch invoices
- Purging processed batch invoices

What Happens When You Process Batch Invoices?

After you transfer, review, and revise batch invoices, you process them to create:

- Invoice information in the A/R ledger
- Associated G/L distribution information in the account ledger
The following graphic illustrates the batch invoice process.
Before You Begin

- Map invoice transactions from their external source into the J.D. Edwards Accounts Receivable system in the appropriate format.

What You Should Know About

Multi-Currency

Use Batch Invoice Processing to process foreign-currency invoices in the same way you enter invoices directly into the J.D. Edwards Accounts Receivable system.

See Also

- Appendix E for technical information about setting up invoices for batch input processing
Review Batch Invoices

Reviewing Batch Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced & Technical Operations (G0331), choose Batch Invoice Processing

From Batch Invoice Processing (G03311), choose Batch Invoice Review

After you transfer invoices from an external source, you might want to verify them before processing them. Alternatively, you can set a processing option to automatically display the batch invoices before you revise an existing one or enter a new one.

When reviewing batch invoices, you can:

- Review batch invoice information
- Review individual batch invoices

Batch invoice information is stored in the Invoice Transactions – Batch (F0311Z1) and Journal Entry Transactions – Batch (F0911Z1) tables.

To review batch invoice information

After you transfer invoices, you can review specific information about the batch. For example, you might want to verify the number of invoices in a batch for a specific date.

On Batch Invoice Review
1. Display all batch invoices entered by all users or complete the following fields to display specific invoices:
   - User ID
   - Batch Number

2. To further limit the invoices displayed, complete one or more of the following fields:
   - Processed
   - From Date
   - Thru Date
   - Transaction Number
   - Address Number

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>The source of the transaction. This can be a user ID, a workstation, the address of an external system, a node on a network, and so on. This field helps identify both the transaction and its point of origin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batch Number</td>
<td>The number that the transmitter assigns to the batch. During batch processing, the system assigns a new batch number to the J.D. Edwards transactions for each control (user) batch number it finds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Processed (0/1) | An indicator to mark records as successfully processed through the batch processing system. After a record has been marked as processed, it can no longer be updated through the batch processing program. Valid values are:  
|               | 0 Unprocessed only  
|               | 1 Processed and unprocessed                                                                                                                     |
| From Date     | The beginning date in the date range. This is the date from which you want the system to display information.                                      |
|               | Form-specific information                                                                                                                        |
|               | Enter the beginning date of the batches you want to review. This is the date that the transactions were entered into the batch input table, regardless of the original source or the method of transfer. |
| Transaction Number | This is the number that an Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) transmitter assigns to a transaction. In a non-EDI environment, you can assign any number that is meaningful to you to identify a transaction within a batch. It can be the same as a J.D. Edwards document number. |
| Thru Date     | The ending date in the date range. This is the date through which you want the system to display information. If you leave this field blank, the system uses the current period. |
To review individual batch invoices

When reviewing information about your batch invoices, you might want to verify the G/L distribution or pay item detail associated with a specific invoice. To do so, review the individual batch invoice.

On Batch Invoice Review

1. Locate the necessary batch invoice information.
2. Choose the Transaction Detail option next to the appropriate invoice to access Batch Invoice Entry.

![Batch Invoice Entry screenshot]
Processing Options for A/R Batch File Revisions

BATCH FILE REVIEW:
1. Enter a ‘1’ to view the Batch Review screen prior to working with the Batch Invoice Entry. A default of blank will take you directly to the Entry screen.
2. Enter a ‘1’ to display the EDI (Electronic Data Interchange) fields on the Batch Review screen.

A/R MAINTENANCE

FIELD DISPLAY CONTROL:
3. You may suppress certain capabilities of the program by placing a ‘1’ next to the following:
   - Sales/Use/VAT Tax Processing....
   - PO Number Entry.....
   - Extra Date for Service/Tax....

OUT-OF-BALANCE:
4. Enter a ‘1’ to bypass the out-of-balance edits between the invoice and the journal entries.
Revise Batch Invoices

Revising Batch Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced & Technical Operations (G0331), choose Batch Invoice Processing

From Batch Invoice Processing (G03311), choose Batch Invoice Revisions

After you transfer invoices from another source to the J.D. Edwards Accounts Receivable system, you might need to correct or delete some of them. You revise a batch invoice by manually entering a new one or by changing or deleting an existing one. You should do this before you process batch invoices.

When revising batch invoices, you can:

- Add invoices to batches
- Revise unprocessed batch invoices

When you revise a batch invoice, you update information in the Invoice Transactions – Batch (F0311Z1) and Journal Entry Transactions – Batch (F0911Z1) tables.

What You Should Know About

Multi-Currency

You can enter a batch invoice in foreign currency, domestic currency, or both.

When you leave the mode blank (domestic), the system uses ledger type AA and calculates amounts in domestic currency.

When you use 3 as the mode, you can enter both the domestic and foreign amounts without either amount being recalculated.

When you enter a currency code different from the domestic currency, the system uses ledger type CA and calculates domestic amounts (ledger type AA).
Pre-assigning document and batch numbers
The system uses next numbers to automatically assign document and batch numbers during final processing. J.D. Edwards recommends that you use next numbers so that the system does not create duplicate documents. You can, however, manually assign the document number to facilitate a smooth transition between two systems.

When you add an invoice to a batch, you supply limited information and the system supplies the remaining data. The transaction information you enter creates invoices in the batch A/R ledger and the batch account ledger. Invoices remain in the Invoice Transaction – Batch table until you process and purge them.

To add an invoice to a batch

Typically, you should not need to add an invoice to a batch. An exception, however, is if you experience difficulty processing transactions from an interfaced system. To detect and correct the discrepancies, compare the invoice that you manually enter to the invoice that the external system creates.

On Batch Invoice Revisions
3. To uniquely identify a batch, complete the following key fields:
   - User ID
   - User Batch
   - Transaction Number

   The system identifies any transactions with this combination of data as one transaction.

4. Complete the following fields for the first invoice in the batch:
   - Customer Number
   - Invoice
   - Type
   - Company
   - Invoice Date
   - G/L Date
   - Company
   - Gross Amount

5. In WorldVision, choose the Additional Information tab.

6. Complete the following optional fields and press Enter:
   - Pay item
   - Gross Amount
   - Discount Available
Accounts Receivable

- Remark
- Due Date
- Pay Status

7. Locate the batch.
8. Position your cursor on a pay item line and choose the Full Detail function to access A/R Batch Detail.

9. On A/R Batch Detail, choose the Display/Update Mode Toggle function to change to update mode.
10. Complete the necessary invoice information.

   Invoice detail varies, depending on how you map information to your J.D. Edwards Accounts Receivable system.

11. Choose the Return function.
12. On Batch Invoice Entry, complete the following fields to enter G/L distribution information:
   - Account Number
   - Amount
   - Explanation

13. Position your cursor on a G/L distribution line and choose the Full Detail function to access Journal Entry Batch Detail.
14. On Journal Entry Batch Detail, choose the Display/Update Mode Toggle function to change to update mode.

15. Complete the necessary journal entry detail information.

   Journal entry detail varies, depending on how you map information to your J.D. Edwards Accounts Receivable system.

   • Invoice type
   • Invoice number
   • Document company

▶ To revise unprocessed batch invoices

When you find an error in an unprocessed batch invoice, change or delete it. To revise transaction information for a batch invoice, you must include the following:

   • Company

On Batch Invoice Entry

   In the batch control information, do one of the following:

   • Make the changes to the unprocessed invoice
   • Delete the unprocessed invoice
See Also

- *Revising Unposted Invoices (P03105)* for more information about changing or deleting unposted/unprocessed invoices

**Processing Options for A/R Batch File Revisions**

**BATCH FILE REVIEW:**
1. Enter a ‘1’ to view the Batch Review screen prior to working with the Batch Invoice Entry. A default of blank will take you directly to the Entry screen.

2. Enter a ‘1’ to display the EDI (Electronic Data Interchange) fields on the Batch Review screen.

**A/R MAINTENANCE**

**FIELD DISPLAY CONTROL:**
3. You may suppress certain capabilities of the program by placing a ‘1’ next to the following:
   - Sales/Use/VAT Tax Processing. . .
   - PO Number Entry . . . . . . .
   - Extra Date for Service/Tax. . .

**OUT-OF-BALANCE:**
4. Enter a ‘1’ to bypass the out-of-balance edits between the invoice and the journal entries.
Process Batch Invoices

Processing Batch Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced & Technical Operations (G0331), choose Batch Invoice Processing

From Batch Invoice Processing (G03311), choose Batch Invoice Processing

After you review and revise your batch invoices, you must process them to create invoices in the A/R ledger.

Processing batch invoices consists of:

- Submitting invoices for processing
- Verifying batch invoice information
- Revising batch invoices
- Posting batch invoices

Submitting Invoices for Processing

When you are ready to process your batch invoices, run Batch Invoice Processing. The system processes batch invoices in proof or final mode.

**Proof mode**

In proof mode, the system:

- Verifies the data
- Produces a report, if errors exist
Accounts Receivable

**Final mode**

In final mode, the system:

- Creates J.D. Edwards invoices in the A/R Ledger table and associated journal entries in the Account Ledger table (F0911)
- Assigns document and batch numbers
- Supplies information that you leave blank
- Verifies invoice entries for errors
- Produces an exceptions report, if errors exist

Alternatively, you can use processing options to automatically perform the following in final mode:

- Post invoices to the A/R ledger
- Post journal entries to the general ledger
- Purge posted and processed invoices from the Invoice Transactions – Batch (F0311Z1) and Journal Entry Transactions – Batch (F0911Z1) tables

**Processing Options for A/R Batch File Processing**

**PROOF OR FINAL MODE**

1. Enter a ‘1’ to process the batch information in Final mode. If left blank, the batch processing will be performed in Proof mode and no file updates will occur.

**PROCESS OUT-OF-BALANCE**

2. Enter a ‘1’ to allow A/R invoice processing if G/L records in F0911Z1 are out-of-balance. (A/R amounts do not offset the G/L amounts). If left blank, the transaction will not be processed if the amounts are out-of-balance.

**BYPASS TAX DEFAULTS:**

3. Enter a ‘1’ to bypass the defaulting of tax area and explanation codes. If left blank, the tax fields will be defaulted from Address Book and the Business Unit Master files.

**AUTOMATIC PURGE**

4. Enter a ‘1’ to automatically purge processed transactions from the batch file. If left blank, transactions will be flagged as processed and will remain in the file.

**AUTOMATIC POST**

5. Enter a ‘1’ to automatically submit the post after processing/creating invoice transactions. This option
is effective if only one batch is created by the processing program. If left blank, the post is not submitted.

ERROR FILE
6. Enter a '1' to write error messages out to the PC Batch Entry Error file (F0040). If left blank, no records will be written to the file.

SUPPRESS WARNINGS
7. Enter a '1' to suppress the printing of warnings on the error report and in the PC Batch Entry Error file. If left blank, warnings will print on the error report and be placed into the error file.

DW VERSION FOR A/R INVOICE PROCESSOR
8. To override standard A/R Invoice processing (DREAM Writer XT0311Z1, version ZJDE0001), enter an override version number. This should only be changed by persons responsible for system wide setup.

DW VERSION FOR JOURNAL ENTRY PROCESSOR
9. To override standard Journal Entry processing (DREAM Writer XT0911Z1, version ZJDE0001), enter an override version number. This should only be be changed by persons responsible for system wide setup.
Verifying Batch Invoice Information

When the system cannot process a batch invoice, it lists the invoice on an exceptions report. Use this report to verify your batch invoice information.

The system produces this report in proof mode, prior to final processing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Batch Number</th>
<th>Transaction Number</th>
<th>Line Number</th>
<th>Tran Set</th>
<th>Customer T C R</th>
<th>Error Description</th>
<th>Error Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>001102</td>
<td>3325</td>
<td>1.000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2344 Batch File Action Invalid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the above example, the invalid batch file action shows that the transaction code has changed to C. This code should always be A.

What You Should Know About

The following abbreviated column headings are used:

- **TT (EDI Transaction Type)** Identifies the type of transaction:
  - V  Voucher
  - D  Debit memo
  - I  Invoice
  - J  Journal Entry

- **TC (EDI Transaction Code)** Identifies how the system should process a transaction during final processing:
  - A  Add new transaction
  - D  Delete an unprocessed transaction
  - C  Change an unprocessed transaction
**Process Batch Invoices**

**PR (EDI Successfully Processed)**
Indicates if a record has successfully processed:
- 0 Unprocessed record
- 1 Processed record

**Revising Batch Invoices**

If you find an error in a batch invoice, correct it before final processing. If the source of the invoice is not a J.D. Edwards system, you should purge the records before you transmit the corrected invoice. This prevents duplicate records.

**To revise batch invoices**

1. Do one of the following:
   - Change the invoice at its source and retransmit the batch to the J.D. Edwards Accounts Receivable system
   - Update the individual batch record on Batch Invoice Revisions
2. Resubmit your batch invoices for processing.

Before you transmit records the second time, purge the Invoice Transactions – Batch (F0311Z1) and the Journal Entry Transactions Batch (F0911Z1) tables to prevent duplicate records.

**What You Should Know About**

**Revising processed batch invoices**
Use standard invoice entry to revise or delete an invoice that was processed in final mode or an invoice for a different accounting period.

**See Also**

- *Revising Posted Invoices (P03105)* for information about revising posted and processed invoices
**Posting Batch Invoices**

After processing your batch invoices, post them to the general ledger.

To post batch invoices

Do one of the following:

- Submit the post using Post Invoices to G/L.
- Set the appropriate processing options for the Batch Invoice Processing program to automatically post your invoices after processing.
Purge Processed Batch Invoices

Purging Processed Batch Invoices

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced & Technical Operations (G0331), choose Batch Invoice Processing

From Batch Invoice Processing (G03311), choose Processed Batch Invoice Purge

To remove your batch invoices from the batch table, purge them. Purge batch invoices after you review, process, and post them. You can choose to automatically purge them after processing or do it later as a separate task. If you purge them later, the invoices remain in the system as processed until you globally purge them.

When you purge batch invoices, the system removes all processed invoices from the following tables, regardless of the batch they are in:

- Invoice Transactions – Batch (F0311Z1)
- Journal Entry Transactions – Batch (F0911Z1)

Purging only removes batch invoices and does not affect A/R ledger invoices.

What You Should Know About

Technical considerations

If you use OPNQRYF (Open Query File command) instead of the logical file build to select the records to purge, you must also complete the following:

- Additional parameters
- At least one data sequencing field

If you use the logical file build instead of OPNQRYF, the system reorganizes both the logical file and the purged file. This might increase the time it takes to run the reorganization.
Processing Options for Generic Purge Program

SAVE PURGED RECORDS:
1. Enter a ‘1’ to save the purged records to a special purge library. (Default of blanks will NOT save any purged records.)

REORGANIZE FILE:
2. Enter a ‘1’ to reorganize the purged file. (Default of blanks will NOT reorganize the file.)
A/R Cash Forecasting

Objectives

- To summarize open invoices for cash forecasting purposes

About A/R Cash Forecasting

As part of your cash forecasting activities, you might want to review a summary of your open invoices.

When you run A/R cash forecasting, the system:

1. Consolidates open invoices from the A/R Ledger table (F0311)
2. Summarizes information by business unit, company, due date, and currency
3. Deletes existing records in the Cash Summarization table (F0032) with the cash type you specify in a processing option
4. Updates the Cash Summarization table with the new information
The following graphic illustrates the cash forecasting process.
Forecast A/R Cash Flow

Forecasting A/R Cash Flow

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced and Technical Operations (G0331), choose A/R Cash Forecasting

To receive an accurate picture of your current cash position, forecast your A/R cash flow.

When you run A/R Cash Forecasting, the system creates the Cash Summarization table (F0032) that contains the following:

- Total of all open invoices
- Due dates of open invoices
- Receipt amount required from customer

What You Should Know About

Viewing the results of A/R cash forecasting

You can use World Writer to view the information created when you run A/R Cash Forecasting. The information can also be downloaded to a standard spreadsheet program or used by custom programs for cash analysis.

Multi-Currency

When using multiple currencies, invoices are summarized by both the domestic and foreign currencies. In the Cash Summarization table, the domestic currency code appears in the Currency Code field. The foreign currency code appears in the To Currency Code field. When you process domestic invoices, the foreign amount and currency code are the same as the domestic amount and currency code.
Processing Options for A/R Cash Forecasting

CASH FORECASTING 'BASED ON' DATE:
1. Enter a '1' to build the A/R portion of the Cash Forecasting file based on the Discount Due Date in the F0311 file. If left blank, the Net Due Date will be used.

CASH TYPE:
2. Enter the cash type to designate an A/R record in the Cash Forecasting file. If left blank, '03' will be used as the cash type.

REVERSE AMOUNT SIGNS:
3. Enter a '1' to reverse the positive and negative signs of the amounts. If left blank, the signs for the amounts in the F0032 file will appear as they would in the F0311 file.

What You Should Know About Processing Options

Cash type (2)

The Cash Summarization table (F0032) contains summary information from A/R, A/P, and G/L. The cash type designates the system in which the information originated. A cash type is alphanumeric and can be up to five characters. J.D. Edwards recommends that you use the same cash type each time you run the program. If you run the program again with a different cash type, two sets of A/R information will exist in the Cash Summarization table.
ABC Customer Analysis

Objectives

- To analyze a customer's sales activity

About ABC Customer Analysis

When analyzing your customer accounts, you might want to analyze a customer's activity based on relative sales, the percentage of profit margin, and the average number of days to pay an invoice.
Review Customer Activity

Reviewing Customer Activity

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced and Technical Operations (G0331), choose ABC Customer Analysis

If you use the J.D. Edwards Sales Order Management system in conjunction with the Accounts Receivable system, you might need to analyze a customer's sales activity. To do so, run ABC Customer Analysis.

ABC Customer Analysis generates information so you can analyze a customer's activity in one of two ways:

- The 80/20 principle. A listing of 20% of your customers who provide 80% of your total sales.
- A listing of your customers ranked by sales percentages.

You can run ABC Customer Analysis in proof or final mode. If you choose proof mode, the system lists the rankings of your customers. In final mode, the system prints a report and updates the ABC codes in the Customer Master table (F0301). The system only updates customers to whom you have sent an invoice this year.

Before You Begin

- Run Recalculate Average Days Late to ensure correct figures for average days-to-pay
- Set values in the data dictionary to either the 80/20 principle or the top percentage ranking for your customers
- Specify the appropriate values in the ABC (Sales/Margin/Profit) field on Customer Master Information

The following is an example of customer rankings listed in proof mode.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Sales</th>
<th>Margin</th>
<th>% Sales</th>
<th>Margin Days</th>
<th>A/B/C</th>
<th>Rank</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4221</td>
<td>Salisbury Lace</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31313</td>
<td>Cantrell Sea &amp; Ski</td>
<td>9,009</td>
<td>9,009</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5768</td>
<td>London Development Group</td>
<td>8,766</td>
<td>8,766</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3001</td>
<td>Centum Incorporated</td>
<td>7,684</td>
<td>7,684</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7002</td>
<td>JDE France</td>
<td>5,999</td>
<td>5,999</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5717</td>
<td>Famous Fred's Marine Supply</td>
<td>5,005</td>
<td>5,005</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2313</td>
<td>Baker Manufacturing, Ltd</td>
<td>3,752</td>
<td>3,752</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4006</td>
<td>A&amp;B Electric Motor Service</td>
<td>2,550</td>
<td>2,550</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5709</td>
<td>Erickson Electric</td>
<td>2,500</td>
<td>2,500</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4001</td>
<td>Ready Mix Co</td>
<td>2,200</td>
<td>2,200</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5688</td>
<td>Dynamic Distribution Co.</td>
<td>1,510</td>
<td>1,510</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5354</td>
<td>Cady, John</td>
<td>1,500</td>
<td>1,500</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5725</td>
<td>General American</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What Does the System Calculate?

When you run ABC Customer Analysis, the system calculates three ABC categories based on percentages you set up in the data dictionary.

Sales (ABC code 1) You set up percentiles in the data dictionary for field names A1A, A2A, and A3A. The system categorizes each customer by the percentile in which its total sales falls.

If you set the first percentile at 90, all of your customers whose aggregate sales make up the first 10% of your sales are rated A. If you set the second percentile at 80, all of the customers whose sales do not fall within the first 10% of your total sales, but do fall within the first 20%, are rated B, and so on.
**Profit Margin**  
*(ABC code 2)*  
You set up percentage categories in the data dictionary for field names A1B, A2B, and A3B. The system assigns an ABC rating for profit margin in the same manner that it assigns the rating for sales. That is, the amount of profit margin for a customer divided by the total profit margin on the report equals the customer’s percent of total profit margin.

Profit margin is sales less the cost of goods sold (COGS). Sales order management provides the COGS figure needed to calculate profit margin.

If you do not use the Sales Order Management system, or have a custom sales order interface, the system will calculate 100% profit margin, giving all of your customers an A rating for profit margin.

**Average Days to Pay**  
*(ABC Code 3)*  
You set up categories in the data dictionary for field names A1C, A2C, and A3C. The system does not perform a percentage calculation (as it does for sales and profit margin), but performs a direct comparison. For example:

- A1C = 30 (0 – 30 days)/A rating
- A2C = 60 (31 – 60 days)/B rating
- A3C = 90 (61 – 90 days)/C rating
- 91 or more days/D rating

The average number of days for company xxxxx to pay its invoices is 22. This is in the A1C range. The system assigns an A rating to company xxxxx for ABC code 3 in the Address Book Master table (F0101).

---

### Processing Options for ABC Account Analysis

**ADDRESS BOOK UPDATE:**
1. Enter a ’1’ to update the ABC codes in the Customer Master File, (final mode). If left blank, the Customer Master file ABC codes will not be updated, (proof mode).

**CURRENCY CONVERSION:**
2. Enter the currency code into which all currencies should be converted. If left blank, no currency conversion will take place.
Technical Processes

Objectives

- To update address book records
- To update customer totals at the end of the year
- To summarize open items and create a balance forward amount
- To purge closed and posted A/R records

About Technical Processes

Periodically, you should update or purge A/R information to create more disk space.

Technical processes consist of:

- Updating A/R from the address book
- Working with YTD invoice amounts
- Updating balance forward records
- Purging A/R information
Update A/R from the Address Book

Updating A/R from the Address Book

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced and Technical Operations (G0331), choose Update A/R from Address Book

If you change selected address book information for a customer, such as the number of the parent company, you must update the A/R ledger. To do so, run Update A/R from Address Book.

Each transaction in the A/R ledger includes:

- Customer alpha name
- Customer alternate payer address number
- Parent company address number
- Address book category codes (1–10)

Additionally, you run this program before you print statements or run Credit Analysis Refresh. If you change the parent number and do not run Update A/R from Address Book, your A/R statements might not be correct. In addition, the system might create duplicate credit/cash records for each of the different parent numbers.

Depending on the size of your A/R Ledger table (F0311), run Update A/R from Address Book after work hours. Run Update A/R from Address Book frequently to ensure that the A/R Ledger contains up-to-date information.

Example: Updating A/R from the Address Book

The following example illustrates the problems you might encounter if you change parent numbers and do not run Update A/R from Address Book.

On June 1, your company, Model Company, sends invoice 4455 to A&B Electric Motor Service (A&B) for 150.00. A&B, customer number 4006, is an individually owned company not associated with any parent or child company.
**Accounts Receivable**

### Invoice 4445

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>06/13/98</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>145000</td>
<td>06/17/98</td>
<td>150.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Invoice 5683**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Due Date</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>07/15/98</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>317000</td>
<td>08/01/98</td>
<td>250.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- On June 10, you assign A&B Electric Motor Service the parent address of 5709, Erickson Electric.
- On June 15, Model Company sends invoice 5683 to A&B Electric Motor Service.

If you do not run Update A/R from Address Book before you process statements, and you process them by parent company, two invoices for A&B will appear on two separate statements.
Processing Options for Update A/R from Address Book

FIELD UPDATES:
1. Enter a ‘1’ to UPDATE the Alternate Payers in your A/R Ledger (F0311) with Address Book values. If left blank, this field will not be updated.

2. Enter a ‘1’ to PROTECT Alpha Names of customers in your A/R Ledger from being updated with Address Book values. If left blank, this field will be updated.
Work with YTD Invoice Amounts

Working with YTD Invoice Amounts

As part of your cash management procedures, you might want to see the total invoiced amount for a customer. To see accurate totals, update the customer's year-to-date (YTD) invoice amounts. Generally, you do this either monthly or at the end of a calendar or fiscal year as part of your annual close.

Working with YTD invoice amounts consists of:

- Updating customer YTD invoice amounts
- Reworking customer YTD invoice amounts
- Reviewing customer YTD invoice amounts

Updating Customer YTD Invoice Amounts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced and Technical Operations (G0331), choose Update YTD Invoice Amount

When you update year-to-date (YTD) invoice amounts, the system does the following for all customers across all companies based on the beginning and ending date you specify:

- Calculates total invoice amounts from the A/R Ledger table (F0311)
- Updates the following in the Customer Master table (F0301):
  - Year-to-date invoice amounts
  - Prior year-end invoice amounts
  - Year-to-date finance charges

Before You Begin

- Enter all invoices for all companies for the period or fiscal year
- Set up the necessary security
What You Should Know About

Multi-Currency
If you use multiple currencies, you must enter an amount currency for each customer.

Purging A/R records
If you purge your A/R records more than once a year, update your customer YTD invoice amounts prior to purging the first time that year. You should not update a customer's YTD amounts more than once a year or you could lose data.

Processing Options for Update YTD Invoice Amount

DATE OPTIONS:
1. Enter a "From" date to be used as the beginning period for the close.
2. Enter a "Thru" date to be used as the ending period for the close.

UPDATE CONTROL:
3. Enter a '1' to update Customer Master balances in Final Mode. If left blank, Customer Master balances will not be updated (Proof Mode).
   NOTE: A run in proof mode is highly recommended if using computation method 2.

COMPUTATION METHOD:
4. Enter a '1' to compute prior invoiced using the "From" and "Thru" dates. This method assumes no F0311 records have been purged since "From" date.
   Enter a '2' to compute prior invoiced as the existing YTD invoiced less the computed YTD invoiced, using the "Thru" date only.
   (NOTE: This method CANNOT be executed more than once without erroneous results. See HELPS for further clarification.)

AMOUNT CURRENCY UPDATE:
5. For COMPUTATION METHOD '1' only, Final Mode only. Enter a currency here to be updated to the Amount Currency in the Customer Master file. If left blank, the Amount Currency will not be updated.
   CAUTION: All of the records within your DREAM Writer Data Selection will be updated.
Work with YTD Invoice Amounts

What You Should Know About Processing Options

Computation method (4)

You can use a value of 1 to allow repeated runs if you have a full year of A/R transactions. The system calculates the amount in the A/R tables, moves this value to the Prior Year End field, and sets the YTD field to zero.

You can only use a value of 2 once a year. This value assumes that you do not have a full year of A/R transactions. If you run this program twice with a value of 2, you will lose Prior Year End amounts.
### Reworking Customer YTD Invoiced Amounts

If the system cannot update a customer's balances, it lists the customer on the A/R Annual Close report.

After you run the version of A/R Annual Close, run the Rework A/R Annual Close version. Use data selection to select only those customers not updated.

The following is an example of the A/R Annual Close report. Use this report to review any errors in the customer's balances.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Alpha</th>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Document</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>150 DIA Property Management Co</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>847 FE 001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150 DIA Property Management Co</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>8244 RI 001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150 DIA Property Management Co</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>8244 RI 002</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150 DIA Property Management Co</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>8245 RI 001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150 DIA Property Management Co</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>8245 RI 002</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1063 Modesto Warehouse #10</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 016</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1064 Valley Forge (#20)</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 015</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2250 Office Warehouse, Inc</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 014</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4167 Anne Crocker</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 013</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4183 Ball Hi</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 012</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4212 Victorian Secrets</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 011</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4221 Salisbury Lace</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 010</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4247 StageCoach Fashions</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 009</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4252 Budget Office Supply-USA</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 008</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5070 Denver City &amp; County</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 007</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5070 Denver City &amp; County</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 006</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5070 Denver City &amp; County</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 005</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5070 Denver City &amp; County</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 004</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5070 Denver City &amp; County</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 003</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5070 Denver City &amp; County</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 002</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5070 Denver City &amp; County</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5070 Denver City &amp; County</td>
<td>3846 Currency Exchange Rate Not Found</td>
<td>Blank CRCA in F0301</td>
<td>RI 000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Reviewing Customer YTD Invoice Amounts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), choose Customer and Invoice Entry

From Customer and Invoice Entry (G0311), choose Customer Master Information

After you update customer YTD invoice amounts, you might want to review the updated balances online.

Before You Begin

Run Update YTD Invoice Amounts to update customer records with year-to-date and prior year-end amounts

To review customer YTD invoice amounts

On Customer Master Information

1. Access Name Search from the following field:
   - Customer Number

2. Complete the following field (or portion thereof):
   - Alpha Name

3. Specify 2 in the following field next to the customer to access Customer Information:
   - Option

4. On Customer Information, roll down to view the necessary year-to-date information.

You should run this program after work hours. You might want to set up security so that only authorized personnel can run it.
Exercises
See the exercises for this chapter.
Update Balance Forward Records

Updating Balance Forward Records

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced and Technical Operations (G0331), choose Update Balance Forward

You update balance forward records to:

- Summarize the open items in the A/R Ledger table (F0311) as of a specific date
- Create a balance forward amount for a customer

When you run Update Balance Forward each period, the system creates a separate balance forward record for the following:

- Customer
- Company
- G/L bank account
- Currency code

If you update your balance forward records before processing your A/R statements, the system summarizes invoices from the previous period. Therefore, only the current period’s activity is shown in detail and all previous periods’ activity is shown as a single balance forward amount.

Every time you update the records, the system creates a new balance forward record that overwrites the existing record for the previous period.

Post all invoices before you run the Update Balance Forward program to ensure the system updates only one balance forward per period. Otherwise, when you rerun this program (for the same period), a new balance forward record is created for that period, rather than the existing balance forward record you are “adding to.”
Example: Creating Balance Forward Records

The following example shows information for customer 1001 before updating balance forward records:

**Document R1401**
- F0311 amount: 500
- Invoice date: June 12
- Pay status before balance forward: A (approved)
- Pay status after balance forward: S (balance forward summarized)

**Document R1443**
- F0311 amount: 200
- Invoice date: June 15
- Pay status before balance forward: A (approved)
- Pay status after balance forward: S (balance forward summarized)

**Document RR517**
- F0311 amount: 400
- Invoice date: June 17
- Pay status before balance forward: A (approved)
- Pay status after balance forward: S (balance forward summarized)

**Document R1521**
- F0311 amount: 100
- Invoice date: June 19
- Pay status before balance forward: A (approved)
- Pay status after balance forward: S (balance forward summarized)

The following example shows information for customer 1001 after updating balance forward records:

**Document RW589**
- F0311 amount: 1,200
- Invoice date: June 30 (G/L date)
- Pay status after balance forward: A

After you run Update Balance Forward, there is one summarized invoice (RW) in the A/R Ledger table. When you enter a receipt, you must apply it to the RW document, not to the individual invoices. You cannot make adjustments to a summarized invoice, for example, 1401, because the system considers it paid and posted.
Before You Begin

☐ Activate balance forward on Customer Master Information.

☐ Post all invoices for the period to ensure that the system updates only one balance forward record per period. Otherwise, when you rerun this program (for the same period), the system creates a new balance forward record for that period rather than the existing record you are adding to.

What You Should Know About

**Multi-Currency**
If your customer uses multiple currencies, the system calculates the currency exchange rate for the balance forward record by:

- Domestic and foreign amounts it writes to the record
- Conversion method specified on General Accounting Constants.

**Viewing balance forward records**
You can view the summarized invoices that are included in the balance forward record on Standard Invoice Entry and Customer Ledger Inquiry. The open amount of each invoice is 0 (zero).

To view the invoice detail, activate the Paid field on Customer Ledger Inquiry. For parent companies that have invoices associated with several children, the system creates a separate balance forward record for each child.

**Determining the “as of” date and due date**
The system uses the invoice date for the “as of” date as the cutoff for invoices that are included in the balance forward record.

The system uses the payment terms for the customer to calculate the due date for the balance forward amount.

Processing Options for Balance Forward Update (A/R Statements)

**A/R Constants:**
1. Enter a ‘1’ to retrieve the ‘As Of’ Date and Comparison Date from A/R Constants. A default of blank will use the processing option values.

**As Of Date:**
2. Enter the ‘As Of’ Statement date to be used to summarize Invoices. Invoices dated prior to and including this date will be summarized. If left blank, the current date is used as the default.
Comparison Date:
3. Specify one of the following dates to compare from:
   D = Due Date
   I = Invoice Date
   G = General Ledger Date
   S = Statement Date
Purge A/R Information

Purging A/R Information

To reduce the size of your A/R tables and conserve system disk space, purge your A/R information periodically.

Purging A/R information consists of:

- Purging closed A/R records
- Purging batch receipts

Purging Closed A/R Records

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced and Technical Operations (G0331), choose Purge Closed A/R Records

To reduce the amount of records in your A/R ledger, purge your closed A/R records. Purging closed A/R records:

- Removes the closed records from the A/R Ledger table (F0311) if:
  - The G/L date of the transaction is on or before the “as of” date set in the processing options.
  - The open amount is zero.
- Copies purged records to the Purge – A/R Ledger table (F0311P)

For reporting purposes, you can keep the purge table on your system or copy it to another medium, such as a diskette or tape. If you keep it on your system and you purge again, the system adds newly purged records to the existing table.

After you purge closed A/R records, contact your system administrator to reorganize the files. This reorderes the remaining records, maximizes system disk space, and speeds system processing.

When you run this program ensure that you type the correct purge date before you press Enter. If you accidentally submit a purge for processing, put the job on hold and contact your system administrator.
**Before You Begin**

- Coordinate when you run the purge programs for all the systems that you use.
- Back up the A/R Ledger table.

**What You Should Know About**

**Purging associated journal entries**
When you purge A/R records, the system does not purge associated journal entries. Contact your system administrator to develop a program to purge the Account Ledger table (F0911).

**Purging batch header records**
To purge batch header records from the Batch Control table (F0011), run the Batch to Detail & Out of Balance integrity report.


**Removing tables of purged records**
To remove the tables of purged records from your system, use IBM AS/400 commands to copy the tables to another medium and then delete them from your system.

**Processing Options for Purge Closed A/R Records**

Enter G/L Purge ‘As Of’ Date. ____________

**Data Selection and Sequence for Purge Closed A/R Records**

To prevent the system from purging recurring invoices, set the Number of Payments field to equal (EQ) Zero.

To avoid unpredictable results while purging, do not change the following data sequence:

1. Document Company
2. Document Number
3. Document Type
Purging Batch Receipts

From Accounts Receivable (G03), enter 27

From A/R Advanced and Technical Operations (G0331), choose Purge Batch Cash Receipts

To remove posted records from your A/R system, purge batch receipts.

Purging batch receipts removes posted receipts from the Batch A/R Receipt Application table (F0312). You can copy the purged records to a purge table and then move the purge table to a diskette or tape and delete it from your hard drive. This lets you regain disk space and still access the purged records, if necessary.

Before You Begin

☐ Back up the A/R Ledger and Batch A/R Receipt Application tables

Processing Options for Purge Batch Receipts

SAVE PURGED RECORDS:
1. Enter a ‘1’ to save the purged records to a special purge library. (Default of blanks will NOT save any purged records.)

REORGANIZE FILE:
2. Enter a ’1’ to reorganize the purged file. (Default of blanks will NOT reorganize the file.)
Appendix A - Data Models

The flowchart on the following page illustrates the relationships between the main physical tables in the Accounts Receivable system. In order to present the information in an uncluttered format, the control tables, worktables, and tables for seldom-used features have been omitted.

The flowchart flows left to right and top to bottom. Control tables are on the left, master tables toward the center, and transaction tables on the right.
Table Relationships
1 = 1 record
M = many records
Appendix B - Test Yourself Answers

Entering Customers

1. Address Book Addition
2. Set the Hold Invoices field to Y
3. Parent
4. F0301

Working with Standard Invoices

1. RI
2. Any two of the following: document number, document type, document company, or G/L date
3. Invoice pay items = F0311, Journal entries = F0911
4. False

Entering Speed Invoices

1. False
2. b and d

Posting Invoices

1. False
2. True
3. AE
4. F0311, F0011, F0902
Working with Customer Ledger Information

1. Any of the following: a, 2, 3, P, or Y
2. Access Additional Selections and specify an amount range
3. False
4. Invoice pay items = F0311, Journal entries = F0911

Working with Recurring Invoices

1. RR
2. True
3. b, c, d

Updating Invoices for Payment

1. b
2. True
3. b

Working with Invoice Match Receipts

1. False (you use Receipts Entry – Heads Up or Heads Down)
2. b
3. True
4. d

Working with Other Types of Receipts

1. a
2. b
3. c
4. a
5. b
6. False
Working with Batch Receipts

1. a (A/R Ledger table) c (Batch A/R Cash Application table)
2. F0312
3. d

Managing Collections Information

1. True
2. Credit Manager = c
   
   Collection Manager = b

   Credit Analysis Refresh = d

   Promise Entry = a
3. a

Printing a Statement

1. c
2. False
3. True
4. a

Working with Collection and Reminder Information

1. c
2. True
3. False
## Appendix C - Quick Reference Codes for A/R

### A/R Codes

#### Menus
- G03  Accounts Receivable
- G0311  Customer & Invoice Entry
- G0312  Manual Receipts Processing
- G0313  Automatic Receipts Processing
- G0314  Accounts Receivable Reports
- G0315  Credit & Collection Management
- G0321  Periodic Processes
- G0322  Statement & Reminder Processing
- G0331  Advanced & Technical Operations
- G0341  Accounts Receivable Setup

#### Payment Status Code
- A  Approved for payment
- P  Paid in full
- H  Held/pending approval
- R  Retainage
- D  Draft accepted

### Payment Terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Blank</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Net 30</td>
<td>1/10, net 30</td>
<td>Split payment (50/50)</td>
<td>Due on the 10th of the next month</td>
<td>Due upon receipt</td>
<td>Due 1st of next month</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Document Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Documents</th>
<th>Matching Documents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RI  Invoice</td>
<td>RC  Receipt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR  Recurring invoice</td>
<td>RA  Adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RB  Chargeback invoice</td>
<td>RO  Void receipt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RM  Credit memo</td>
<td>RV  Non-sufficient funds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RU  Unapplied receipt</td>
<td>RQ  Chargeback amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RS  Spread of unapplied receipt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RG  Receivables gain/loss</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix D — Currency Codes and Decimals

Multi-Currency Option “Off”

If the multi-currency option is not activated, the decimals associated with specific amount fields are determined by the Display Decimals defined in the data dictionary by your System Administrator.

Multi-Currency Option “On”

“Units” Ledgers

Decimals for unit ledger types, such as BU and AU, are determined by the Display Decimals in the data dictionary.

“Amounts” Ledgers

Decimals for amounts other than units are determined as follows:

- Any transaction entered with a currency different from the currency assigned to the company of the account being used is considered “foreign.”
- The decimal position is determined by the transaction’s currency code.
- The number of decimals for a currency is defined in the Currency Codes table (F0013).

All ledger types other than CA or any units ledger type, as mentioned above, are considered “domestic” ledgers. The currency’s decimal position is determined by the currency code assigned to the company of the account used. This allows multiple companies in the same environment to have different currencies in the AA ledger.

For example, Company 00100 is a U.S. dollar (USD) base currency company, and its AA ledger represents USD. Company 00002 has French francs (FRF) as its base currency, and its AA ledger then represents FRF.
An exception to this rule occurs when a currency has been assigned to a ledger type in the user defined code list (09/LT). If the special handling code of a ledger type contains a currency code, the decimals for the ledger are determined by that currency code.

For example, you have a company with a base domestic currency of French francs (FRF). However, you want to establish a budget in U.S. dollars (USD). You can set up a ledger with USD in the Special Handling Code of the user defined code list (09/LT). Any entry made to that ledger is considered USD and not FRF.

The designation of a currency code for a ledger type should only be done as an exception. A currency code designation for a ledger type applies to all companies using that ledger. Therefore, you should not indicate a currency for the AA or CA ledger.

**Totals on Reports**

The decimal position for totals on reports follow the same rules as presented above. The currency code defined for the ledger type is the first determining factor. If that is blank, the currency of the company to which the last account is associated determines the decimal position. For summary amounts representing “foreign” currency in the CA ledger, the following rules apply:

- **F0902/F1202** – Balance reports use the “denominated in” Currency Code field on the record.
- **F0911** – Transaction reports use the account currency code. If it is blank, the transaction currency code of the last record is used.
- **F0311/F0411** – Customer and Supplier Ledger reports use the currency code on the last record. In some cases, reports have been changed to indicate that a total is not applicable if multiple currencies are summed. You would then see “N/A” used instead of a total.

**Monetary (Currency-Specific) Accounts**

If an account has been assigned a specific currency code, transactions entered to that account must be in that currency. This rule applies to the AA and CA ledgers only. If other ledger types have been established, the monetary account restrictions do not apply.

For monetary account revaluation purposes, a document type of JX overrides an edit that exists in programs so entry can be made directly to the AA ledger.
Appendix D — Currency Codes and Decimals

Technical Considerations

The Account Balances table (F0902) contains two currency codes:

- CRCD – This code represents the original transaction currency.
- CRCX – This code represents the denominated currency.

The following table illustrates the use of the CRCD and CRCX fields. The Account Balances table can optionally be posted in detail by the originating currency of the transaction.

For every transaction currency, you will have a corresponding balance. If this amount of detail is not required, your account balances can be summarized into one AA and one CA ledger balance for each account. (This does not consider the effect of posting by subledger to an account.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Posting Option</th>
<th>Ledger Type</th>
<th>Originating Currency (CRCD)</th>
<th>“Denominated In” Currency (CRCX)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Summarized Currency Post</td>
<td>AA</td>
<td>Blank</td>
<td>Company Currency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summarized Currency Post</td>
<td>CA</td>
<td>Blank</td>
<td>Company Currency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detailed Currency Post (and all monetary accounts)</td>
<td>AA</td>
<td>Transaction Currency</td>
<td>Company Currency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detailed Currency Post (and all monetary accounts)</td>
<td>CA</td>
<td>Transaction Currency</td>
<td>Transaction Currency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summarized Currency Post</td>
<td>All other ledger types</td>
<td>Blank</td>
<td>Ledger Currency (if specified in the user defined code list (09/LT) or Company Currency</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The result of posting a similar set of transactions in both summary and detail is shown below. This example shows a Belgian franc (BEF) company with sales originating in Belgian francs, French francs (FRF), U.S. dollars (USD), and British pounds (GBP). Account 401.5005 for Sales of Product A is illustrated.

\[
\text{CRCD} = \text{Original transaction currency}
\]

\[
\text{CDCX} = \text{Denominated currency}
\]

**Detailed Posting by Currency**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account</th>
<th>CRCD</th>
<th>CRCX</th>
<th>AA Ledger Amount</th>
<th>CRCD CA</th>
<th>CRCX CA</th>
<th>CA Ledger Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>401.5005 Sales Product</td>
<td>BEF</td>
<td>BEF</td>
<td>100,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FRF</td>
<td>BEF</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>FRF</td>
<td>FRF</td>
<td>10,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>BEF</td>
<td>150,000</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
<td>5,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GBP</td>
<td>BEF</td>
<td>45,000</td>
<td>GBP</td>
<td>GBP</td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Summary Posting by Currency**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account</th>
<th>CRCD AA</th>
<th>CRCX AA</th>
<th>AA Ledger Amount</th>
<th>CRCD CA</th>
<th>CRCX CA</th>
<th>CA Ledger Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>401.5005 Sales Product</td>
<td></td>
<td>BEF</td>
<td>355,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1,600,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix E - Batch Input Setup

To successfully upload batch invoices from outside sources, such as PC data entry, third-party or customer systems, or Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) to the Invoice Transactions – Batch table (F0311Z1), you must enter data into certain fields.

Table 1 in this appendix lists the fields required by the Batch Input Invoice Processing program (P03110Z) for uploading. Tables 2 and 3 list optional fields that might be useful to you in organizing the data, but are not required by the program. Table 4 lists fields that the system ignores during the upload process. The functional server does not pass ignored fields to the J.D. Edwards fields.

Each field in tables 1–3 is shown as required, conditional, or optional, as follows:

- **R** = Required entry. You must enter data into this field to successfully upload the transactions to the F0311Z1 table.
- **C** = Conditional entry. Under certain conditions, you must enter data into this field to successfully upload the transactions to the F0311Z1 table. The conditions are listed in the table under Explanation.
- **O** = Optional entry. You can enter data in this field.

Other information in the tables include the following:

- **Value.** The valid input value is edited. If no value is listed, you can enter any value that meets the field's alpha/numeric specifications. If a table or user defined code (xx/xx) is listed in the table, the system validates the value you enter against that table or user defined code.

  If the table shows DD as the value, the system takes valid values from the data dictionary specifications for the data item. The system can validate data dictionary specifications against user defined codes, allowed values, or upper/lower allowed values.

- **Default.** The default value that the system assigns if you leave the field blank. If no default is listed, the system uses the initialization value for the data item, with blanks for alpha fields and zeros for numeric fields. If DD is listed, the system uses the default value for the data item from the data dictionary. You can revise some of the defaults through the functional server processing options (XT0311Z1).
• Formats. Julian Date. The J.D. Edwards Julian date format is CYYDDD, where C is the century (1900=0, 2000=1), YY is the year, and DDD is the day of the year.

• Numeric amounts. The data dictionary shows amounts with 0 data file decimals. The data item size includes the decimal values. For example, if the display decimals = 2, the table stores $5.50 as 550. If display decimals = 0, the table stores $1000 as 1000.

• Multi-currency. If you are working in a multi-currency environment, the system uses the company or account display decimals for ledger type AA (domestic), and the transaction currency code for ledger type CA (foreign).

Other special format considerations appear under Explanation for the specific field. If no format is listed, use the data dictionary specifications for the data item to enter the field.
### Table 1 - Required or Conditionally Required Fields

The A/R Batch Table Processing program (P03110Z) requires the fields in the following table for adding or deleting A/R transactions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>R C O</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACR</td>
<td>Foreign Amount</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Required to enter amounts in foreign mode (CRRM=F)</td>
<td>Not zero</td>
<td>Calculated from AG if working in multi-currency and domestic mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AG</td>
<td>Amount</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Required to enter amounts in domestic mode (CRRM=D)</td>
<td>Not zero</td>
<td>Calculated from ACR if working in multi-currency and foreign mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AN8</td>
<td>Address Number</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Required to add a transaction (EDTC=A or blank)</td>
<td>F0101 Address Number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO</td>
<td>Company</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Required to add a transaction (EDTC=A or blank)</td>
<td>F0101 Address Number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCT</td>
<td>Document Type</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Required to delete a transaction (EDTC=D or blank)</td>
<td>F0005 00/DT</td>
<td>RI if VJAG &gt; 0 RM if VJAG &lt; or = to 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEJ</td>
<td>G/L Date</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Required to add a transaction (EDTC=A or blank)</td>
<td>Valid date</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DID</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIVJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOC</td>
<td>Document Number</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Required to delete a transaction (EDTC=D). If you leave this field blank when you add a transaction, the system uses Next Numbers to assign a document number. If you enter a document number, it must not already exist for an add.</td>
<td>F0311 Document</td>
<td>For an add, this is assigned by Next Numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDTC</td>
<td>Transaction Action</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Required to delete a transaction (EDTC=D). Enter only one line to indicate the J.D.Edwards document and document type to be deleted.</td>
<td>A = Add D = Delete (unprocessed items only)</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>R C O</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDTN</td>
<td>Transaction Number</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>The user transaction, invoice number, or sequential number for batch processing. This field, or this field in combination with EDUS and EDBT, should contain unique identification for a specific A/R invoice transaction.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICU</td>
<td>Batch Number</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>This field must be left blank. The system assigns the number through the Batch Edit/Update program. Each change in the EDBT field drives the creation of a new batch number.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Assigned by Next Numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KCO</td>
<td>Document Company</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>This field is required for a delete transaction (EDTC=D) and if assigning next numbers by company or fiscal year. If you enter a Document Company, it must not already exist for an add, but must exist for a delete.</td>
<td>F0010</td>
<td>CO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 2 - Optional Control Fields

The fields in the following table can be useful in processing and organizing batch data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>R C O</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ATXA</td>
<td>Taxable Amount</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Ignored if both EXRI and TXA1 are blank.</td>
<td>C00TX or calculated if working in multi-currency and foreign mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRCD</td>
<td>Currency Code</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>If multi-currency is activated, the system edits this field. You can use this field to control the currency calculations if you are working in a multi-currency environment.</td>
<td>F0013</td>
<td>F0101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRR</td>
<td>Exchange Rate</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td>F0013 for CRCD if CRRM = F or D. Calculated from AG and ACR if CRRM = 3 for both AG and ACR.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRRM</td>
<td>Mode of Entry</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>If multi-currency is activated, the system edits this field. You can use this field to control the currency calculations if you are working in a multi-currency environment.</td>
<td>D Domestic F Foreign 3 Pre-calculated</td>
<td>DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTAM</td>
<td>Foreign Tax Amount</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Ignored if both EXRI and TXA1 are blank.</td>
<td>C00TX or calculated if working in multi-currency and domestic mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTXA</td>
<td>Foreign Taxable Amount</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Ignored if both EXRI and TXA1 are blank.</td>
<td>C00TX</td>
<td>C00TX or calculated if working in multi-currency and domestic mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDAN</td>
<td>User Address Number</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>A number you assign in both the invoice record and the address book record, when the actual address number is assigned by the system using Next Numbers. This number is used to link the new address number to this transaction.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>R CO</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDBT</td>
<td>User Defined Batch Number</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>This field, in combination with EDTN and EDUS, uniquely identifies a specific invoice entry. This field also acts as a level break and drives the assignment of a J.D.Edwards batch number each time this value changes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDUS</td>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>User defined ID number. This field, in combination with EDTN and EDBT, uniquely identifies a specific invoice entry. PC processing uses this field as the PC terminal ID number.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXR1</td>
<td>Tax Explanation Code</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>If you enter a code here, the system will perform tax calculations.</td>
<td>00/EX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICUT</td>
<td>Batch Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>This field identifies the system the batch pertains to. For example: G = General Accounting, V = A/P Vouchers, I = A/R Invoices</td>
<td>98/IT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAM</td>
<td>Tax Amount</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Ignored if both EXR1 and TXA1 are blank.</td>
<td>C00TX</td>
<td>C00TX or calculated from CTAM if working in multi-currency and foreign mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TXA1</td>
<td>Tax Rate/Area</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>If you enter a code here, the system performs tax calculations.</td>
<td>F4008</td>
<td>MCTXA1 or ABTXA2 (if EXR1 is not blank).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3 - Additional Fields

The fields in the following table are optional. You can use them to provide additional information about the A/R transactions. Some of these fields are for future use with EDI processing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>R C O</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAP</td>
<td>Open Amount</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>AG if domestic, calculated from FAP if working in multi-currency and foreign mode.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC01-AC10</td>
<td>Category Codes</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>F0101 ABAC01-10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADSA</td>
<td>Discount Taken</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Calculated from CDSA if working in multi-currency and foreign mode.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADSC</td>
<td>Discount Available</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Less than the gross amount</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFC</td>
<td>Apply Finance Charges</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Calculated from CDS if working in multi-currency and foreign mode.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAID</td>
<td>Override Bank Account</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BALJ</td>
<td>Balanced JE's</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDS</td>
<td>Foreign Discount Available</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Calculated from ADSA if working in multi-currency and foreign mode.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDSA</td>
<td>Foreign Discount Taken</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Calculated if working in multi-currency and domestic mode.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLRC</td>
<td>Collection Reason</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>00/CL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLL</td>
<td>Collection Report Y/N</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>DD</td>
<td>DD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRC</td>
<td>Check Routine Code</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCTM</td>
<td>Matching Document Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Blanks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCTO</td>
<td>Order Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DD#</td>
<td>Due Date Net Century</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>RCO</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDM</td>
<td>Due Date Net</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Valid date</td>
<td>From G/L or Invoice Date</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI#</td>
<td>Invoice Date Century</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMCD</td>
<td>Domestic Multi-Currency Code</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMTM</td>
<td>Matching Document Date</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Zeros</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMTD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMTJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMTY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMT#</td>
<td>Matching Document Date Century</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Zeros</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOCM</td>
<td>Matching Document</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Zeros</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRF</td>
<td>Number of Payments</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Required if RF not blank.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSV#</td>
<td>Service/Tax Date Century</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDCT</td>
<td>Transaction Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDDL</td>
<td>Number of Detail Lines</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>This number should be the number of detail lines included in the specific transaction. For user verification only.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDDT</td>
<td>Transmission Date</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td>Valid calendar date</td>
<td>Date processed Format: YYDDD (Julian)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDER</td>
<td>Send/Receive Indicator</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Future EDI field.</td>
<td>DD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDFIT</td>
<td>Translation Format</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Future EDI field.</td>
<td>A valid translation format set up through the third-party translators for EDI.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDGL</td>
<td>Create G/L Record</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Future use.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDLN</td>
<td>Line Number</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>This field might be useful in identifying specific transaction lines.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix E - Batch Input Setup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>RCO</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EDSP</td>
<td>Processed (0/1)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>The batch processing program bypasses transactions marked 1 (processed).</td>
<td>0 = No</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 = Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDSQ</td>
<td>Record Sequence</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDST</td>
<td>Transaction Set</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Future EDI field.</td>
<td>A standard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EDI set number.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDTR</td>
<td>Transaction Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Identifies the type of invoice to be added or deleted.</td>
<td>I = Invoice</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDTO</td>
<td>Record Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Future EDI field.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAP</td>
<td>Foreign Open Amount</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td>ACR if working in multi-currency and domestic mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLC</td>
<td>G/L Offset</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td>AAI</td>
<td>F0101 ABAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITM</td>
<td>Item Number (short)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td>F0006</td>
<td>F0101 ABMCU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCU</td>
<td>Business Unit</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NBRR</td>
<td>Number of Reminders to Send</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td>DD</td>
<td>DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJ</td>
<td>Object Account</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPSQ</td>
<td>Operation Sequence Number</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDCT</td>
<td>Order Type</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Required if PO not blank.</td>
<td>00/DT</td>
<td>DD if PO not blank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKCO</td>
<td>Order Key Company</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Required if PO not blank.</td>
<td>F0010</td>
<td>CO if PO not blank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PO</td>
<td>Purchase Order</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POST</td>
<td>G/L Posted Code</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PST</td>
<td>Pay Status</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td>DD</td>
<td>DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTC</td>
<td>Payment Terms</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td>F0014</td>
<td>F0101 ABTRAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PYIN</td>
<td>Payment Instrument</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F0101 ABPYIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDSM</td>
<td>Reminder Stop Date Century</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDSM</td>
<td>Reminder Stop Date Century</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDSY</td>
<td>Reminder Stop Date Century</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RF</td>
<td>Recurring Frequency</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Required if DRF not blank.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMK</td>
<td>Remark</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RP1</td>
<td>Misc. Codes 1, 2, and 3</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Used for tax editing purposes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RP2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RP3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>R CO</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBL</td>
<td>Subledger</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBLT</td>
<td>Subledger Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDCT</td>
<td>Sales Document Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDOC</td>
<td>Sales Document</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SFX</td>
<td>Pay Item</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Ignored for delete transaction (EDTC = D). If left blank, will be assigned by the Batch Edit/Update Program.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Assigned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SFXM</td>
<td>Matching Document Line</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td>Blanks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SKCO</td>
<td>Sales Document Company</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUB</td>
<td>Subsidiary Account</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRTC</td>
<td>Input Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>Units</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM</td>
<td>Units of Measure</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLDT</td>
<td>Value Date</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td>Value date</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4 - Ignored Fields

If you enter data into these fields, the functional server does not pass it to the J.D.Edwards fields. The A/R Batch Table Processing program (P03110Z) supplies blank, zero, or the default shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AID2</td>
<td>G/L Credit Account</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALPH</td>
<td>Alpha Name</td>
<td>F0101 ABALPH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALT6</td>
<td>Cash Basis for Post Code</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AM</td>
<td>Account Mode</td>
<td>F0901</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AM2</td>
<td>Account Mode</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AN8J</td>
<td>Alternate Payee Address</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Adjustment Reason</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATO</td>
<td>Owner Y/N</td>
<td>F0101 ABATO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT1</td>
<td>Search Type</td>
<td>F0101 ABAT1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT2</td>
<td>AR/AP Netting</td>
<td>F0101 ABAT2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT3</td>
<td>Address Type 3</td>
<td>F0101 ABAT3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT4</td>
<td>Address Type 4</td>
<td>F0101 ABAT4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT5</td>
<td>Address Type 5</td>
<td>F0101 ABAT5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATE</td>
<td>User Code 5</td>
<td>F0101 ABATE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATP</td>
<td>Payables Y/N</td>
<td>F0101 ABATP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATPR</td>
<td>User Code 4</td>
<td>F0101 ABATPR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATR</td>
<td>Receivable Y/N</td>
<td>F0101 ABATR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATXN</td>
<td>Non-Taxable Amount</td>
<td>C00TI or calculated from CTXN if working in multi-currency and foreign mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLD#</td>
<td>Sent to Collection Date Century</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLDM</td>
<td>Sent to Collection Date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLDD</td>
<td>Sent to Collection Date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLDJ</td>
<td>Sent to Collection Date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLDY</td>
<td>Sent to Collection Date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CM</td>
<td>Flash Message</td>
<td>F0101 ABCM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMC1</td>
<td>Commission Code 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTL</td>
<td>A/R Checks Control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRY</td>
<td>Fiscal Century</td>
<td>G/L Date Century</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTXN</td>
<td>Foreign Non-Taxable Amount</td>
<td></td>
<td>C00TX or calculated from ATXN if working in multi-currency and domestic mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDN#</td>
<td>Due Date (Net) Century</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDNM</td>
<td>Due Date (Net)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDND</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDNJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDNY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIC#</td>
<td>Batch Date Century</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DICM</td>
<td>Batch Date</td>
<td></td>
<td>F0011 Batch Header</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DICD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DICJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DICY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPR#</td>
<td>Date Promised Century</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPRM</td>
<td>Date Promised</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPRD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPRJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPRY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FNLP</td>
<td>Closed Item</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FY</td>
<td>Fiscal Year</td>
<td></td>
<td>G/L Date Fiscal Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLBA</td>
<td>G/L Bank Account</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITI#</td>
<td>Interest Invoice Date Century</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITIM</td>
<td>Interest Invoice Date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITID</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITIJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITTY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOBN</td>
<td>Workstation ID</td>
<td></td>
<td>System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNID</td>
<td>Line Number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCU2</td>
<td>Business Unit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSF</td>
<td>NSF Check Return</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUMB</td>
<td>Item Number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ODCT</td>
<td>Original Document Type</td>
<td></td>
<td>Document Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ODOC</td>
<td>Original Document</td>
<td></td>
<td>Document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OKCO</td>
<td>Original Document Company</td>
<td></td>
<td>Document Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OSFX</td>
<td>Original Pay Item</td>
<td></td>
<td>Pay Item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PA8</td>
<td>Parent Number</td>
<td></td>
<td>F0101 PA8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PID</td>
<td>Program ID</td>
<td></td>
<td>System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PN</td>
<td>G/L Period</td>
<td></td>
<td>Current Company Period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRT1</td>
<td>Print</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDD#</td>
<td>Last Sent Reminder Date Century</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDDM</td>
<td>Last Sent Reminder Date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDDD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDDJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDDY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDRL</td>
<td>Level Last Reminder Sent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMDS</td>
<td>Total Sent Reminders</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SFXO</td>
<td>Order Suffix</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMTM</td>
<td>Statement Date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMTD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMTJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMTY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMT#</td>
<td>Statement Date Century</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TORG</td>
<td>Transaction Originator</td>
<td></td>
<td>System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIT</td>
<td>Unit Number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPMJ</td>
<td>Date Updated</td>
<td></td>
<td>System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPMT</td>
<td>Time Last Updated</td>
<td></td>
<td>System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER</td>
<td>User Profile</td>
<td></td>
<td>System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VINV</td>
<td>Vendor Invoice Number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VR01</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix F - A/R Statement Processing

The following graphics illustrate the processing options for A/R Print Statements.
1. Build F0315WJA

2. Build with zero $ amount

1/Yes

Call P03525 version ZJ DE0002

3. Retrieve aging from constants or use following processing option

4. Enter statement date for aging and selection of detail records

5. Aging basis on DIGS

6. Method of Aging 1, 2, 3

Define aging buckets

Use fiscal product from company date pattern

Use calendar pattern
A

8. Age credit Y/N (0/1)

9. Enter version #PO3500X for F0311 selection and sort if blank, ZDE003 will be used

P035001

10. Exclude future dollars Y/N (0/1)

11. Exclude paid invoices Y/N (0/1)

12. Process with multi-currency Y/N (0/1)

13. Inclusion of detail records by “As of” date DIGS

14. Print aging Y/N (0/1)

15. Suppress printing of account summary information Y/N (0/1)

16. Statement date: invoice or due date

B
17. Print RiBa draft format Y/N (0/1)

18. Print statement number Y/N (0/1)
    Print remit to address Y/N (0/1)

19. Enter a remit address
    (if specified in program option 18)

20. Summary statement detail lines
    Y/N (0/1)

21. Update statement number 0/1/2

END
Appendix G — Functional Servers

Several J.D. Edwards programs access functional servers. The purpose of functional servers is to provide a central location for standard business rules about entering documents, such as invoices, receipts, and journal entries. These business rules establish the following:

- Data dictionary default values
- Field edits and valid values
- Error processing
- Relationships between fields or applications

The advantages of a functional server are:

- It reduces maintenance of entry programs because edit rules reside in one central location
- You can standardize documents across all applications because you create them using the same business rules
- Generally, the user interface (appearance and interaction) of a form is now separate from how a program works.

The steps for setting up business rules for an entry program are:

1. Create a version for a specific functional server program (for example, XT0311Z1 for invoice entry or XT0411Z1 for voucher entry).
2. Set the processing options within the version according to your company requirements.
3. Specify the version you want the entry program to use in the processing options for that entry program.

You can have all your entry programs use the same DREAM Writer version (and thus, use the same rules) or you can set up different DREAM Writer versions. J.D. Edwards provides DREAM Writer version ZJDE0001 as the default functional server version for your entry programs.

Only the person responsible for system-wide setup should make changes to the functional server version. For more information about how to set up DREAM Writer versions, see the Technical Foundation Guide.
Example: Voucher Processing Functional Server

The following graphic shows the programs that use the voucher processing functional server. J.D. Edwards provides two demo version of the functional server, ZJDE0001 and ZJDE0002.

- Speed voucher entry P041015
- Standard voucher entry P04105
- Void payment entry P04103
- Credit tied to debit B.U. P041016
- Multi-voucher P041017
- Calculate withholding P04580

(XTO311Z1
Versions List

ZJ DE0001
ZJ DE0002)
Glossary

This glossary defines terms in the context of J.D. Edwards systems and the accompanying guide.

**1099 form.** An income tax reporting form required by the U.S. government for many types of payments made to persons and non-corporate entities.

**AA ledger.** The ledger type that the system uses for transactions in domestic amounts (actual amounts).

**AAL.** Automatic accounting instructions. A code that points to an account in the chart of accounts. AALs define rules for programs that automatically generate journal entries. This includes interfaces between Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and Financial Reporting and the General Accounting system. Each system that interfaces with the General Accounting system has AALs. For example, AALs can direct the General Ledger Post program to post a debit to a certain expense account and a credit to a certain accounts payable account.

**A/P Ledger method.** One of the two methods J.D. Edwards provides to process 1099 tax reporting forms. Using this method, you produce 1099s from data stored in the A/P Ledger table (F0411). Formerly known as the expedient method and the fast path method. Contrast with G/L method.

**access.** A way to get to information or functions provided by the system through menus, forms, and reports.

**account status.** The state or condition of a customer's A/R transaction account.

**accounting period.** One of the divisions of a fiscal year. A fiscal year can contain 12 to 14 accounting periods, or more rarely, 52 periods. There can also be an additional period for year-end adjustments, and another additional period for audit adjustments.

**activity type.** A code that represents an action that is to be taken when reviewing and working customer accounts for credit and collection management purposes. For example, credit review required and delinquency notice approval required.

**adjustment.** A payment and receipt application method that modifies an amount, such as a minor write-off or outstanding freight charges and disputed taxes.

**algorithm.** A predetermine set of instructions or method used to automatically apply receipts to invoices, such as balance forward.

**alphabetic character.** A letter or other symbol from the keyboard (such as *, &, and #) that represents data. Contrast with alphanumeric character, numeric character, and special character.

**alphanumeric character.** A combination of letters, numbers, and other symbols (such as *, &, and #) that represents data. Contrast with alphabetic character, numeric character, and special character.

**application.** See system.

**approver number.** The user ID of the person who approves vouchers for payment.

**as of report.** A report that lists information from the A/R Ledger and A/P Ledger tables in summary or detail for a specific point in time.

**audit adjustments.** The adjustments you make to G/L accounts following an audit. You generally enter these adjustments annually, following the close of the fiscal year.
audit trail. The detailed, verifiable history of a processed transaction. The history consists of the original documents, transaction entries, and posting of records, and usually concludes with a report.

AZ ledger. The ledger type that the system uses for cash basis accounting.

backup copy. A copy of original data preserved on a magnetic tape or diskette as protection against destruction or loss.


balance forward receipt application method. A receipt application method in which the receipt is applied to the oldest or newest invoices in chronological order according to the net due date.

bank tape (lock box) processing. The receipt of payments directly from a customer's bank via customer tapes for automatic receipt application.

batch. (1) An accumulation of data to be processed. (2) A group of records brought together to be processed or transmitted at the same time. (3) Pertaining to an activity that involves little or no user interaction.

batch control. A feature that verifies the number of transactions and the total amount in each batch that you enter into the system.

batch header. The information the computer uses as identification and control for a group of transactions or records in a batch.

batch input. A group of transactions loaded from an external source.

batch input table. An external table that holds data being loaded into the system.

batch job. See batch.

batch number. A unique identifier that the system assigns to a batch for identification purposes.

batch processing. A method by which the computer selects jobs from the job queue, processes them, and writes output to the out queue. Contrast with interactive processing.

batch receipts entry. An alternative method (such as an optical reader or magnetic scanner) to load receipts into the Accounts Receivable system.

batch status. A code that indicates the posting status of a batch. For example, A indicates approved for posting, P indicates posting in-process, and D indicates posted.

batch type. A code that designates to which system the associated transactions pertain. This code controls which records the system selects for processing. For example, the General Journal Post program selects only unposted transaction batches with a batch type of G (General Accounting) for posting.

Boolean logic. See operand.

broadcast message. 1. An email message that you send to a number of recipients. 2. A message that appears on a form instead of in your mailbox.

business unit. A division of your business organization that requires a balance sheet or profit and loss statement. Also known as a cost center.

cash basis accounting. A method of accounting that recognizes revenue and expenses when monies are received and paid.

category code. In user defined codes, a temporary title for an undefined category. For example, if you are adding a code that designates different sales regions, you could change category code 4 to Sales Region, and define E (East), W (West), N (North), and S (South) as the valid codes.

character. Any letter, number, or other symbol that a computer can read, write, and store.
**chargeback.** A receipt application method that generates an invoice for a disputed amount or for the difference of an unpaid receipt.

**check.** See payment.

**command.** A character, word, phrase, or combination of keys you use to instruct the computer to perform a defined activity.

**consolidation.** A method of grouping or combining information for several companies or business units. Consolidation is used for budgeting, inquiries, and reports.

**consolidation reporting.** The process of combining financial statements for companies or business units so that the different entities can be represented by a single balance sheet or income statement. If the different entities operate in different currencies, consolidation reporting may be complicated by the need for currency restatement.

**constants.** Parameters or codes that rarely change. The computer uses constants to standardize information processing by an associated system. Some examples of constants are allowing or disallowing out-of-balance postings and having the system perform currency conversions on all amounts. After you set constants such as these, the system follows these rules until you change the constants.

**contra/clearing account.** A G/L account used by the system to offset (balance) journal entries. For example, you can use a contra/clearing account to balance the entries created by allocations.

**cost allocations.** A procedure that allocates or distributes expenses, budgets, adjustments, and so on among business units, based on actual numbers.

**cost center.** See business unit.

**credit message.** A code that indicates information about a customer’s account status, such as Over Credit Limit.

**credit note reimbursement.** A form generated by the system that reclassifies a credit memo or unapplied cash record from the Accounts Receivable system to an open voucher in the Accounts Payable system.

**cursor.** The blinking underscore or rectangle on your form that indicates where the next keystroke will appear.

**currency code.** A code that designates the currency used by a customer, supplier, bank account, company, or ledger type.

**currency restatement.** The process of converting amounts from one currency into another currency, generally for reporting purposes. It can be used, for example, when many currencies must be restated into a single currency for consolidated reporting.

**cursor sensitive help.** An online help function that allows you to view a description of a field, an explanation of its purpose, and, when applicable, a list of the valid codes you can enter. To access this information, move the cursor to the field and press F1.

**customer.** An individual or organization that purchases goods and services.

**customer ledger.** A detailed transaction history for a customer that includes invoices, receipts, chargebacks, writeoffs, and so on. You use the customer ledger for indepth analysis of A/R information for your customer accounts.

**customer payment.** See receipt.

**data.** Numbers, letters, or symbols representing facts, definitions, conditions, and situations, that a computer can read, write, and store.

**database.** A continuously updated collection of all information a system uses and stores. Databases make it possible to create, store, index, and cross-reference information online.
data dictionary. A database table consisting of the definitions, structures, and guidelines for the usage of fields, messages, and help text. The data dictionary table does not contain the actual data itself.

data types. Supplemental information, attached to a company or business unit. Narrative type contains free-form text. Code type contains dates, amounts, and so on.

date pattern. A period of time set for each period in standard and 52-period accounting.

debit statement. A list of debit balances.

default. A code, number, or parameter the system supplies when you do not enter one. For example, if the default for an input field default is N and you do not enter another value in that field, the system supplies an N.

detail. The individual pieces of information and data that make up a record or transaction. Contrast with summary.

detail area. An area of a form that displays additional information associated with the records or data items displayed on the form.

display. To cause the computer to show information on a form.

display field. A field of information on a form that contains a code or parameter provided by the system that you cannot change. Contrast with input field.

display sequence. A number that the system uses to reorder a group of records on the form.

document number. A number that identifies the original document, such as voucher, invoice, unapplied receipt, journal entry, and so on.

draft. A promise to pay a debt. Drafts are legal payment instruments in certain European countries.

DREAM Writer. Data Record Extraction and Management Writer. A flexible data manipulator and cataloging tool. You use this tool to select and sequence the data that is to appear on a report.

EDI. Electronic Data Interchange. A method of transferring business documents, such as purchase orders, invoices, and shipping notices, between computers of independent organizations electronically.

edit. (1) To make changes by adding, changing, or removing information. (2) The program function of highlighting fields into which you have entered inadequate or incorrect data.

effective date. The date upon which an address, item, transaction, or table becomes effective. For example, the date a change of address becomes effective or the date a tax rate becomes effective. In the Address Book system, effective dates allow you to track past and future addresses for suppliers and customers.

EFT. Electronic Funds Transfer. A method of transferring funds from one company's bank account to that of another company.

email. Electronic mail.

execute. See run.

exit. (1) To interrupt or leave a computer program by pressing a specific key or a sequence of keys. (2) An option or function key displayed on a form that allows you to access another form.


field. (1) An area on a form that represents a particular type of information, such as name, document type, or amount. Fields that you can enter data into are designated with underscores. See input field and display field. (2) A defined area within a record that contains a specific piece of information. For example, a supplier record consists of the fields Supplier Name,
Address, and Telephone Number. The Supplier Name field contains just the name of the supplier.

file. See table.

52 period accounting. A method of accounting that uses each week as a separate accounting period.

finance charge. An amount charged to a customer based on a percentage of an unpaid invoice exceeding the grace period associated with the due date.

financial reporting date. The user defined date used by the system when you run financial reports.

fiscal year. A company's tax reporting year. Retained earnings are generally calculated at the end of a fiscal year. It is often different than a calendar year. For example, a fiscal year may be the period October 1 through September 30.

flash message. A code that you define to describe the credit status of a customer. Examples include over credit limit, COD only, bad credit risk, and requires a purchase order.

fold area. See detail area.

form. A specific set of fields and information displayed on your monitor. Also known as a screen.

function. A separate feature within a program that allows you to perform a specific task, for example, the field help function.

functional server. A central system location for standard business rules about entering documents such as vouchers, invoices, and journal entries. Functional servers ensure uniform processing according to guidelines you establish.

general ledger receipt. A receipt (G type) that the system applies directly to a G/L account without applying it to a specific invoice. These receipts are typically non-A/R receipts. For example, an insurance reimbursement.

G/L. General ledger.

G/L method. One of the two methods J.D. Edwards provides to process 1099 tax reporting forms. Using this method, you produce 1099s from data stored in the Account Ledger table (F0911). Formerly known as the tough/right method. Contrast with A/P Ledger method.

G/L offset. A G/L account used by the post program to create automatic offsetting entries.

G/L posted code. A code that indicates the posting status of individual documents. For example, P indicates that a voucher or invoice has been posted.

GST. Goods Services and Taxes. A tax assessed in Canada.

hard copy. See printout.

hash total. A total produced by numbers with different units. For example, the total of amounts expressed in different currencies.

header. Information at the beginning of a table. This information identifies or provides control information for the group of records that follows.

help instructions. Online documentation or explanations of fields.

hidden selections. Menu selections you cannot see until you enter HS in a menu's Selection field. Although you cannot see these selections, they are available from any menu. They include such items as Display Submitted Jobs (33), Display User Job Queue (42), and Display User Print Queue...
Accounts Receivable

(43). The Hidden Selections window displays three categories of selections: user tools, operator tools, and programmer tools.

**indexed allocations.** A procedure that allocates or distributes expenses, budgets, adjustments, and so on, among business units, based on a fixed percentage.

**input.** Information you enter in the input fields on a form or that the computer enters from other programs, then edits and stores in tables.

**input field.** An area on a form where you type data, values, or characters. See *field*. Contrast with *display field*.

**install system code.** See *system code*.

**integrity test.** A process that supplements a company’s internal balancing procedures by locating and reporting balancing problems and data inconsistencies.

**interactive processing.** A job that the computer performs in response to commands you enter from a terminal. During interactive processing, you are in direct communication with the computer, and it might prompt you for additional information during the processing of your request. See *online*. Contrast with *batch processing*.

**interest invoice.** An invoice calculated on paid invoices for which payment was received after the specified due dates.

**interest rate computation code.** A code that designates the rates and effective dates used for calculating interest charges.

**invalid account.** A G/L account that has not been set up in the Account Master table (F0901).

**invoice match.** A receipt application method where the receipt is applied to a specific invoice or group of invoices. A discount can be allowed or disallowed using invoice match.

**job.** A single identifiable set of processing actions you instruct the computer to perform. You start jobs by choosing menu selections, entering commands, or pressing designated function keys. An example of a computer job is payment printing in the Accounts Payable system.

**job queue.** A form that lists the batch jobs you and others have submitted for processing. When the computer completes a job, the system removes the job’s identifier from the list.

**justify.** To shift the information that you enter in an input field to the right or left side of the field. Many of the programs within J.D. Edwards systems justify information. The system does this after you press Enter.

**key field.** A field that is common to each record in a table. The system uses the key field designated by the program to organize and retrieve information from the table.

**language preference.** An address book code that specifies a language for the computer to use when displaying information.

**leading zeros.** A series of zeros that certain programs place in front of a value you enter. This normally occurs when you enter a value that is smaller than the specified length of the field. For example, if you enter 4567 in a field that accommodates eight numbers, the system places four zeros in front of the four numbers you enter. The result appears as 00004567.

**ledger type.** A ledger used by the system for a particular purpose. For example, all transactions are recorded in the AA (actual amounts) ledger type in their domestic currency. The same transactions might also be stored in the CA (foreign currency) ledger type. Also known as a *ledger*. 

A8.1 (8/97)
level of detail. The degree to which account information in the General Accounting system is summarized. The highest level of detail is 1 (least detailed) and the lowest level of detail is 9 (most detailed).

logged voucher. A voucher that is not applied to a specific supplier or invoice. Instead, it is applied to a G/L suspense account, where it is held until you redistribute it to the correct G/L account or accounts.

mail distribution list. A list of people to whom you send email messages. This list enables you to quickly send notices, instructions, or requests to a predefined group of people.

master table. A computer table that a system uses to store data and information which is permanent and necessary to the system’s operation. Master tables might contain data or information such as paid tax amounts and supplier names and addresses.

matching document. A document associated with an original document to complete or change a transaction. For example, a receipt is the matching document of an invoice.

menu. A form that displays selections. Each of these selections represents an application, report, batch process, or another menu.

menu levels. The degree of difficulty of a menu in J.D. Edwards software. The levels of detail for menus are as follows:

A=Major Product Directories
B=Product Groups
1=Basic Operations
2=Intermediate Operations
3=Advanced Operations
4=Computer Operations
5=Programmers
6=Advanced Programmers

menu masking. A security feature of J.D. Edwards systems that lets you prevent individual users from accessing specified menus or menu selections. The system does not display the menus or menu selections to unauthorized users.

menu message. Text that sometimes appears on a form after you make a menu selection. It displays a warning, caution, or information about the requested selection.

mode. A code that specifies whether amounts are in the domestic currency of the company with which the journal entries, invoices, vouchers are associated, or in the foreign currency of the transaction.

monetary account. (1) In common usage, any funds account. (2) In J.D. Edwards more specific usage, a bank account limited to transactions in a single currency.

next numbers. A feature that you use to control the automatic numbering of such items as new G/L accounts, vouchers, and addresses. It lets you specify your desired numbering system and provides a method to increment numbers to reduce transposition and typing errors.

next status. The next step in the payment process for payment control groups. The next status can be either WRT (write) or UPD (update).

NSF receipt. Non-sufficient funds receipt. A procedure that designates that a customer’s bank account does not have sufficient funds available to pay the receipt. Designating a receipt as NSF reverses (deletes) the receipt and reopens the associated invoice.

numeric character. Represents data using the numbers 0 through 9. Contrast with alphabetic character, alphanumeric character, and special character.

offline. Computer functions that are not under the continuous control of the system. For example, if you run a certain job on a personal computer and then transfer the results to a host computer, that job is considered an offline function. Contrast with online.
online. Computer functions over which the system has continuous control. Each time you work with a form in a J.D. Edwards system, you are online. See interactive processing. Contrast with offline.

online information. Information the system retrieves, usually at your request, and immediately displays on the form. This information includes items such as database information, documentation, and messages.

operand. The Boolean logic operand instructs the system to perform a comparison between certain records or parameters. Available operands are:

- EQ = Equal To
- LT = Less Than
- LE = Less Than or Equal To
- GT = Greater Than
- GE = Greater Than or Equal To
- NE = Not Equal To
- NL = Not Less Than
- NG = Not Greater Than

option. A selection from a form that performs a particular function or task.

original document. The document that initiates a transaction in the system.

output. Information that the computer transfers from internal storage to an external device, such as a printer or a computer form.

output queue. See print queue.

override. The process of entering a code or parameter other than the one provided by the system. Many forms have default field values that the system displays when it displays the form. By typing a new value over the default code, you can override the default. See default.

P&L. Profit and loss statement.

parameter. A number, code, or character string you specify in association with a command or program. The computer uses parameters as additional input or to control the actions of the command or program.

parent/child relationship. A hierarchical relationship among your addresses (suppliers, customers, or prospects). One address is the parent and one or more subordinate addresses are children for that parent. This relationship is helpful, for example, when you want to send billing for field offices (subsidiary companies) to the corporate headquarters.

password. A unique group of characters that you enter when you sign on to the system. The system uses the password to identify you as a valid user.

pay item. A line item in a voucher or an invoice.

pay status. The current condition of the payment or receipt, such as paid or payment-in-process.

payment. The payment that you make to a supplier.

payment group. A system-generated group of payments with similar information, such as bank account. The system processes all payments in a payment group at the same time.

payment instrument. The method of payment, such as check, draft, EFT, and so on.

payment stub. The printed record of a payment.

payment terms. The amount of time allowed to pay a voucher or an invoice, with or without a discount.

posted code. A code that indicates whether a transaction or batch has been posted.

pre-note code. A code that indicates whether a supplier is set up or in the process of being set up for electronic funds transfer (EFT).

printout. A presentation of computer information printed on paper. Also known as a hard copy.
**print queue.** A list of tables, such as reports, that you have submitted to be written to an output device, such as a printer. The computer spools the tables until it writes them. After the computer writes the table, the system removes the table’s identifier from the list. Also known as an output queue.

**processing options.** A feature that allows you to supply parameters to direct the functions of a program. For example, processing options allow you to specify defaults for certain form formats, control the format in which information is printed on reports, change the way a form displays information, and enter “as of” dates.

**program.** A collection of computer statements that instructs the computer to perform a specific task or group of tasks.

**prompt.** (1) A reminder or request for information displayed by the system. When a prompt appears, you must respond in order to proceed. (2) A list of codes or parameters or a request for information provided by the system as a reminder of the type of information you should enter or action you should take.

**pseudo company.** A fictitious company used in consolidations.

**PST.** Provincial sales tax. A tax assessed by individual provinces in Canada.

**purge.** The process of removing records or data from a system table.

**rate type.** For currency exchange transactions, the rate type distinguishes different types of exchange rates. For example, you can use both period average and period-end rates, distinguishing them by rate type.

**realized gain or loss.** Currency gains and losses are incurred due to fluctuating currency exchange rates. A gain or loss is realized when you pay the invoice or voucher. Contrast with unrealized gain or loss.

**receipt.** The payment you receive from a customer.

**receipt logging.** See logged receipt.

**record.** A collection of related, consecutive fields of data that the system treats as a single unit of information. For example, a supplier record consists of information such as the supplier’s name, address, and telephone number.

**recurring frequency.** The cycle in which a recurring voucher or invoice becomes due for payment. For example, monthly or quarterly.

**recurring invoice.** An invoice that becomes due for payment on a regular cycle, such as a lease payment.

**recurring journal entry.** A procedure that allocates or distributes expenses, budgets, adjustments, and so on among business units, based on actual numbers.

**recurring voucher.** A voucher that comes due for payment on a regular cycle, such as a lease payment.

**recycle.** A process that creates the next cycle (for example, next month’s) of recurring invoices or vouchers.

**refresh.** A process that updates a customer’s credit and collection information, such as Credit Analysis Refresh.

**reset.** The process of changing a payment from a completed status to a next status of WRT (write). This allows you to correct or reprint payments.

**reverse.** A process that creates an opposite entry when the original transaction is posted to the general ledger.
reverse image. Text on a form that displays in the opposite color combination of characters and background from what the form typically displays (for example, black on green instead of green on black).

routing/transit number. A number that uniquely identifies U.S. banks. This number is assigned by the Federal Reserve Board. It consists of two parts: a routing number and a transit number.

run. To cause the computer to perform a routine, process a batch of transactions, or carry out computer program instructions.

screen. See form.

scroll. To use the roller keys to move form information up or down a form at a time. When you press the Rollup key, for instance, the system replaces the currently displayed text with the next form of text if more text is available.

selection. Selections represent programs or menus that you can access from a given menu.

self-reconciling item. An item that does not require reconciliation.

sequence review ID. A code defines the order in which payments print in a payment group. Each sequence review ID has its own data sequence and a code that indicates whether the system sorts each data item in ascending or descending order.

SIC. Standard Industry Classification. A U.S. government code that classifies U.S. companies according to their economic activity. Examples include agricultural services (0100), wholesale trade (5000), and services (7000).

soft coding. A group of features that allow you to customize and adapt J.D. Edwards software to your business environment. These features lessen the need for you to use computer programmers when your data processing needs change.

software. The operating system and application programs that instruct the computer what tasks to perform and how to perform them.

special character. Symbols that are neither letters nor numbers. Some examples are *, & , and #. Contrast with alphabetic character, alphanumeric character, and numeric character.

special period/year. The date that determines the source balances for an allocation.

speed code. A user defined code that represents a G/L account number. You can use speed codes to simplify data entry by making G/L accounts easier to remember.

spool. The function by which the system stores generated output to await printing and processing.

spooled table. A holding table for output data waiting to be printed or input data waiting to be processed.

spread. (1) A payables and receipts application method that distributes and applies an unapplied voucher, receipt, debit memo, or credit memo to open vouchers or invoices. (2) A budgeting process that distributes amounts over a number of periods.

stop date. The date that an allocation becomes inactive.

structure type. A code that identifies a type of organization structure with its own hierarchy in the Address Book system.

subfile. See detail area.

submit. See run.

supplemental data. Additional information about a business unit not contained in the master tables.

supplier. An individual or organization that provides goods and services. Also known as a vendor.
supplier ledger. The record of transactions between your company and a particular supplier.

summary. The presentation of data or information in a cumulative or totaled manner in which most of the details have been removed. Many J.D. Edwards systems offer forms and reports that are summaries of the information stored in certain tables.

suspending account. A G/L account that holds funds until they can be allocated to the correct account. Also known as a transit account.

system. A collection of computer programs that allows you to perform specific business tasks. Some examples of systems are Accounts Payable, Inventory, and Order Processing. Also known as an application.

system code. The code that identifies a J.D. Edwards system. For example, 01 for the Address Book system, 04 for the Accounts Payable system, and 09 for the General Accounting system.

table. A collection of related data records organized for a specific use and electronically stored by the computer. Also known as a file.

three-tier processing. The task of entering, approving, and posting batches of transactions.

third party software. Programs provided to J.D. Edwards clients by companies other than J.D. Edwards.

TI (type input) code. A code that identifies the type of receipt application, which directly affects the way the receipt is processed.

time log. An email method for tracking employees’ time in the office. The time log lists when employees sign in, sign out, and employee remarks about their whereabouts and activities.

tolerance range. The amount by which the taxes you enter manually may vary from the tax calculated by the system.

transaction code. A code that distinguishes the type of transaction on a bank statement.

transit account. See suspense account.

translation adjustment account. An optional G/L account used in currency balance restatement to record the total adjustments at a company level.

unapplied receipt. A receipt that is applied to a customer’s account balance instead of being matched to an invoice or group of invoices.

unrealized gain or loss. Currency gains and losses are incurred due to fluctuating currency exchange rates. A gain or loss is unrealized until you pay the invoice or voucher. Contrast with realized gain or loss.

update payments. For example, to add new payments and void payments to the A/P Ledger (F0411), Accounts Payable Matching Document (F0413), and Accounts Payable Matching Document Detail (F0414) tables. The system updates these tables during payment processing and prints the payment register.

user defined code. The individual codes that you create and define within a user defined code type. Code types are used by programs to edit data and allow only defined codes. These codes might consist of a single character or a set of characters that represents a word, phrase, or definition. These characters can be alphabetic, alphanumeric, or numeric. For example, in the user defined code type list ST (Search Type), a few codes are C for Customers, E for Employees, and V for Suppliers.

user defined code type. The identifier for a list of user defined codes. For example, ST for the Search Type codes list in the Address Book system. J.D. Edwards
Accounts Receivable

provides a number of these lists for each system. You can create and define lists of your own.

**user identification (user ID).** The unique name you enter when you sign on to a J.D. Edwards system to identify yourself to the system. This ID can be up to 10 characters long and can consist of alphabetic, alphanumeric, and numeric characters.

**valid codes.** The allowed codes, amounts, or types of data that you can enter in a specific input field. The system verifies the information you enter against the list of valid codes.

**variable numerator allocations.** A procedure that allocates or distributes expenses, budgets, adjustments, and so on, among business units, based on a variable.

**VAT.** Value-added tax. A recoverable tax assessed in some countries.

**vendor.** See supplier.

**vocabulary overrides.** A feature that lets you to override field, row, or column title text on a form-by-form or report-by-report basis.

**void.** A process that creates a reversing entry for the original transaction. Voiding a transaction leaves an audit trail.

**voucher logging.** See logged voucher.

**voucher match.** A payment application method where the payment is applied to specific vouchers.

**who's who.** The contacts at a particular company. Examples include billing, collections, and sales personnel.

**window.** A feature that allows a part of your form to function as if it were a form in itself. Windows serve a dedicated purpose within a program, such as searching for a specific valid code for a field.

**word search stop word.** A common word that the query search in the Address Book system ignores. Examples include street or avenue.

**worked.** A code that indicates whether a customer’s account has been reviewed and updated. For example, you work an account by changing a customer’s credit limit or customers who are eligible for a credit review.

**write-off.** A method for getting rid of inconsequential differences between amounts. For example, you can apply a receipt to an invoice and write off the difference. You can write off both overpayments and underpayments.

**write payment.** A step in processing payments. Writing payments includes printing checks, drafts, and creating a bank tape table.
Index

A

A/R Account Summary report, 7–63
A/R and A/P Netting (F03455), 5–5, 5–11
A/R and A/P Netting Workfile table (F03465), 5–18
A/R Annual Close report, 20–10
A/R Batch Detail form, 17–14
A/R Batch File Processing, processing options, 17–18
A/R Batch File Revisions, processing options, 17–9, 17–16
A/R Cash Forecasting, processing options, 18–4
A/R Credit Note Reimbursements, processing options, 11–7
A/R Currency Gains & Losses, processing options, 13–14
A/R Detail Report by Business Unit/Address, processing options, 8–23
A/R Detail Report with Reminders, 12–56
A/R Draft Revisions, processing options, 9–26
A/R Invoice Journal Report, processing options, 3–75
A/R Invoice Print with Draft, processing options, 3–11
A/R Netting Post, processing options, 5–14
A/R Netting Post (J03855), 5–14
A/R Payment Reminders Print Messages form, 15–12, 15–13
A/R Special Print Messages, processing options, 15–8, 15–14
A/R Speed Status Change, processing options, 4–12
A/R Statements – Italian, processing options, 12–29
A/R Statements Print Messages Text form, 15–5, 15–7
A/R Statements with Draft, processing options, 9–14
A/R Summary by Category Code report, 8–7
A/R Summary by Company report, 8–4

A/R Summary by Parent report, 8–7
A/R to G/L by Batch report, 11–18
A/R to G/L by Offset Account report, 11–20
AAIs. See Automatic accounting instructions
ABC Account Analysis, processing options, 19–5
ABC Analysis report, 19–3, 19–4
About A/R cash forecasting, 18–1
About A/R draft processing, 9–1
About A/R reports, 8–1
About A/R tax setup, 16–1
About AAIs for A/R Taxes, 16–17
About AAIs for gains and losses, 13–9
About ABC customer analysis, 19–1
About automatic debits, 10–1
About automatic receipts processing, 6–1
About batch control, 3–7
About batch invoice processing, 17–1
About category codes for address book, 2–4
About credit and collections management, 7–1
About currency gains and losses, 13–1
About customer information, 2–1
About G/L date warnings, 3–11
About invoice processing, 3–1
About manual receipts processing, 4–1
About period-end processing, 11–1
About receivables and payables netting, 5–1
About statement and reminder processing, 12–1
About statement and reminder setup, 15–1
About system setup, 14–1
About tax explanation codes for A/R, 16–11
About technical processes, 20–1
About the post process, 3–55
About two-cycle entry, 3–9
About user defined codes, 14–51
Account Balance Inquiry form, 7–35
Account balances, reviewing, 7–48
Account information
entering general ledger information, 3–21
reviewing balances by administrator, 7–48
reviewing balances by business unit, 7–50
reviewing status, 7–19
viewing, 3–85
viewing activity, 3–85
viewing collection management
information, 3–87
viewing status, 3–86
Account numbering, concepts, 1–7
Account Status Summary, processing
options, 7–23
Account Status Summary form, 3–86, 7–21
Accounts payable, A/P Ledger table
(F0411), D–2
Accounts receivable
A/R Ledger table (F0311), D–2
features, 1–3
menu overview, 1–12
multi-national functionality, 1–6
overview, 1–1
system flow, 1–8
system integration, 1–1
tables and descriptions, 1–11
tables, relationships between, 1–10
Accounts Receivable Collections Manager,
processing options, 7–46
Accounts Receivable Constants form, 3–7,
14–4
Accounts Receivable Detail – Reminder
Info, processing options, 12–57
Accounts Receivable Entry form, 3–101
Accounts Receivable Statements, processing
options, 12–25
Accounts Receivable Summary, processing
options, 7–63, 8–4
Activating, check digits for next numbers,
14–67
Adding batch invoices, 17–12
Additional Selections form, 3–78
Address Book Addition form, 2–6, 14–78
Address Book Exceptions report, 14–76
Adjustment reason codes, setting up, 14–56
Adjustments, entering for receipts, 4–51
Advanced Payment Term Revision, 14–23
Aging, reviewing “as of” information, 7–21
Aging information, setting up, 14–6
Aging vocabulary codes, setting up, 14–56
Allocating a receipt automatically, 4–71
Analyzing customer activity, 19–3
Annual processing. See Period-end
processing
Answers, Test Yourself, B–1
AP/AR Netting, processing options, 5–9
Applying receipts to invoices, 6–15
Applying receipts to statements, 6–17
Approving, invoice batches, 3–53
Approving A/R drafts for posting, 9–29
Approving and posting A/R drafts, 9–29
Approving and posting receipts, 4–63
Approving invoice batches, 3–53
AR and AP Journal Entries form, 3–21
As of Date, defined, 7–23
As of date reports
generating information, 11–9
printing, 11–10
Assigning, next numbers by company and
fiscal year, 14–68
Auto Debit Journal Review form, 10–7
Autocash algorithm codes, setting up, 14–58
Automatic Accounting Instructions,
Processing Options for, 14–47
Automatic accounting instructions
Automatic Accounting Instructions form, 14–42
Automatic Accounting Instructions Master
table (F0012), 14–29
defaults, 14–30
elements of an AAI form, 14–30
for taxes, 16–17
Multiple AAI Revisions form, 14–44
netting suspense account (NC), 14–39
overview, 14–29
reviewing, 14–42
revising, 14–43
setting up, 14–46
Single AAI Revisions form, 14–44
Automatic accounting instructions (AAIs)
for drafts, 14–81
for gains and losses, 13–9
Automatic debits
copying files to tape or diskette, 10–9
creating tape file for bank, 10–4
overview, 10–1
posting, 10–9
reviewing and approving, 10–7
Automatic drafts, creating, 9–20
Automatic offset method, setting up, 14–9
Automatic receipts
changing unprocessed items, 6–42
loading bank tapes, 6–3
overview, 6–1
reviewing reports, 6–43
reviewing unprocessed items, 6–39
setting up, 14–5
Average days to pay, calculation, 19–5

B

Balance by Administrator form, 7–48
Balance forward receipts, 4–40
Balance forward records
  multi-currency considerations, 20–15
  updating, 20–13
Balance Forward Update (A/R Statements),
  processing options, 20–15
Bank
  exception report for draft processing,
    14–90
  setting up account addresses, 14–77
  setting up account information for A/R
drafts, 14–87
  setting up information for electronic
  funds transfer, 14–73, 14–78
Bank Account Addresses form, 14–77
Bank Account Cross-Reference form, 14–74,
  14–87
Bank Account Exception Report, processing
  options, 14–91
Bank Account Exception report, 14–76
Bank Account Information, processing
  options, 14–80
Bank Account Information form, 14–79
Bank Accounts by Address form, 2–8
Bank Deposit Journal, 6–44
Bank register
  changing for drafts, 9–37
  creating and revising, 9–33
  remitting drafts, 9–33
  reviewing for drafts, 9–38
Bank tapes
  loading, 6–3
  reviewing reports, 6–43
  scanning receipts, 6–28
  setting up account cross-references,
    14–73
  setting up customer bank information,
    14–73
  Banks, remitting paper drafts (registers),
    9–47
  Batch Drafts Creation report, 9–20
  Batch Edit report, 3–62
  Batch Entry and Status form, 3–8
  Batch File Entry Exceptions report, 17–20
  Batch Invoice Entry form, 17–8
  Batch Invoice Review form, 17–5
  Batch Invoice Revisions form, 17–12
  Batch invoices
    adding, 17–12
    posting, 17–22
    processing, 17–17
    purging processed invoices, 17–23
    reviewing, 17–5
    revising, 17–21
    revising unprocessed invoices, 17–15
    setting up, E–1
    submitting for processing, 17–17
    verifying, 17–20
  Batch receipts
    entering, 6–27, 6–35
    entering manually, 6–30
    purging, 20–19
  Batch Receipts Entry, processing options,
    6–32
  Batch Receipts Entry form, 6–28, 6–29, 6–30
  Batches
    A/R batch control, 3–7
    security, 3–48
    setting up batch approval, 14–8
    setting up batch control, 14–7
    totals, 3–48
  Batches of invoices
    approving, 3–53
    posting, 3–59
  Batches with Balancing Problems report,
    3–62
  Billing instructions, entering, 2–4
  Build Netting Report Workfile, processing
    options, 5–18
  Build the Netting Report Workfile (P03465),
    5–18

C

Calculating finance charges, 12–8
Calculating unrealized gains and losses, 13–11
Calculations
  average days late, 7–15
  average days to pay, 19–5
  discounts, 3–28
  due dates for credit memos, 3–32
  finance charges, 12–8
  gains and losses from multi-currency transactions, 13–1
  interest for late payments, 12–12
  profit margins, 19–5
  sales, 19–4
  setting up rules, 16–25
  taxes, 3–33, 16–12
Case study, training, 1–13
Cash forecasting, 18–1
Cash management, receivables and payables netting, 5–1
Cash Receipts and Adjustments Journal Report, processing options, 4–88
Cash Receipts Entry form, 6–42
Cash Summarization table (F0032), 19–1
Category codes, setting up for credit review, 7–7
Category codes for customers, entering, 2–4
Changing
  See also: Revising
  invoices with discounts, 3–31
  manual batch receipts, 6–31
  multi-currency invoices, 3–38
  posted invoices, 3–68
  scanned receipts, 6–27
  tax information, 3–35
  unposted receipts, 4–83
  unprocessed items, 6–42
Changing an unprocessed item, 6–42
Changing draft information, 9–25
Changing posted invoices, 3–68
Chargebacks
  creating for discounts, 4–34
  creating invoices, 4–45
  entering for speed receipts, 6–20
  printing invoices, 12–33
  printing report, 8–28
Chart of accounts, example, 1–15
Check digits, activating for next numbers, 14–67
Choosing a customer for collections, 12–51
Choosing a group of invoices, 4–68
Choosing an invoice for collections, 12–53
Codes
  quick reference for A/R, C–1
  tax explanation, 16–11
  type input (TI), 4–5
  user defined, 14–51
Collection agency report, 12–54
Collection and reminder information, 12–51
Collection information
  choosing an eligible invoice, 12–53
  choosing eligible customers, 12–51
  defining, 7–6
Collection management
  defining finance charges, 7–3
  reports, 12–56
Collection Management form, 3–87, 7–57, 12–54
Collection reason codes, setting up, 14–57
Collections. See Credit and collections management
Collections Manager form, 7–44
Company structure, example, 1–13
Constants
  A/R aging information, 14–6
  A/R notification controls, 14–5
  automatic offset method, 14–9
  automatic receipts processing, 14–5
  batch approval, 14–8
  batch control, 14–7
  default company 00000, 14–4
  G/L interface, 14–10
  setting up, 14–3
Copy Bank Tape File to Tape form, 9–43
Copy Tape File to Tape (A/R Drafts), processing options, 9–45
Copy Tape File to Tape (Auto Debits), processing options, 10–10
Copying draft tables to tape, 9–43
Copying files to tape or diskette, 10–9
Correcting
  finance charge invoices, 12–11
  out-of-balance conditions, 11–21
Correcting A/R out-of-balance conditions, 11–21
Correcting discrepancies, 12–11
Correcting problems, 9–49
Create CREDITEI Reporting Tape, processing options, 7–41
Creating, NSF receipts, 4–85
Creating and revising bank registers, 9–33
Creating automatic drafts, 9–20
Creating chargeback invoices, 4–45
Creating chargebacks for discount amounts, 4–34
Creating credit reporting tapes, 7–37
Creating draft tape tables, 9–41
Creating interest invoices, 12–12
Creating the A/R and A/P Netting Workfile table, 5–18
Credit agencies, creating credit reporting tapes, 7–37
Credit Analysis Refresh, processing options, 7–12
Credit and collections management
assigning credit limits, 7–32
calculating average days late, 7–15
defining collection information, 7–6
defining credit limits, 7–5
defining finance charges, 7–3
entering payment promises, 7–53
managing collections, 7–43
managing credit, 7–27
overview, 7–1
printing reports, 7–61
reviewing account balances, 7–34, 7–48
reviewing balances by statement, 7–34
reviewing customer accounts, 7–27
reviewing past-due accounts, 7–43
reviewing payment history, 7–46
reviewing payment promises, 7–52
sending payment reminders, 7–55
setting up category codes, 7–7
setting up credit messages, 7–8
setup activities, 7–3
updating credit messages, 7–11
updating customer A/R information, 7–9
working customer accounts, 7–32
working past-due accounts, 7–51
Credit Granting/Management form, 7–32
Credit limits
assigning, 7–32
defining, 7–5
Credit Manager form, 7–29
Credit memos
entering, 3–32
printing, 12–33
Credit message codes, setting up, 14–56
Credit messages
example of updating, 7–11
setting up, 7–8
Credit note reimbursements
generating, 11–4
overview, 11–3
posting, 11–8
reviewing and approving, 11–8
Credit reporting codes, setting up, 14–57
Credit reporting tapes, creating, 7–37
Creditel, creating credit reporting tapes, 7–37
Currencies, mixing, 13–12
Currency
See also Multi-currency
calculating alternate amount, 13–12
Currency Codes table, D–1
Currency gains and losses, overview, 13–1
Current domestic value, 4–79
Customer acceptance drafts, 9–2
Customer analysis, 19–3
average days to pay, 19–5
profit margins, 19–5
sales, 19–4
Customer information, 2–1
cross referencing to banks, 14–73
entering, 2–3
Customer Information form, 20–11
Customer Ledger Detail Information form, 3–82
Customer Ledger Inquiry, processing options, 3–87
Customer Ledger Inquiry form, 4–26, 4–69, 7–56, 12–53
Customer Ledger Inquiry forms, 3–83
Customer Master Information, processing options, 2–19
Customer Master Information form, 2–5, 7–4, 12–52, 14–85
Customer Payment History form, 7–47
Customer Receipts History, processing options, 8–26
Customer Receipts History report, 8–25
Customer records, deleting, 2–4
Customer Totals by G/L Account, processing options, 8–35
Customer Totals by G/L Account report, 8–33
Customers
locating, 2–23
locating invoices, 3–78
reviewing account balances, 7–34
reviewing invoice information, 3–81
setting up drafts as default payment instrument, 14–85
viewing account activity, 3–85
viewing account information, 3–85
viewing account status, 3–86
viewing collection management information, 3–87
working with ledger information, 3–77

D

Data Dictionary form, 15–16
Data Item Glossary Revisions form, 15–16
Data models, A–1
Date File Generation, processing options, 11–10
Date Range Set-Up form, 14–17
Dates, G/L warnings, 3–11
Default Company (00000), setting up, 14–4
Defining a credit limit, 7–5
Defining interest rates, 15–19
Defining invoice search criteria, 3–78
Definitions of terms, g–1
Deleting
  bank account cross-references, 14–75
customer records, 2–4
interest invoice messages, 15–23
interest rates, 15–21
multi-currency invoices, 3–38
payment reminders, 15–12
recurring invoices, 3–102
scanned receipts, 6–27
statement messages, 15–6
unposted invoices, 3–24
unposted receipts, 4–83
Delinquency notices, 12–37
  example, 12–46
level of severity, 12–43
printing, 12–43, 12–45
printing in multiple currencies, 12–47
printing in multiple languages, 12–47
revising, 15–15
Detailed Restatement field, 13–12
Determining average days late, 7–15
Determining the level of severity for a delinquency notice, 12–43
Discounts
  calculating, 3–28
entering receipts, 4–29
handling for speed receipts, 6–16
viewing, 4–31
Displaying, open invoices, 4–10
Displaying open invoices, 4–10
Displaying open items, 4–16
Disputed Items (Outstanding Chargebacks) report, 8–28
Document, numbering, 14–65
Document Selection form, 6–13
Document types, 4–4
chargebacks, 12–33
credit memos, 12–33
finance charges, 12–33
Foreign Currency Revaluation (JX), D–2
  gains/losses, 13–11
interest invoices, 12–33
Netting Matching (NM), 5–3
Netting Original (NO), 5–3
non-sufficient funds, 9–55
setting up, 14–52
Draft Inquiry form, 9–23
Draft Journal Report, processing options, 9–31
Draft Journal report, 9–30
Draft NSF Notification, processing options, 9–57
Draft processing
  approving and posting, 9–29
  approving drafts for payment, 9–27
  approving drafts for posting, 9–29
  automatic accounting instructions (AAIs), 14–81
  automatic drafts, 9–2
  bank account exceptions report, 14–90
  bank register for remitting drafts, 9–33
  changing bank registers, 9–37
  changing draft information, 9–25
  creating automatic drafts, 9–20
  creating bank register, 9–33
  creating magnetic tape for bank, 9–43
  entering drafts, 9–15
  entering manual drafts, 9–16
  Italian considerations, 9–43
  locating drafts, 9–23
  manual drafts, 9–2
  non-sufficient funds letters, 14–92
  non-sufficient funds notification, 9–55
  overview, 9–1
  pay status codes, 9–25, 9–27, 14–84
Index

payment instrument codes, 14–83
posting A/R drafts, 9–31
posting journal entries, 9–51, 9–58
printing draft journal report (draft receipts), 9–30
printing invoices and statements, 9–9
printing invoices with drafts, 9–9
printing register for bank, 9–47
printing statements with drafts, 9–12
recopying tape for bank remittance, 9–45
remitting paper drafts (registers), 9–47
reviewing bank registers, 9–38
reviewing journal entries, 9–58
revising drafts, 9–23
security for drafts, 9–28
setting up bank account information, 14–87
setting up cross-references for bank accounts, 14–87
setting up drafts as default payment instrument, 14–85
setting up statements, 14–86
setting up user defined codes, 14–83
setup, 14–81
types of drafts, 9–2
updating draft payment status, 9–53
updating drafts for payment, 9–27
Draft Remittance report, 9–47
Draft Revisions form, 9–25
Draft Selection for Payment, processing options, 9–38
Draft Selection for Payment form, 9–35
Drafts Entry, processing options, 9–19
Due Date Range Setup form, 14–17
Due Date Rule Revision form, 14–16
Dun and Bradstreet
creating credit reporting tapes, 7–37
setting up rating codes, 14–58

E

Enter Customer Drafts form, 9–16
Enter Our Drafts form, 9–16
Entering
billing instructions, 2–4
category codes for customers, 2–4
Entering “G” type receipts, 4–53
Entering balance forward receipts, 4–40
Entering basic receipts, 4–22
Entering batch receipts, 6–22
Entering chargebacks, 6–20
Entering credit memos, 3–32
Entering customers, 2–3
Entering drafts, 9–15
Entering invoices with discounts, 3–28
Entering invoices with taxes, 3–33
Entering manual drafts, 9–16
Entering manual receipts, 6–30
Entering messages for A/R statements, 15–3
Entering multi-currency invoices, 3–36
Entering promises messages, 7–53
Entering receipt adjustments, 4–51
Entering receipts with discounts, 4–29
Entering receipts with write-offs, 4–48
Entering receipts without discounts, 4–32
Entering recurring invoices, 3–38, 3–95
Entering reminder messages, 15–9
Entering scanned receipts, 6–28
Entering speed invoices, 3–41
Entering standard invoices, 3–14
Entering text for interest invoices, 15–21
Entering unapplied receipts, 4–43, 6–18
Error messages
credit note reimbursements, 11–6
fiscal date patterns, 3–12
Exception reports. See Reports

F

Features, accounts receivable, 1–3
Fields
As of Date, 7–23
Denominated In Currency, D–3–D–4
Originating Currency, D–3–D–4
Files. See Table IDs
Finance charge invoices
correcting, 12–11
printing, 12–8, 12–33
processing, 12–6
versus interest invoices, 12–6
Finance Charge Journal report, 12–9
Finance charges, 7–3
calculating, 12–8
defining, 7–3
globally updating, 12–6
Financial reports. See Reports
Accounts Receivable

Flowcharts
Account Receivable system, A-1
statement processing, F-1
Forecasting A/R cash flow, 18-3
Forms
A/R Batch Detail, 17-14
A/R Payment Reminders Print Messages, 15-12, 15-13
A/R Statement Print Messages Text, 15-5, 15-7
Account Balance Inquiry, 7-35
Account Status Summary, 3-86, 7-21
Accounts Receivable Constants, 3-7, 14-4
Accounts Receivable Entry, 3-101
Additional Selections, 3-78
Address Book Addition, 2-6, 14-78
Advanced Payment Term Revision, 14-23
AR and AP Journal Entries form, 3-21
Auto Debit Journal Review, 10-7
Automatic Accounting Instructions, 14-42
Balance by Administrator, 7-48
Bank Account Addresses, 14-77
Bank Account Cross-Reference, 14-74, 14-87
Bank Account Information, 14-79
Bank Accounts by Address, 2-8
Batch Entry and Status, 3-8
Batch Invoice Entry, 17-8
Batch Invoice Review, 17-5
Batch Invoice Revisions, 17-12
Batch Receipts Entry, 6-28, 6-29, 6-30
Cash Receipts Entry, 6-42
Collection Management, 3-87, 7-57, 12-54
Collection Manager, 7-44
Copy Bank Tape File to Tape, 9-43
Credit Granting/Management, 7-32
Credit Manager, 7-29
Customer Information, 20-11
Customer Ledger Detail Information, 3-82
Customer Ledger Inquiry, 3-83, 4-26, 4-69, 7-56, 12-53
Customer Master Information, 2-5, 7-4, 12-52, 14-85
Customer Payment History, 7-47
Data Dictionary, 15-16
Data Item Glossary Revisions, 15-16
Date Range Set-Up, 14-17
Date Range Setup, 14-17
Document Selection, 6-13
Draft Inquiry, 9-23
Draft Revisions, 9-25
Draft Selection for Payment, 9-35
Due Date Rule Revision, 14-16
Enter Customer Drafts, 9-16
Enter Our Drafts, 9-16
General Message, 14-93
General User Defined Codes, 7-7
Inquiry by Business Unit, 7-50
Installment Payment Revisions, 14-26
Interest Invoices Print Messages Text, 15-23
Invoice Entry Journal Review, 3-51
Invoice Journal Review, 3-49
Journal Entry Batch Detail, 17-14
Message Inquiry, 7-53
Message View/Entry, 7-54
Multiple AAI Revisions, 14-44
Name Search, 2-23
Next Numbers, 14-66
Next Numbers by Company/Fiscal, 14-68
NSF Notification Generic Text, 14-92
Promises Entry & Inquiry, 7-52
Receipts Entry (Heads Up), 4-16
Receipts Journal Review, 4-63
Recurring Invoice Inquiry, 3-100
Register Detail Inquiry, 9-40
Registers for Payment, 9-39
Registers in Process, 9-39
Reset Tape Copy Sequence, 9-46
Revise A/R Print Messages, 15-4
Revise Interest Invoice Text, 15-22
Revise Interest Rates, 15-19
Revise Payment Reminders Text, 15-11
Rework Unprocessed Items, 6-40
Single AAI Revisions, 14-44
Speed Invoice Entry, 3-42
Speed Receipts Entry, 6-7, 6-12
Speed Status Change, 4-10, 9-27
Standard Invoice Entry, 3-15, 3-29, 3-33, 3-68, 3-95
Statement Selection, 4-19
Tax Authorities, 16-4
Tax Rates & Areas, 16-6
Tax Rules by Company, 16-22
Text Model Selection, 15-7, 15-13
Translate User Defined Codes, 14-63
Unprocessed Item Review, 6-41
Valid Credit Messages, 7-8
Index

Work Day Calendar, 14–21
Work With Automatic Accounting Instructions, 14–30
Work With Customer Ledger Inquiry, 3–78
Work With User Defined Codes, 14–61
French Bank Account Exceptions report, 14–90
Functional servers, G–1

G

G type receipts, 4–53
G/L accounts
   Account Balances table, D–2
   Account Balances table (F0902), D–3
   Account Ledger table (F0911), D–2
   netting, 5–1
G/L date warnings, 3–11
G/L distribution, automatic offsets, 3–58
G/L interface, setting up, 14–10
Gains and losses, reviewing, 4–27
Gains/losses
   AAIs, 13–9
   document type, 13–11
   from multi-currency transactions, 13–1
   report, 13–11
   unrealized and realized gains/losses, 13–1
General Ledger Post report, 3–61
General Message form, 14–93
General User Defined Codes form, 7–7
Generating “as of” date information, 11–9
Generating credit note reimbursements, 11–4
Generic Purge Program, processing options, 17–24
Global Update – Finance Charge Percentage, processing options, 12–7
Global Update of Finance Charge Percent report, 12–7

H

Hash totals, 3–48

I

Inquiry by Business Unit form, 7–50
Installment Payment Revisions, 14–26
Integrity reports, 11–17
Intercompany settlements, 3–74
Interest Invoice Generation, processing options, 12–15
Interest invoices
   calculating, 12–12
   creating, 12–12
   deleting messages, 15–23
   entering messages, 15–21
   posting, 12–16
   printing, 12–33
   processing, 12–11
   reviewing and approving, 12–16
   setting up model messages, 15–23
   versus finance charge invoices, 12–6
Interest Invoices Print Messages Text form, 15–23
Interest rates
   defining, 15–19
   deleting, 15–21
Invoice Entry Journal Review form, 3–51
Invoice entry methods
   draft processing, 9–1
   speed entry, 3–41
   standard entry, 3–13
Invoice Journal report, 3–73, 12–14
Invoice Journal Review form, 3–49
Invoices
   See also Batch invoices; Multi-currency invoices; Recurring invoices; Speed invoices; Standard invoices
   approving batches, 3–53
   changing posted, 3–68
   entry controls, 3–7
   example, 12–34
   locating, 3–78
   messages for interest invoices, 15–21
   posting, 3–59
   posting batches, 3–59
   printing, 12–33
   printing in foreign currencies, 12–34
   printing journal report, 3–73
   printing with drafts, 9–9
   processing, 3–1
   recurring, 3–91
reviews, 3–47
reviewing and approving, 3–47
reviewing information, 3–81
revising posted, 3–67
two-cycle entry, 3–9
types, 3–4
updating, 4–10
updating for payment, 4–9
voiding paid, 3–71
voiding posted, 3–70
year-to-date amounts, 20–7
Italian Bank Account Exceptions report, 14–90
Italian statements, 12–28
Item Balances table, D–2

J

Journal entries
posting draft remittance, 9–51
reviewing and posting for drafts, 9–58
Journal Entry Batch Detail form, 17–14
Journal Entry Functional Server, processing options, 3–45

L

Language
delinquency notices, 12–47
setting up preference codes, 14–59
Late payment charges, overview, 12–5
Ledger types
Account Ledger Units (AU), D–1
Budget Ledger Units (BU), D–1
using currency codes with, D–2
Load Your Custom Bank Tape, processing options, 6–5
Loading bank tapes, 6–3
Locating, drafts, 9–23
Locating customers, 2–23
Locating drafts, 9–23
Losses/gains
AAIs, 13–9
document type, 13–11
from multi-currency transactions, 13–1
realized and unrealized losses/gains, 13–1
report, 13–11

M

Managing collections information, 7–43
Managing credit information, 7–27
Manual batch receipts, changing, 6–31
Manual drafts, entering, 9–16
Manual receipts
allocating automatically, 4–71
alternate methods of application, 4–67
approving and posting, 4–63
choosing a group of invoices, 4–68
creating chargeback invoices, 4–45
creating chargebacks for discounts, 4–34
creating NSF receipts, 4–85
current domestic value, 4–79
entering “G” type, 4–53
entering adjustments, 4–51
entering balance forward, 4–40
entering basic, 4–22
entering unapplied, 4–43
entering with discounts, 4–29
entering without discounts, 4–32
entering write-offs, 4–48
matching invoices, 4–15
overview, 4–1
posting, 4–64
printing Receipt Deposit Journal, 4–89
printing receipt information, 4–87
printing Receipts Journal, 4–87
reviewing entry results, 4–26
reviewing gains and losses, 4–27
revising, 4–83
spreading amounts, 4–72
transferring unapplied receipts to new accounts, 4–78
voiding, 4–84
working with other types of receipts, 4–39
Menu, overview, 1–12
Message Inquiry Form, 7–53
Message View/Entry form, 7–54
Multi-currency
See also Currency
batch invoices, 17–11
batch total example, 3–48
Currency Codes table, D–1
decimals, D–1
mixing currencies, 3–48
monetary accounts, D–2
Multi-currency delinquency notices, 12–47
Multi-currency invoices
  changing, 3–38
deleting, 3–38
entering, 3–36
Multi-currency receipts
  gains/losses on transactions, 13–1
  gains/losses report, 13–11
Multi-currency statements, 12–28
  Italian, 12–28
Multi-national functionality
  currency processing, 1–6
  multiple languages, 1–6
Multiple AAI Revisions form, 14–44
Multiple languages, delinquency notices, 12–47

N

Name Search, processing options, 2–24
Name Search form, 2–23
Netting
  AAI for netting suspense account, 14–39
  example, 5–4
  Netting – Aging report, 5–19
  receipts, 5–5, 5–11
  receivables & payables, 5–1
  receivables and payables report, 5–16
Netting – Aging Report (P03466), 5–19
Netting for receipts at entry, 5–5
Netting for receipts in standalone mode, 5–11
Netting payables and receivables, 5–3
Next numbers, 14–65
  activating check digits, 14–67
  assigning by company and fiscal year, 14–68
  changing, 14–66
  changing the sequence, 14–66
  credit note reimbursements, 11–4
  reviewing, 14–66
  setting up, 14–65
Next Numbers by Company/Fiscal form, 14–68
Next Numbers form, 14–66
Non-sufficient funds
  notifying customers, 9–55
  sample letter, 9–56
  setting up letters for drafts, 14–92
Notifications, setting up controls, 14–5
Notifying customers of non-sufficient funds, 9–55
NSF Notification Generic Text, processing options, 14–93
NSF Notification Generic Text form, 14–92
NSF receipts, creating, 4–85
Numbers. See Next numbers

O

Offsets
  automatic, 3–58
  potential A/R – A/P, 5–1
Open A/R by Business Unit and Address report, 8–22, 11–15
Open A/R Detail, processing options, 8–11
Open A/R Detail report, 8–9, 11–11
Open A/R Detail Reports, processing options, 11–12
Open A/R Foreign Amounts report, 8–13
Open A/R Summary report, 8–3, 11–14
Open A/R with Foreign Amounts, processing options, 8–14
Open invoices, displaying, 4–10
Open items
  displaying, 4–16
  printing credit/collection items, 7–61
  selecting for speed receipts, 6–12
Optical reader, scanning receipts, 6–28
Out-of-balance conditions, correcting, 11–21
Outstanding Collection Items report, 7–62
Outstanding Credit Items report, 7–62
Outstanding Credit/Collection Items, processing options, 7–63
Overview, accounts receivable, 1–1

P

P00071, Work Day Calendar, 14–21
Accounts Receivable

P00143, Date Range Set-Up, 14–17
P00144, Installment Payment Revisions, 14–26
P00145, Advanced Payment Terms, 14–23
P00146, Due Date Rule Revisions, 14–16
Paper Draft Remittance, processing options, 9–50
Past-due accounts
  reviewing, 7–43
  sending notifications, 12–37
  working, 7–51
Pay status codes, for drafts, 9–25, 9–27, 14–84
Payment history, reviewing, 7–46
Payment instrument codes
  for drafts, 14–83
  setting up, 14–55
Payment promises
  entering, 7–53
  reviewing, 7–52
Payment Reminder – Final, processing options, 12–42
Payment reminders, 12–37
  A/R detail report, 12–56
  deleting, 15–12
  entering, 15–9
  example, 12–41
  printing, 12–38
  report/update, 12–54
  sending, 7–55
  setting up models, 15–13
  setting up text, 15–9
Payment Reminders report, 12–41
Payment status
  setting up codes, 14–54
  updating drafts, 9–53
Payment terms
  due date rules, 14–14
  installment payments, 14–25
  verifying installment payments, 14–27
  work day calendars, 14–20
  working with, 14–13
Period-end processing
  “as of” date reports, 11–9
  credit note reimbursements, 11–3
  overview, 11–1
  printing gains/losses report, 13–11
  processing integrity reports, 11–17
Post General Ledger, processing options, 3–62
Posting
  A/R drafts, 9–31
  about the post process, 3–55
  automatic debits, 10–9
  batch invoices, 17–22
  credit note reimbursements, 11–8
  draft remittance journal entries, 9–51
  interest invoices, 12–16
  invoices, 3–59
  manual receipts, 4–64
  netted transactions, 5–14
  preventing, 3–53
  tax information, 3–35
  verifying the post process, 3–60
Posting A/R drafts, 9–31
Posting automatic debits, 10–9
Posting batch invoices, 17–22
Posting batches of invoices, 3–59
Posting credit note reimbursements, 11–8
Posting draft remittance journal entries, 9–51
Posting interest invoices, 12–16
Posting invoices, 3–59
Posting Journal report, 3–61, 3–62
Posting netted transactions for receipts, 5–14
Posting receipts, 4–64
Pre-authorized drafts, 9–2
Printing “as of” reports, 11–10
Printing a multi-currency delinquency notice, 12–47
Printing A/R account summary, 7–63
Printing A/R delinquency notices, 12–45
Printing A/R invoices, 12–53
Printing A/R statements, 12–17
Printing A/R Summary by Category Code, 8–7
Printing A/R Summary by Company, 8–4
Printing A/R Summary by Parent, 8–7
Printing additional credit and collections reports, 8–25
Printing an A/R Draft Journal Report, 9–30
Printing an Italian statement, 12–28
Printing analytical reports, 8–17
Printing credit and collections reports, 7–61
Printing customer receipts history, 8–25
Printing customer totals by G/L account, 8–33
Printing Delinquency Notices, processing options, 12–48
Printing delinquency notices, 12–43
Processing “as of” reports, 11–9
Printing delinquency notices in multiple languages, 12–47
Processing A/R integrity reports, 11–17
Printing disputed items (outstanding chargebacks), 8–28
Processing Automatic Debits, processing options, 10–5
Printing Finance Charge Invoices, processing options, 12–9
Processing automatic debits, 10–4
Printing invoice journal information, 3–73
Processing batch invoices, 17–17
Printing invoices and statements with drafts, 9–9
Processing batch receipts, 6–35
Printing invoices with draft attachments, 9–9
Processing finance charge invoices, 12–6
Printing multi-currency statements, 12–28
Processing interest invoices, 12–11
Printing netting reports, 5–15
Processing options
Printing open A/R by business unit and address, 8–22
A/R Batch File Processing, 17–18
Printing open A/R detail, 8–9
A/R Batch File Revisions, 17–9, 17–16
Printing open A/R foreign amounts, 8–13
A/R Cash Forecasting, 18–4
Printing Open A/R Summary, 8–3
A/R Credit Note Reimbursements, 11–7
Printing open credit/collection items, 7–61
A/R Currency Gains & Losses, 13–14
Printing payment reminders, 12–38
A/R Detail Report by Business
Printing problem accounts receivable, 8–31
Unit/Address, 8–23
A/R Draft Revisions, 9–26
A/R flowchart, F–I
A/R Invoice Journal Report, 3–75
A/R Invoice Print with Draft, 9–11
A/R Netting Post, 5–14
A/R Credit Note Reimbursements, 11–8
A/R Special Print Messages, 15–8, 15–14
A/R Speed Status Change, 4–12
A/R Statements – Italian, 12–29
A/R Statements with Draft, 9–14
A/R Statements with Draft, 9–14
ABC Account Analysis, 19–5
Account Status Summary, 7–23
Accounts Receivable Collections
Accounts Receivable Collections Manager, 7–46
Manager, 7–46
Accounts Receivable Detail – Reminder
Accounts Receivable Statements, 12–25
Info, 12–57
Accounts Receivable Statements, 12–25
Accounts Receivable Summary, 7–63, 8–4
Accounts Receivable Statements, 12–25
AP/AR Netting, 5–9
Balance Forward Update (A/R Statements), 20–15
Bank Account Exception Report, 14–91
Bank Account Information, 14–80
Bank Account Information, 14–80
Batch Receipts Entry, 6–32
Build Netting Report Workfile, 5–18
Build Netting Report Workfile, 5–18
Cash Receipts and Adjustments Journal
Report, 4–88
Credit Analysis Refresh, 7–12
Copy Tape File to Tape (A/R Drafts), 9–45
Copy Tape File to Tape (A/R Drafts), 9–45
Copy Tape File to Tape (Auto Debits), 10–10
Create CREDITEL Reporting Tape, 7–41
Create CREDITEL Reporting Tape, 7–41
Create CREDITEL Reporting Tape, 7–41
Customer Ledger Inquiry, 3–87
Customer Ledger Inquiry, 3–87
Customer Ledger Inquiry, 3–87
Accounts Receivable

Customer Master Information, 2–19
Customer Receipts History, 8–26
Customer Totals by G/L Account, 8–35
Date File Generation, 11–10
Draft Journal Report, 9–31
Draft NSF Notification, 9–57
Draft Selection for Payment, 9–38
Drafts Entry, 9–19
Generic Purge Program, 17–24
Global Update – Finance Charge Percentage, 12–7
Interest Invoice Generation, 12–15
Journal Entry Functional Server, 3–45
Load Your Custom Bank Tape, 6–5
Name Search, 2–24
NSF Notification Generic Text, 14–93
Open A/R Detail, 8–11
Open A/R Detail Reports, 11–12
Open A/R with Foreign Amounts, 8–14
Outstanding Credit/Collection Items, 7–63
Paper Draft Remittance, 9–50
Payment Reminder – Final, 12–42
Post General Ledger, 3–62
Printing Delinquency Notices, 12–48
Printing Finance Charge Invoices, 12–9
Problem Accounts Receivable, 8–32
Process Batch Receipts, 6–36
Processing Automatic Debits, 10–5
Promises Listing, 7–66
Purge Batch Receipts, 20–19
Purge Closed A/R Records, 20–18
Receipt Deposit Journal, 4–90
Receipts Entry, 4–59
Recurring Invoices Report, 3–99
Recycle Recurring Invoices, 3–104
Reminder Report–Proof & Final, 12–55
Reset Tape Copy Sequence, 9–47
Simple A/R Invoices Print, 12–35
Speed Invoice Entry, 3–44
Speed Receipts Application, 6–25
Standard Invoice Entry, 3–39
Status Update, 9–55
Summary by Parent/Child, 8–21
Summary by Pay Status, 8–18
TRW and Dun & Bradstreet, 7–40
Unresolved A/R Matters Report, 8–31
Update A/R from Address Book, 20–5
Update YTD Invoice Amount, 20–8
User Defined Codes, 14–64
Processing Options for , Automatic Accounting Instructions, 14–47
Processing receipts using the current domestic value method, 4–79
Profit margins, customer rank, 19–5
Program ID
P0002, 14–66
P00021, 14–68
P00051, 14–61
P0005D, 14–63
Program IDs
J03853 – A/R Netting Post, 5–14
P0001Z, 17–5
P00051, 7–7
P000903, 3–7, 14–4
P00100, 3–8
P00110Z, 17–20
P0012 - Single AAI Revisions, 14–44
P00121, 14–29
P00121 - Automatic Accounting Instructions, 14–42
P00122 - Multiple AAI Revisions, 14–44
P0016, 15–5, 15–7, 15–12, 15–13, 15–23
P00165, 15–7, 15–13
P00170, 15–19
P00191, 14–92
P00192, 14–93
P00201, 3–49, 4–63, 6–40, 9–39, 10–7
P0022, 16–22
P0030, 14–74, 14–87
P00301, 2–8
P00302, 14–77
P00310, 14–76
P00311, 14–76
P00314, 14–90
P00PURGE, 20–19
P01051, 16–4
P010513, 2–8
P01053, 2–5, 7–4, 12–52, 14–85
P01101, 7–54
P01200, 2–23
P01240, 7–53
P01250, 7–52
P01315, 7–66
P01830, 12–7
P01AB, 14–78
P01NS3, 20–11
P0501Z1, 17–8, 17–12
P0301ZW, 17–14
P0305, 7–32
Index

P03101, 3–21
P031015, 3–42
P03103, 4–16, 6–42, 9–16
P03103 – Receipts Entry, 5–5
P03111, 6–41
P03114, 4–10, 9–27
P03120, 3–100
P03121, 6–28, 6–29, 6–30
P03122, 6–7, 6–12
P03122W, 6–13
P03130, 3–87, 7–57, 12–54
P03150, 9–25
P032002, 3–78, 3–83, 4–26, 4–69, 7–56, 12–53
P032002W, 3–78
P03200W, 3–82
P03202, 3–51
P03203, 3–86, 7–21
P03204, 7–47
P03205, 4–19
P03210, 7–48
P03215, 7–29
P03216, 7–35
P03218, 7–44
P03220, 7–50
P03250, 9–23
P03255, 9–35
P03256, 9–39
P03257, 9–40
P03280, 15–4, 15–11, 15–22
P03301, 12–14
P03305, 7–62
P03311, 4–88, 9–30
P03402, 6–44
P03408, 4–89
P03413, 7–63, 8–4, 8–7
P03415, 8–19
P03416, 8–17
P034201, 8–9, 8–25, 11–11, 11–14
P034202, 12–56
P03426, 13–11
P03429, 8–13
P03435, 12–9
P03440, 7–62
P03445, 8–22, 11–15

P03450 – Receivables and Payables
Netting Report, 5–16
P03455 – A/R and A/P Netting, 5–5, 5–11
P03461, 12–55
P03465 - Build the Netting Report
Workfile, 5–18
P03466 - Netting – Aging Report, 5–19
P03501, 20–13
P03505, 12–34
P035301, 12–41
P03560, 6–45
P03570, 9–47
P03571, 9–20
P03573, 9–43
P03600, 8–31
P03601, 8–29
P03602, 19–3
P03603, 8–28
P037001, 11–20
P03701, 11–18
P03800, 20–17
P03802, 20–3
P03820, 20–7
P04130, 14–79
P04520, 18–3
P049261, 9–46
P0901ZW, 17–14
P09450, 8–33
P4008, 16–6
P92001, 15–16
P9201, 15–16
Promises Entry & Inquiry form, 7–52
Promises Listing, processing options, 7–66
Promises Listing report, 7–66
Purge Batch Receipts, processing options, 20–19
Purge Closed A/R Records, processing options, 20–18
Purging
batch receipts, 20–19
closed A/R records, 20–17
processed batch invoices, 17–23
Purging A/R information, 20–17
Purging batch receipts, 20–19
Purging closed A/R records, 20–17
Purging processed batch invoices, 17–23
Q

Quarterly processing. See Period-end processing

R

Real-time, reviewing information, 7–22
Rebates. See Credit note reimbursements
Receipt Application Activity report, 6–45
Receipt Deposit Journal, processing options, 4–90
Receipt Deposit Journal report, 4–89
Receipts. See Automatic receipts; Batch receipts; Manual receipts; Speed receipts
Receipts Entry, processing options, 4–59
Receipts entry, netting, 5–5
Receipts Entry (Heads Up) form, 4–16
Receipts Entry (P03103), 5–5
Receipts Journal report, 4–88
Receipts Journal Review form, 4–63
Receivables and Payables Netting report (P03450), 5–16
Recurring Invoice Inquiry form, 3–100
Recurring invoices
  canceling, 3–102
  deleting, 3–102
  entering, 3–38, 3–95
  example, 3–94
  recycling, 3–103
  reviewing, 3–98
  revising, 3–100
  revising paid, 3–102
  working with, 3–91
Recurring Invoices Report, processing options, 3–99
Recycle Recurring Invoices, processing options, 3–104
Recycling recurring invoices, 3–103
Refunds, 4–67
Register Detail Inquiry form, 9–40
Registers for Payment form, 9–39
Registers in Process form, 9–39
Reminder Report–Proof & Final, processing options, 12–55
Reminder Report/Update, 12–55
Reminders. See Payment reminders
Remitting magnetic drafts, 9–41
Remitting paper drafts, 9–47
Reports, 8–1
  “as of” date reports, 11–9
  A/R Account Summary, 7–63
  A/R Annual Close, 20–10
  A/R Detail Report with Reminders, 12–56
  A/R Summary by Category Code, 8–7
  A/R Summary by Company, 8–4
  A/R Summary by Parent, 8–7
  A/R to G/L by Batch, 11–18
  A/R to G/L by Offset Account, 11–20
  ABC Analysis, 19–3
  additional credit and collections, 8–25
  Address Book Exceptions, 14–76
  analytical, 8–17
  Bank Account Exception, 14–76
  Bank Deposit Journal, 6–44
  Batch Draft Creation, 9–20
  Batch Edit, 3–62
  Batch File Entry Exceptions, 17–20
  Batches with Balancing Problems, 3–62
  credit and collections, 7–61
  Customer Receipts History, 8–25
  Customer Totals by G/L Account, 8–33
  Disputed Items (Outstanding Chargebacks), 8–28
  Draft Journal, 9–30
  Draft Remittance, 9–47
  Finance Charge Journal, 12–9
  French Bank Account Exception, 14–90
  Global Update of Finance Charge Percent, 12–7
  invoice example, 12–34
  Invoice Journal, 3–73, 12–14
  Italian Bank Account Exception, 14–90
  Netting – Aging, 5–19
  Non-Sufficient Funds letter, 9–56
  Open A/R by Business Unit and Address, 8–22, 11–15
  Open A/R by Business Unit and Address, 11–15
  Open A/R by Foreign Amounts, 8–13
  Open A/R Summary, 8–3, 11–14
  Outstanding Collection Items, 7–62
  Outstanding Credit Items, 7–62
  Payment Reminders, 12–41
  Posting Edit, 3–61
  Posting Journal, 3–61, 3–62
  printing “as of” date reports, 11–10
  Problem Accounts Receivable, 8–31
  Promises Listing, 7–66
Index

Receipt Application Activity, 6–45
Receipt Deposit Journal, 4–89
Receipts Journal, 4–88
Receivables and Payables Netting, 5–16
Reminder Report/Update, 12–55
standard, 8–3
Summary by Parent/Child, 8–19
Summary by Pay Status, 8–17
Unrealized Gains and Losses, 13–11
Unresolved Matters, 8–29
Reset Tape Copy Sequence, processing options, 9–47
Reset Tape Copy Sequence form, 9–46
Resetting the A/R draft tape copy sequence, 9–45
Reversing, unposted receipts, 4–83
Reversing an NSF receipt, 4–85
Reviewing
AAIs, 14–42
account balances, 7–34, 7–48
account balances by administrator, 7–48
account balances by business unit, 7–50
account status, 7–19
aged “as of” information, 7–21
automatic debits, 10–7
customer accounts, 7–27
invoices, 3–47
past-due accounts, 7–43
payment history, 7–46
payment promises, 7–52
real-time information, 7–22
recurring invoices, 3–98
standard next numbers, 14–66
year-to-date invoice amounts, 20–11
Reviewing A/R draft bank registers, 9–38
Reviewing account balances, 7–34, 7–48
Reviewing account status information, 7–19
Reviewing aged “as of” information, 7–21
Reviewing and approving automatic debits, 10–7
Reviewing and approving interest invoices, 12–16
Reviewing and approving invoices, 3–47
Reviewing and approving receipts for posting, 4–63
Reviewing and posting A/R draft collections journal entries, 9–58
Reviewing balances by administrator, 7–48
Reviewing balances by business unit, 7–50
Reviewing batch invoice information, 17–5
Reviewing batch invoices, 17–5
Reviewing batch receipts activity, 6–43
Reviewing collection management information, 7–55
Reviewing credit note reimbursements, 11–5, 11–8
Reviewing customer accounts, 7–27
Reviewing customer ledger detail, 3–82
Reviewing customer YTD invoice amounts, 20–11
Reviewing gain and loss information, 4–27
Reviewing individual batch invoices, 17–8
Reviewing invoice information, 3–81
Reviewing invoices, 3–47
Reviewing past-due accounts, 7–43
Reviewing payment history, 7–46
Reviewing promises messages, 7–52
Reviewing real-time information, 7–22
Reviewing recurring invoices, 3–98
Reviewing the results of receipts entry, 4–26
Reviewing unprocessed items, 6–39
Revise A/R Print Messages form, 15–4
Revise Interest Invoice Text form, 15–22
Revise Interest Rates form, 15–19
Revise Payment Reminders Text form, 15–11
Revising
See also Changing; Deleting
AAIs, 14–43
batch invoices, 17–11, 17–21
delinquency notices, 15–15
manual receipts, 4–83
posted invoices, 3–67
recurring invoices, 3–100
speed invoices, 3–43
speed receipts, 6–10
unposted invoices, 3–23
unprocessed batch invoices, 17–15
Revising batch invoices, 17–11, 17–21
Revising drafts, 9–23
Revising posted invoices, 3–67
Revising receipts, 4–83
Revising recurring invoices, 3–100
Revising text for delinquency notices, 15–15
Revising unposted invoices, 3–23
Revising unprocessed batch invoices, 17–15
Rework Unprocessed Items form, 6–40
Reworking customer YTD invoice amounts, 20–10

A8.1 (8/97)
Running paper draft remittance, 9–48
Running the A/R to G/L by batch report, 11–18
Running the A/R to G/L by offset account report, 11–20

S

Sales, customer rank, 19–4
Scanned receipts  
  changing, 6–27  
  deleting, 6–27  
  entering, 6–28
Screens. See Forms
Security, for drafts, 9–28
Selecting drafts for remittance, 9–33
Selecting open items for application, 6–12
Servers, functional, G–1
Setting up  
  AAIs, 14–46  
  next numbers, 14–65  
  user defined codes, 14–61
Setting up A/R aging information, 14–6
Setting up A/R draft processing, 14–81
Setting up A/R notification controls, 14–5
Setting up AAIs for A/R drafts, 14–81
Setting up AAIs for netting suspense accounts, 14–39
Setting up automatic receipts processing, 14–5
Setting up bank account addresses, 14–77
Setting up bank account cross-references, 14–73
Setting up bank account information, 14–78
Setting up bank account information for A/R drafts, 14–87
Setting up batch approval, 14–8
Setting up batch control, 14–7
Setting up calculation rules for A/R, 16–25
Setting up category codes, 7–7
Setting up constants, 14–3
Setting up credit and collection information, 7–3
Setting up credit messages, 7–8
Setting up cross-references for A/R drafts bank accounts, 14–87
Setting up customer bank information, 14–73
Setting up drafts as the default payment instrument, 14–85
Setting up due date rules, 14–14
Setting up header information, 6–11
Setting up installment payments, 14–25
Setting up letters for non-sufficient funds, 14–92
Setting up model messages for statements, 15–6
Setting up model reminder messages, 15–13
Setting up payment term codes, 14–22
Setting up statement messages, 15–3
Setting up statements for A/R drafts, 14–86
Setting up tax authorities for A/R, 16–3
Setting up tax rates and areas for A/R, 16–5
Setting up tax rules by company for A/R, 16–21
Setting up text for payment reminders, 15–9
Setting up the automatic offset method, 14–9
Setting up the default company, 14–4
Setting up the G/L interface control, 14–10
Setting up tolerance information for A/R, 16–22
Setting up user defined codes, 14–61
Setting up user defined codes for A/R drafts, 14–83
Setting up work day calendars, 14–20
Setup  
  AAIs for drafts, 14–81  
  AAIs for taxes, 16–17  
  accounts receivable constants, 14–3  
  aging information, 14–6  
  automatic offset method, 14–9  
  automatic receipts, 14–5  
  bank account addresses, 14–77  
  bank account information for A/R drafts, 14–87  
  bank information for electronic funds transfer, 14–78  
  batch approval, 14–8  
  batch control, 14–7  
  batch invoices, E–1  
  calculation rules, 16–25  
  cross-references for drafts bank accounts, 14–87  
  customer bank information, 14–73
default company, 14–4
draft processing, 14–81
drafts as default payment instrument, 14–85
due date rules, 14–14
G/L interface, 14–10
installment payments, 14–25
model interest invoice messages, 15–23
model payment reminders, 15–13
model statement messages, 15–6
non-sufficient funds messages for drafts, 14–92
notification controls, 14–5
overview, 14–1
payment reminder text, 15–9
payment term codes, 14–22
payment terms, 14–13
speed receipt headers, 6–11
statement messages, 15–3
statements for A/R drafts, 14–86
tax authorities, 16–3
tax rates and areas, 16–5
tax rules by company, 16–21
tolerance information, 16–22
user defined codes for drafts, 14–83
work day calendars, 14–20
Simple A/R Invoices Print, processing options, 12–35
Single AAI Revisions form, 14–44
Speed Invoice Entry, processing options, 3–44
Speed Invoice Entry form, 3–42
Speed invoices
   entering, 3–41
   revising, 3–43
Speed receipts
   applying receipts to invoices, 6–15
   applying receipts to invoices with discounts, 6–16
   applying receipts to statements, 6–17
   entering chargebacks, 6–20
   entering unapplied receipts, 6–18
   matching invoices to unapplied receipts, 6–20
   overview, 6–7
   revising, 6–10
   selecting open items for application, 6–12
   setting up header information, 6–11
Speed Receipts Application, processing options, 6–25
Speed Receipts Entry form, 6–7, 6–12
Speed Status Change form, 4–10, 9–27
Spreading a receipt amount, 4–72
Standard Invoice Entry, processing options, 3–39
Standard invoices, 3–13
   deleting unposted, 3–24
   entering, 3–14
   entering accounting distributions, 3–21
   entering credit memos, 3–32
   entering invoices with discounts, 3–28
   entering invoices with taxes, 3–33
   entering multi-currency invoices, 3–36
   entering recurring invoices, 3–38, 3–95
   locating, 3–22
   other types, 3–27
   revising unposted invoices, 3–23
Statement and reminder processing, overview, 12–1
Statement and reminder setup, 15–1
Statement messages
   deleting, 15–6
   entering, 15–3
   setting up, 15–3
   setting up models, 15–6
Statement Selection form, 4–19
Statements
   customizing, 12–17
   flowchart of processing options, F–1
   Italian, 12–28
   printing, 12–17
   printing in foreign currencies, 12–28
   printing with drafts, 9–12
   reviewing account balances, 7–34
   setting up for A/R drafts, 14–86
Status Update, processing options, 9–55
Stop payments, 4–67
Submitting invoices for processing, 17–17
Summary by Parent/Child, processing options, 8–21
Summary by Parent/Child report, 8–19
Summary by Pay Status, processing options, 8–18
Summary by Pay Status report, 8–17
System flow, accounts receivable, 1–8
System integration, accounts receivable, 1–1
System Setup. See Setup

Table IDs
F0013 - Currency Codes, D–1
F0030 - Bank Transit Number Master, 14–76
F0032 - Cash Summarization, 18–3
F0311 - Accounts Receivable Ledger, D–2
F0411 - Accounts Payable Ledger, D–2
F0902 - Account Balances, D–2, D–3
F0911 - Account Ledger, D–2
F1202 - Item Balances, D–2

Tables
F0012 – Automatic Accounting
Instructions Master, 14–29
F03465 – A/R and A/P Netting Workfile, 5–18

Tapes
creating automatic debits tape for bank, 10–4
creating magnetic draft for bank, 9–43
credit reporting, 7–37
recopying tape for bank remittance, 9–45
remitting to banks for automatic debits, 10–9

Tax Authorities form, 16–4
Tax calculation codes, setting up, 14–55

Tax processing
automatic accounting instructions, 16–17
changing information, 3–35
entering taxes on invoices, 3–33
posting information, 3–35
setting up tax authorities, 16–3
setting up tax rates and areas, 16–5
setting up tax rules by company, 16–21

Tax Rates & Areas form, 16–6
Tax Rules by Company form, 16–22
Technical processes, 20–1

Test Yourself answers, B–1

Text Model Selection form, 15–7, 15–13
Tolerance information, setting up, 16–22
Transferring an unapplied receipt to a new account, 4–78
Translate User Defined Codes form, 14–63
TRW
creating credit reporting tapes, 7–37
setting up rating codes, 14–58
TRW and Dun & Bradstreet, processing options, 7–40
Type input codes, setting up, 14–57

UDC. See User defined codes
Unapplied receipts, 4–43
See also Credit note reimbursements
transferring to new accounts, 4–78
Unprocessed Item Review form, 6–41
Unprocessed items, 6–39
changing, 6–42
reviewing, 6–39

Unrealized Gains and Losses report, 13–11
Unresolved A/R Matters Report, processing options, 8–31
Unresolved Matters report, 8–29
Update A/R from Address Book, processing options, 20–5
Update YTD Invoice Amount, processing options, 20–8

Updating
A/R from address book, 20–3
balance forward records, 20–13
tax amounts, 16–21
year-to-date invoice amounts, 20–7
Updating A/R from address book, 20–3
Updating A/R information for customer analysis, 7–9
Updating balance forward records, 20–13
Updating customer YTD invoice amounts, 20–7
Updating draft payment status, 9–53
Updating drafts for payment, 9–27
Updating finance charges, 12–6
Updating invoices for payment, 4–9
User defined code lists, Ledger Types (09/LT), D–2
User Defined Codes, processing options, 14–64

User defined codes
overview, 14–49
setting up, 14–61
setting up blank codes, 14–62
User defined codes (UDCs)
adjustment reason, 14–56
aging vocabulary, 14–56  
autocash algorithm, 14–58  
collection reason, 14–57  
credit reporting, 14–57  
document types, 14–52  
Dun and Bradstreet ratings, 14–58  
language preference, 14–59  
overview, 14–51  
payment instrument, 14–55  
payment status, 14–54  
setup for drafts, 14–83  
tax calculation, 14–55  
TRW rating, 14–58  
type input, 14–57  
types, 14–51  
valid credit message, 14–56

V

Valid Credit Messages form, 7–8  
Verifying batch invoice information, 17–20  
Verifying installment payments, 14–27  
Verifying the post process, 3–60  
Viewing account activity, 3–85  
Viewing account information, 3–85  
Viewing account status information, 3–86  
Viewing collection management information, 3–87  
Viewing multi-currency invoices, 3–83  
Voiding  
manual receipts, 4–84  
netted receipts, 5–9  
paid invoices, 3–71  
posted invoices, 3–70  
Voiding a receipt, 4–84  
Voiding posted invoices, 3–70

W

Weighted days to pay, 7–15  
Windows. See Forms  
Wire transfers, 4–68  
Work Day Calendar form, 14–21  
Work With Automatic Accounting  
Instructions form, 14–30  
Work With Customer Ledger Inquiry form, 3–78  
Work With User Defined Codes form, 14–61  
Working customer accounts, 7–32  
Working past-due accounts, 7–51  
Working with A/R draft collection, 9–53  
Working with alternate methods of application, 4–67  
Working with automatic debits, 10–3  
Working with collection and reminder information, 12–51  
Working with credit note reimbursements, 11–3  
Working with customer ledger information, 3–77  
Working with draft remittance, 9–41  
Working with interest rate information, 15–19  
Working with invoice entry controls, 3–7  
Working with invoice match receipts, 4–15  
Working with late payment charges, 12–5  
Working with other types of receipts, 4–39  
Working with other types of standard invoices, 3–27  
Working with past due notifications, 12–37  
Working with payment terms, 14–13  
Working with recurring invoices, 3–91  
Working with speed receipts, 6–7  
Working with standard invoices, 3–13  
Working with unprocessed items, 6–39  
Working with YTD invoice amounts, 20–7  
Write-offs, entering receipts, 4–48

Y

Year-to-date  
reviewing invoice amounts, 20–11  
reworking invoice amounts, 20–10  
updating invoice amounts, 20–7